AJALT

JAPANESE FOR BUSY PEOPLE

Revised 3rd Edition

An all-new edition of the all-time best-selling textbook

日本語 I

Romanized VERSION

JAPANESE FOR BUSY PEOPLE I 3rd Ed. Romanized Version

Association for Japanese-Language Teaching

AJALT

THE *REVISED 3RD EDITION* OF *JAPANESE FOR BUSY PEOPLE*

In the 22 years since its publication, *Japanese for Busy People* has won acclaim worldwide as an effective, easy-to-understand textbook, either for classroom use or for independent study. Now, in its first revision in more than a decade, the series is being redesigned, updated, and consolidated to meet the needs of today's students and businesspeople who want to learn natural, spoken Japanese as effectively as possible in a limited amount of time.

This first volume of *Japanese for Busy People: Revised 3rd Edition* includes the following new features:

- A unit structure whereby thematically linked lessons are grouped together to make learning Japanese easier than ever
- Expanded exercises that go beyond substitution drills and get students speaking Japanese right away
- A free 70-minute CD that contains recordings of dialogues and exercises from the text
- Over 340 illustrations to make the learning process both fun and effective
- Notes about Japanese culture
- A sleek, user-friendly design

"Survival Japanese for Adults," as the book might be called, gets to the heart of the language without recourse to childish or classroom-only Japanese. Ideal for those whose aim is a working knowledge of the spoken language, it presents only the minimum amount of Japanese needed to get by on a daily basis in Japan. To reduce the burden on busy learners, vocabulary and grammar have been limited to about a third of that typically introduced in beginner courses, and emphasis is given to words and sentence patterns that the learner will find immediately useful.

The *Japanese for Busy People* series has been prepared under the guidance of a working group of experienced language instructors who reviewed and tested the material in their classrooms.

About the Authors

The Association for Japanese-Language Teaching (AJALT) was established to meet the practical needs of people who wish to communicate effectively in Japanese. In 1977 it was recognized as a nonprofit organization by Japan's Ministry of Education. In 1992 it was awarded the Japan Foundation Special Prize.

ISBN 4-7700-3008-8 US $27.00
52700>
9 784770 030085

01/22/07
$ 38.95

AJALT

JAPANESE FOR BUSY PEOPLE I

3rd Ed.

Romanized Version

KODANSHA

How to Use This Text
学習の流れ

The new *Japanese for Busy People I* is made up of 11 chapters called units. Each one consists of 2 or 3 thematically linked lessons.

Culture Note

Read the culture note at the beginning of the unit to expand your knowledge of Japan.

文化ノートで日本への理解を深める。

▼
▼

Grammar

Study the grammar overview.

ユニットで学習する基本的な文法を習得。

▼
▼

LESSON

Proceed through the lessons in the unit. Follow these 5 steps to acquire practical conversation skills:

5段階の学習方法で実用的な会話力を身につける。

Study the Target Dialogue

The Target Dialogue shows you what you will be able to say in Japanese after completing the lesson.

レッスン中にでてくる語彙や文法を使った目標会話文。

▼

Practice

Go through the Practice section to memorize vocabulary and practice speaking and listening.

語彙・文型の習得と会話・聞き取りの練習。

▼

Study the Short Dialogues

The Short Dialogues present handy, frequently used expressions. Practice them thoroughly.

すぐに活用できる短い会話文の習得。

▼

Return to the Target Dialogue

Review what you have learned so far.

これまでに習得した学習内容を復習。

▼

Try "Active Communication"

Put your language skills to use in the real world by doing the exercises suggested in this section.

これまでに習得した学習内容の実践。

The JAPANESE FOR BUSY PEOPLE series
コミュニケーションのための日本語シリーズ

Japanese for Busy People I

Revised 3rd Edition, Romanized Version
paperback, 288 pages, CD included
ISBN-10: 4-7700-3008-8 ISBN- 13: 978-4-7700-3008-5

Japanese for Busy People I

Revised 3rd Edition, Kana Version
paperback, 288 pages, CD included
ISBN-10: 4-7700-3009-6 ISBN-13: 978-4-7700-3009-2

Japanese for Busy People I

The Workbook for the Revised 3rd Edition
paperback, 128 pages, CD included
ISBN-10: 4-7700-3034-7 ISBN-13: 978-4-7700-3034-4

Japanese for Busy People I

Teacher's Manual for the Revised 3rd Edition
paperback, 128 pages, all in Japanese
ISBN-10: 4-7700-3038-X ISBN-13: 978-4-7700-3038-2

Japanese for Busy People

Kana Workbook for the Revised 3rd Edition
paperback, 80 pages, CD included
ISBN-10: 4-7700-3037-1 ISBN-13: 978-4-7700-3037-5

Japanese for Busy People II

Revised 3rd Edition
paperback, 288 pages, CD included
ISBN-10: 4-7700-3010-X ISBN-13: 978-4-7700-3010-8

Japanese for Busy People II

The Workbook for the Revised 3rd Edition
paperback, 128 pages, CD included
ISBN-10: 4-7700-3035-5 ISBN-13: 978-4-7700-3035-1

Japanese for Busy People III

Revised 3rd Edition
paperback, 288 pages, CD included
ISBN-10: 4-7700-3011-8 ISBN-13: 978-4-7700-3011-5

Japanese for Busy People III

The Workbook for the Revised 3rd Edition
paperback, 128 pages, CD included
ISBN-10: 4-7700-3036-3 ISBN-13: 978-4-7700-3036-8

Japanese for Busy People II & III

Teacher's Manual for the Revised 3rd Edition
paperback, 256 pages, all in Japanese
ISBN-10: 4-7700-3039-8 ISBN-13: 978-4-7700-3039-9

(改訂第3版) コミュニケーションのための日本語 第1巻 ローマ字版テキスト
Printed in Japan

JAPANESE FOR BUSY PEOPLE

Revised 3rd Edition

An all-new edition of the all-time best-selling textbook

日本語 I

Romanized Version

Association for Japanese-Language Teaching

AJALT

AJALT JAPANESE FOR BUSY PEOPLE I 3rd Ed. Romanized Version

THE *REVISED 3RD EDITION* OF *JAPANESE FOR BUSY PEOPLE*

In the 22 years since its publication, *Japanese for Busy People* has won acclaim worldwide as an effective, easy-to-understand textbook, either for classroom use or for independent study. Now, in its first revision in more than a decade, the series is being redesigned, updated and consolidated to meet the needs of today's students and businesspeople who want to learn natural, spoken Japanese as effectively as possible in a limited amount of time.

This first volume of *Japanese for Busy People: Revised 3rd Edition* includes the following new features:

- A unit structure whereby thematically linked lessons are grouped together to make learning Japanese easier than ever
- Expanded exercises that go beyond substitution drills and get students speaking Japanese right away
- A free 70-minute CD that contains recordings of dialogues and exercises from the text
- Over 340 illustrations to make the learning process both fun and effective
- Notes about Japanese culture
- A sleek, user-friendly design

"Survival Japanese for Adults," as the book might be called, gets to the heart of the language without recourse to childish or classroom-only Japanese. Ideal for those whose aim is a working knowledge of the spoken language, it presents only the minimum amount of Japanese needed to get by on a daily basis in Japan. To reduce the burden on busy learners, vocabulary and grammar have been limited to about a third of that typically introduced in beginner courses, and emphasis is given to words and patterns that the learner will find immediately useful.

The *Japanese for Busy People* series has been prepared under the guidance of a working group of experienced language instructors who reviewed and tested the material in their classrooms.

About the Authors

The Association for Japanese-Language Teaching (AJALT) was established to meet the practical needs of people who wish to communicate effectively in Japanese. In 1977 it was recognized as a nonprofit organization by Japan's Ministry of Education. In 1992 it was awarded the Japan Foundation Special Prize.

MAP OF JAPAN

JAPAN SEA
Take Is.
Sado Is.
Niigata
NIIGATA
Oki Iss.
ISHIKAWA
Kanazawa
Toyama
TOYAMA
Nagano
GUNMA
Maebashi
Utsunomi
Fukui
FUKUI
GIFU
NAGANO
KANTŌ
Tsushima Is.
Matsue
SHIMANE
TOTTORI
Tottori
CHŪGOKU
CHŪBU
SAITAMA
Saitama
YAMAGUCHI
Yamaguchi
HIROSHIMA
Hiroshima
OKAYAMA
Okayama
HYŌGO
KYŌTO
Kyōto
SHIGA
Ōtsu
Gifu
Kōfu
YAMANASHI
TOKYO
Tokyo
Yokohama
Kōbe
Nagoya
AICHI
Fukuoka
FUKUOKA
SAGA
Saga
Takamatsu
KAGAWA
Asaji Is.
Ōsaka
ŌSAKA
Nara
NARA
Tsu
MIE
SHIZUOKA
Shizuoka
KANA-GAWA
CHIBA
NAGASAKI
Nagasaki
ŌITA
Ōita
Matsuyama
EHIME
Tokushima
TOKUSHIMA
Wakayama
KINKI
KŌCHI
Kōchi
Kumamoto
KUMAMOTO
SHIKOKU
WAKAYAMA
Izu Iss.
KYŪSHŪ
MIYAZAKI
Miyazaki
Kagoshima
KAGOSHIMA
Yaku Is.
Tanegashima Is.

OKHOTSK SEA
PACIFIC OCEAN
HOKKAIDŌ
Sapporo
HOKKAIDŌ
Etorofu Is.
Kunashiri Is.
Shikotan Is.
Habomai Is.
Tsugaru Strait
Aomori
AOMORI
Akita
AKITA
Morioka
IWATE
TŌHOKU
YAMAGATA
MIYAGI
Sendai
Sado Is.
Yamagata
Niigata
NIIGATA
Fukushima
FUKUSHIMA
Toyama
TOYAMA
Nagano
GUNMA
TOCHIGI
Maebashi
Utsunomiya
NAGANO
KANTŌ
Mito
CHŪBU
SAITAMA
IBARAKI
Kōfu
Saitama
YAMANASHI
TOKYO
Tokyo
Chiba
Yokohama
SHIZUOKA
KANA-GAWA
CHIBA
Shizuoka
Izu Is.
0 40 80 120 160 200km
KAGOSHIMA
Amami-Ōshima Is.
OKINAWA
Naha

SYLLABARY

SYLLABARY

JAPANESE FOR BUSY PEOPLE

JAPANESE FOR BUSY PEOPLE

Revised 3rd Edition

I

Romanized Version

Association for Japanese-Language Teaching
AJALT

KODANSHA INTERNATIONAL
Tokyo • New York • London

The Association for Japanese-Language Teaching (AJALT) was recognized as a nonprofit organization by the Ministry of Education in 1977. It was established to meet the practical needs of people who are not necessarily specialists on Japan but who wish to communicate effectively in Japanese. In 1992 AJALT was awarded the Japan Foundation Special Prize. AJALT maintains a website at www.ajalt.org.

Illustrations by Shinsaku Sumi

CD narration by Yuki Minatsuki, Aya Ogawa, Yuri Haruta, Koji Yoshida, Tatsuo Endo, Sosei Shinbon, and Howard Colefield

CD recording and editing by the English Language Education Council, Inc.

PHOTO CREDITS: © Sachiyo Yasuda, 1, 19, 47, 87, 159 (timetable only), 177, 203, 221. © Sebun Photo, 67. © JTB Photo Communications, Inc., 69 (top). © Orion Press, 109. © Ben Simmons, 139. © iStockphoto.com/Lawrence Kam, 159. Tokyo National Museum (Image: TNM Image Archives, Source: http://TnmArchives.jp/), 188.

Distributed in the United States by Kodansha America, Inc., and in the United Kingdom and continental Europe by Kodansha Europe Ltd.

Published by Kodansha International Ltd., 17–14 Otowa 1-chome, Bunkyo-ku, Tokyo 112–8652, and Kodansha America, Inc.

Copyright © 2006 by the Association for Japanese-Language Teaching. All rights reserved. Printed in Japan.

First published 1984
Second edition 1994
Third edition 2006
15 14 13 12 11 10 09 08 07 06 12 11 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Japanese for busy people. I, Romanized version / Association for Japanese-Language Teaching.—Rev. 3rd ed.
p. cm.
Includes index.
ISBN-13: 978-4-7700-3008-5
ISBN-10: 4-7700-3008-8
1. Japanese language—Textbooks for foreign speakers—English. I. Kokusai Nihongo Fukyu Kyokai (Japan)

PL539.5.J3 J359 2006
495.6'82421—dc22

2006040889

www.kodansha-intl.com

CONTENTS

PREFACE ix
INTRODUCTION x
WRITING AND PRONUNCIATION xiv
CHARACTERISTICS OF JAPANESE GRAMMAR xvi
USEFUL DAILY EXPRESSIONS xvii

UNIT 1 MEETING PEOPLE

GRAMMAR 2

LESSON 1 3
INTRODUCTIONS
- Talk about nationalities and occupations
- Introduce yourself and others, at your workplace or at a party

LESSON 2 9
EXCHANGING BUSINESS CARDS
- Talk about a nearby object and its owner
- Ask for telephone numbers

UNIT 2 [illegible] 19

GRAMMAR 20

LESSON 3 21
ASKING ABOUT BUSINESS HOURS
- Talk about the times of meetings and parties
- Ask the hours of services in stores and hotels

LESSON 4 28
SHOPPING, PART I
- Ask the prices of items in a store and make a purchase

LESSON 5 37
SHOPPING, PART II
- Ask what the size, color, and country of origin of an item is, and buy the item
- Buy one or more of an item, telling the clerk how many you need

QUIZ 1 (UNITS 1-2) 45

UNIT 3 GETTING AROUND 47

GRAMMAR 48

LESSON 6 49
CONFIRMING SCHEDULES
- Talk about where you will go, when, and with whom

LESSON 7 59
VISITING ANOTHER COMPANY
- Talk about travel destinations, places and people to visit, dates and times, and means of transportation

UNIT 4 A WEEKEND EXCURSION 67

GRAMMAR 68

LESSON 8 69
GOING TO NIKKO
- Talk about tourist destinations
- Describe what is inside a building

LESSON 9 78
LOOKING FOR A PARKING LOT
- Talk about numbers of things or people that exist in a particular place
- Talk about the whereabouts of things and people

UNIT 5 DINING OUT 87

GRAMMAR 88

LESSON 10 89
MAKING PLANS FOR THE WEEKEND
- Talk about everyday doings—what you will do, when, and where

LESSON 11 97
AT A TEMPURA RESTAURANT
- State how frequently you do something and give a brief reason for why you do it
- Order food at a restaurant

QUIZ 2 (UNITS 3–5) 107

UNIT 6 VISITING A JAPANESE HOME 109

GRAMMAR 110

LESSON 12 111
RECEIVING HOSPITALITY
- Talk about the characteristics of things and people
- Use basic greetings when visiting people and receiving guests

LESSON 13 122
GIVING COMPLIMENTS
- Talk about giving and receiving gifts
- Praise someone's possessions

LESSON 14 131
EXPRESSING GRATITUDE
- Express your thoughts about experiences
- Express gratitude
- Make a telephone call

UNIT 7 [illegible] FESTIVAL 139

GRAMMAR 140

LESSON 15 141
INVITATIONS
- Talk about events
- Invite someone/be invited to an event
- Make plans with someone

LESSON 16 150
PARTICIPATING IN A FESTIVAL
- Talk about what you own
- Offer to help someone/accept or reject someone's offer
- Give a reason for offering someone something, inviting someone to do something, or refusing someone's invitation

QUIZ 3 (UNITS 6–7) 158

UNIT 8 ON BUSINESS OUTSIDE TOKYO 159

GRAMMAR 160

LESSON 17 161
TALKING ABOUT PLANS
- Talk about weekend plans and travel plans state what you will do in what order
- Talk about schedules in deta

LESSON 18 169
MAK NG A REQUEST
- Ask to have something delivered by a specific means from a store or office
- Ask someone to do something for you
- Give directions to a taxi driver

UNIT 9 SEEING A MUSEUM 177

GRAMMAR 178

LESSON 19 179
GOING TO AN ART MUSEUM
- Talk about gett ng on and off means of transportation, and about departure and arrival times
- Talk about lengths of stays
- Ask about travel times

LESSON 20 188
AT AN ART MUSEUM
- Ask permission to do something at someone's house or at a store
- Grant or refuse permission, and give a reason for doing so

LESSON 21 195
BE NG WARNED OR ADVISED
- Forbid someone from doing something
- Forbid something and give a reason for doing so
- Ask someone not to do something

QUIZ 4 (UNITS 8–9) 201

UNIT 10 IN THE OFFICE 203

GRAMMAR 204

LESSON 22 205
BUSY AT THE MOMENT
- Talk about what you are doing now
- Talk about whether you have finished an activity

LESSON 23 212
RESPONDING TO AN INQUIRY
- Talk about where you live, where you work, and who your acquaintances are
- Ask where someth ng you are looking for is sold
- Ask someone at a party or store about something you are interested in

UNIT 11 SOCIALIZING 221

GRAMMAR 222

LESSON 24 223
BEING INTRODUCED TO SOMEONE
- Talk about someone's likes, skills, and interests
- Introduce someone, giving details about where they live or work or what their interests are

LESSON 25 232
AT A PARTY
- Talk about what you want to do or where you want to live
- Exchange information about a mutual interest

QUIZ 5 (UNITS 10–11) 239

APPENDIXES 240
ANSWERS TO SELECTED EXERCISES AND QUIZZES 251
CD SCRIPT FOR EXERCISES 257
JAPANESE-ENGLISH GLOSSARY 260
ENGLISH-JAPANESE GLOSSARY 265
INDEX 269

PREFACE TO THE REVISED 3RD EDITION

The new *Japanese for Busy People* is made up of three volumes: Book I (available in both romanized and *kana* editions), Book II, and Book III. *Japanese for Busy People I* was first published in 1984. It was based on materials used by AJALT teachers with more than ten years of experience teaching Japanese at every level from beginning to advanced.

The series was first revised in 1994, when *Japanese for Busy People II* was divided into two volumes, Book II and Book III. Only a minimum number of modifications were made to Book I at that time. This 3rd Edition, then, constitutes the first major revision of Book I. It involves a wide variety of changes, including the adoption of a unit-based structure, notes about Japanese culture, new and expanded exercises, and updated dialogues. The authors have made every effort to apply the results of the most recent research in Japanese-language education to ensure that learners acquire a clearer understanding of the situations in which Japanese is actually used, and gain increased confidence in their communicative abilities.

It is our fervent hope that this book will inspire people to learn more about Japan and the Japanese language.

Acknowledgments for *Japanese for Busy people I* (1st edition, 1984)

Compilation of this textbook has been a cooperative endeavor, and we deeply appreciate the collective efforts and individual contributions of Mss. Sachiko Adachi, Nori Ando, Haruko Matsui, Shigeko Miyazaki, Sachiko Okaniwa, Terumi Sawada, and Yuriko Yobuko. For English translations and editorial assistance, we wish to thank Ms. Dorothy Britton.

Acknowledgments for *Japanese for Busy People I, Revised Edition* (1994)

We would like to express our gratitude to the following people: Mss. Haruko Matsui, Junko Shinada, Keiko Ito, Mikiko Ochiai, and Satoko Mizoguchi.

Acknowledgments for *Japanese for Busy People I, Revised 3rd Edition*

Six AJALT teachers have written this textbook. They are Mss. Yoko Hattori, Sakae Tanabe, Izumi Sawa, Motoko Iwamoto, Shigeyo Tsutsui, and Takako Kobayashi. They were assisted by Ms. Reiko Sawane.

INTRODUCTION

Aims

This first volume of *Japanese for Busy People, Revised 3rd Edition* has been developed to meet the needs of busy beginning learners seeking an effective method of acquiring a natural command of spoken Japanese in a limited amount of time. The book is suitable for both those studying with a teacher and those studying on their own. In order to minimize the burden on busy learners, the vocabulary and grammar items presented have been narrowed down to about a third of those introduced in a typical first-year course. However, the textbook is set up so that learners can use the material they have learned right away in conversations with speakers of Japanese. In other words, *Japanese for Busy People I* is a textbook for learning "survival Japanese."

Despite this, *Japanese for Busy People I* does not present simple, childish Japanese. That is, we do not focus on mere grammatical correctness. Instead, we place our emphasis on conversational patterns that actually occur. Thus, by studying with this book, learners will acquire the most essential language patterns for everyday life, and be able to express their intentions in uncomplicated adult-level Japanese. They will also start to build a basis for favorable relations with the people around them by talking about themselves and their surroundings and circumstances, and asking about those of others.

This book is intended for beginners, but it can also provide a firm foundation for more advanced study. Learners can acquire a general idea of the nature of the Japanese language as they study the dialogues and notes in it. For this reason, *Japanese for Busy People I* is suitable as a review text for those who already know a certain amount of Japanese but want to confirm that they are using the language correctly.

Major features of *Japanese for Busy People I, Revised 3rd Edition*

In this newly revised version of *Japanese for Busy People I*, we have made the following modifications to ensure that those studying Japanese for the first time will have an enjoyable and effective learning experience.

Adoption of a unit structure. The content of the thirty lessons that made up the previous editions of *Japanese for Busy People I* has been reedited into eleven units, each consisting of two or three lessons linked by a single theme. The reason for this new design is that we believe learning sociocultural information, linguistic information, and communication strategies in an interrelated way is important for producing natural and appropriate Japanese.

Culture notes. We have placed culture notes at the beginning of each unit. These notes describe Japanese customs and events, as well as features of Japan itself. Here our intention is to get learners interested in the lives and customs of the Japanese people, in order to increase their desire to learn Japanese and deepen their understanding of it. We hope that as readers come into contact with the social and cultural information presented in these notes, they will gain an awareness of cultural diversity and acquire specific mental images of the themes introduced in the units.

Practice. In this section we have drawn on our classroom experience as well as recent thinking in Japanese-language education to reconstruct and revise the exercises to emphasize both language production and comprehension. Recognizing the importance of vocabulary acquisition at the beginning stages, for example, we have added a "Word Power" subsection that presents the major vocabulary that forms the basis for learning in the lesson. Here we have taken great pains with the presentation of the vocabulary, grouping similar items together to make them easier for learners to memorize. In addition, we have stated and highlighted in italics the intention of each exercise so that learners can understand it at a glance. The exercises themselves incorporate drawings, charts, tables, and other illustrations that we hope will make for a stimulating learning experience. Finally, we have added brief listening exercises to each lesson.

Other features. A 70-minute CD containing the Target Dialogues, Word Power sections, listening exercises, and Short Dialogues is attached to the inside back cover of this book. Additional features of this textbook include profiles of the characters who appear in it and an expanded contents page that lets learners see at a glance the goals to be achieved in each unit. We have also added quizzes every few units, so that learners can consolidate their understanding of recently introduced language.

The structure of the unit

A unit is made up of a culture note, a page on grammar, and two or three lessons. The culture notes are designed to stimulate interest in the themes of each unit and help learners construct a mental image of what they are going to learn. The grammar page, appearing right after the culture note, provides simple explanations of the basic grammatical items introduced in the unit. To the extent possible, the explanations here do not cover knowledge or information beyond that which pertains to the usage of the grammatical items in the unit.

The twenty-five lessons in Book I are each composed of the following four elements.

Target Dialogue. The Target Dialogues, which appear at the beginning of each lesson, indicate specifically what kinds of things the learner will be able to talk about after studying the lesson. We have limited these dialogues to practical expressions and grammatical items necessary for everyday conversation. Vocabulary lists, as well as notes that explain particularly difficult expressions, accompany the dialogues.

Practice. The Practice section consists of Word Power, Key Sentences, and Exercises. Word Power introduces basic vocabulary that learners should memorize before moving on to the other exercises. The words in this section are introduced with the aid of illustrations and charts, and all are available on the CD. The Key Sentences demonstrate the grammatical items from the lesson by using them in simple sentences. Finally, the Exercises consist of five different types of practice activities.

(1) Exercises that consist of repeating vocabulary or the conjugations of verbs or adjectives.

(2) Basic sentence-pattern exercises that aim to help learners comprehend the sentence structures of Japanese and gain an idea of their meanings.

(3) Substitution drills and drills in the form of dialogues that lead to conversation practice.

(4) Conversation practice created with an awareness of the situations and circumstances in which Japanese is actually used.

(5) Listening exercises in which learners listen to the CD and answer questions about what they hear

Practicing exercise types (1), (2), and (3) allows learners to make a smooth transition to type (4), the conversation practice, and finally to move on to the Target Dialogue.

Short Dialogue(s) These are relatively short conversations that demonstrate helpful expressions, ways of getting people's attention, and ways of acknowledging what people have said. Like the Target Dialogues, they are often accompanied by notes that explain points to be aware of when using certain phrases and expressions.

Active Communication. This section, coming at the very end of the lesson, presents one or two tasks for which the learners themselves select the vocabulary, grammar, and expressions they need from the material in the lesson and use them in actual situations or classroom-based communication activities.

Using *Japanese for Busy People I*

We recommend the following methods of use, both for those who use *Japanese for Busy People I* as teachers and for self-taught learners. Materials should be adapted flexibly depending on the learner's circumstances, but as a rule it should take about sixty hours to finish *Japanese for Busy People I*. We suggest learners proceed through the lessons as follows, with each lesson taking about two hours.

CULTURE NOTE

This section touches on the social and cultural background of the themes covered in the unit and is meant to expand the learner's awareness of the material to be learned.

GRAMMAR

This page is an overview of the grammatical concepts introduced in the unit. One should read it to get an idea of the kinds of grammatical items one will be learning in the unit.

LESSON

The Target Dialogue demonstrates what one will be able to say after finishing the lesson. Read the text of the dialogue while listening to the CD, and then scan the text to check the meaning against the English translation. It is important that one not get bogged down in the dialogue at this stage, since one will return to it at the end of the lesson (see below), after completing the Exercises.

WORD POWER

This is a warm-up exercise. Learners should listen to the CD and practice pronouncing the words until they have memorized them. English translations of the words appear in a gray box at the bottom of the page.

KEY SENTENCES

Learners can gain an understanding of the lesson's grammatical structures by memorizing these useful sentences. New vocabulary items appear in a gray box at the bottom of the page.

EXERCISES

Here, learners absorb the lesson's grammatical structures through exercises that ask one to apply them. The exercises usually begin with vocabulary repetition or conjugation practice, then move on to tasks in which one is asked to make up sentences or dialogues and, finally, to full-fledged conversation reenactment. The last exercise, recorded on the CD, is intended to help learners hone their listening skills.

SHORT DIALOGUES

One should thoroughly practice these short dialogues that contain handy, frequently used expressions. If one practices them so thoroughly that they begin to come naturally, one will be able to use them in a variety of situations.

TARGET DIALOGUE

The Target Dialogue is the culmination of one's study of the lesson. After learners have finished the exercises, they should return to the Target Dialogue and practice it.

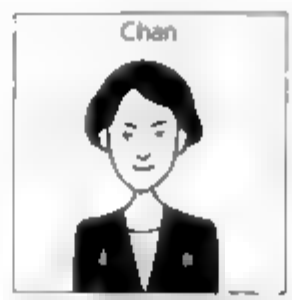
REAL COMMUNICATIONS

If the learner is in an environment that allows him or her to perform linguistic tasks, he or she should test himself or herself with the challenges presented here.

Introducing the characters

The following characters feature in this textbook. Since they often appear in the exercises, it is a good idea to remember their names, faces, and relationships.

Mike Smith (32 years old), an American, is an attorney for ABC Foods. He is single.



Mei Chan (31 years old) is from Hong Kong. She works in ABC Foods' sales department. She is single.

Frank Green (56 years old), an American, is the president of the Tokyo branch of ABC Foods. He lives in Tokyo with his wife.

Keiko Sasaki (53 years old), a Japanese, is the division chief of ABC Foods' sales department. She is married.

Akira Kato (46 years old), a Japanese, is the section chief of ABC Foods' sales department. He is married.

Mayumi Nakamura (26 years old), a Japanese, works as a secretary to Ms. Sasaki. She is single.

Daisuke Suzuki (24 years old), a Japanese, is a member of ABC Foods' sales staff. He is single.

Shingo Takahashi (48 years old), a Japanese, works for Nozomi Department Store, where he is the division chief of the sales department. His wife's name is Junko.

Ichiro Yamamoto (45 years old), a Japanese, is the president of the Kyoto branch of ABC Foods.

In addition to the above, the following people also appear in this book: Hideo Ogawa (male, 49 years old, a friend of Mr. Green), Taro Yamada (male, a banker and a friend of Mr. Smith), and Ayako Matsui (female, the Greens' next-door neighbor).

WRITING AND PRONUNCIATION

There are three writing systems in Japanese:

1. *Kanji*: Chinese characters as used to represent words of both Chinese and native-Japanese origin, most of which have at least two readings.
2. *Hiragana*: A phonetic syllabary. The symbols are curvilinear in style.
3. *Katakana*: Another syllabary used primarily for foreign names and words of foreign origin. The symbols are made up of straight lines.

Written Japanese normally makes use of all three of these systems, as in the following example:

"I am going to Canada." 私はカナダに行きます。

	Watashi	**wa**	**Kanada**	**ni**	**I**	**kimasu.**
kanji	私				行	
hiragana		は		に		きます
katakana			カナダ			

Besides these three systems, Japanese is sometimes written in *romaji* (roman letters), particularly for the convenience of foreigners. *Romaji* is generally used in teaching conversational Japanese when time is limited. There are various ways of romanizing Japanese, but in this book we use the modified Hepburn system.

Hiragana, katakana and *romaji*

The *kana* to the left are *hiragana*, *katakana* are in parentheses.

I. Basic syllables: vowel, consonant plus vowel, and **n**

c \ v	a	i	u	e	o
k	ka か (カ)	ki き (キ)	ku く (ク)	ke け (ケ)	ko こ (コ)
s	sa さ (サ)	shi し (シ)	su す (ス)	se せ (セ)	so そ (ソ)
t	ta た (タ)	chi ち (チ)	tsu つ (ツ)	te て (テ)	to と (ト)
n	na な (ナ)	ni に (ニ)	nu ぬ (ヌ)	ne ね (ネ)	no の (ノ)
h	ha は (ハ)	hi ひ (ヒ)	fu ふ (フ)	he へ (ヘ)	ho ほ (ホ)
m	ma ま (マ)	mi み (ミ)	mu む (ム)	me め (メ)	mo も (モ)
y	ya や (ヤ)	[i い (イ)]	yu ゆ (ユ)	[e え (エ)]	yo よ (ヨ)
r	ra ら (ラ)	ri り (リ)	ru る (ル)	re れ (レ)	ro ろ (ロ)
w	wa わ (ワ)	[i い (イ)]	[u う (ウ)]	[e え (エ)]	o を (ヲ)
n	— ん (ン)				

NOTE: The syllables **yi**, **ye**, **wi**, **wu**, and **we** do not occur in modern Japanese.

II. Modified syllables: consonant plus basic vowel

g	ga が（ガ）	gi ぎ（ギ）	gu ぐ（グ）	ge げ（ゲ）	go ご（ゴ）
z	za ざ（ザ）	ji じ（ジ）	zu ず（ズ）	ze ぜ（ゼ）	zo ぞ（ゾ）
d	da だ（ダ）	ji ぢ（ヂ）	zu づ（ヅ）	de で（デ）	do ど（ド）
b	ba ば（バ）	bi び（ビ）	bu ぶ（ブ）	be べ（ベ）	bo ぼ（ボ）
p	pa ぱ（パ）	pi ぴ（ピ）	pu ぷ（プ）	pe ぺ（ペ）	po ぽ（ポ）

III. Modified syllables: consonant plus **ya, yu, yo**

kya きゃ（キャ）	kyu きゅ（キュ）	kyo きょ（キョ）
sha しゃ（シャ）	shu しゅ（シュ）	sho しょ（ショ）
cha ちゃ（チャ）	chu ちゅ（チュ）	cho ちょ（チョ）
nya にゃ（ニャ）	nyu にゅ（ニュ）	nyo にょ（ニョ）
hya ひゃ（ヒャ）	hyu ひゅ（ヒュ）	hyo ひょ（ヒョ）
mya みゃ（ミャ）	myu みゅ（ミュ）	myo みょ（ミョ）
rya りゃ（リャ）	ryu りゅ（リュ）	ryo りょ（リョ）
gya ぎゃ（ギャ）	gyu ぎゅ（ギュ）	gyo ぎょ（ギョ）
ja じゃ（ジャ）	ju じゅ（ジュ）	jo じょ（ジョ）
bya びゃ（ビャ）	byu びゅ（ビュ）	byo びょ（ビョ）
pya ぴゃ（ピャ）	pyu ぴゅ（ピュ）	pyo ぴょ（ピョ）

IV. Double consonants (See note 6 below.)

kk, pp, ss, tt	っ（ッ）

V. Long vowels

ā	ああ　（アー）
ī, ī	いい　（イー）
ū	うう　（ウー）
ē, ei	ええ、えい　（エー）
ō	おう、おお　（オー）

Points to note

1 The top line of the Japanese syllabary (chart I) consists of the five vowels **a, i, u, e,** and **o**. They are short vowels, pronounced clearly and crisply. If you pronounce the vowels in the following English sentence, making them all short, you will have their approximate sounds. The **u** is pronounced without rounding the lips.

Ah,	*we*	*soon*	*get*	*old*
a	**i**	**u**	**e**	**o**

2 Long vowels are written as shown in chart V. Both **ē** and **ei** are used for an elongated **e**, which in Japanese is either え え or え い. Long vowels are a doubling of a single vowel, so care should be taken to pronounce them as a continuous sound, equal in value to two identical short vowels.

3 The rest of the syllabary from the second line down in chart I are syllables formed by a consonant and a vowel.

4 Japanese consonants more or less resemble those in English. Listen to the Japanese recorded on the attached CD, or to a native speaker, for the exact sounds. Especially note the following: *t* in the **ta** row, *f* in the syllable **fu**, and *r* in the **ra** row. The *g* in the syllables **ga**, **gi**, **gu**, **ge**, and **go** at the beginning of a word is hard (like the [g] in *garden*), but when it occurs in the middle or last syllable of a word (as in **eiga**, "movie"), it takes on a nasal sound, like the [g] in *thing*. The particle **ga**, too, is usually nasal, although many Japanese today use a [g] sound that is not nasal.

N is the only independent consonant not combined with a vowel. When it is at the end of a word, it is pronounced somewhat nasally. Otherwise it is usually pronounced like the English [n]. But if **n** is followed by syllables beginning with *b*, *m*, or *p*, it is pronounced more like [m] and accordingly spelled with an *m* in this textbook (except for when it appears before a hyphen, e.g., **nan-ban** not **nam-ban**). Special care is necessary when **n** is followed by a vowel, as in the word **kin'en** (**ki-n-en**, "nonsmoking"); note that this is different in syllable division from **kinen** (**ki-ne-n**, "anniversary").

5 *Hiragana* and *katakana* are phonetic symbols, and each symbol is one syllable in length. The syllables in chart III that consist of two characters—the second written smaller—are also only one syllable in length, although if elongated by the addition of a vowel (i.e., きゃあ **kyā**, きゅう **kyū**, きょう **kyō**) they become two syllables.

6 What are written in roman letters as the double consonants **kk**, **pp**, **ss**, and **tt** in chart IV are expressed in *kana* (*hiragana* and *katakana*) with a small っ (ッ) in place of the first consonant, i.e., けっこん **kekkon** ("marriage"), きっぷ **kippu** ("ticket"), まっすぐ **massugu** ("straight"), and きって **kitte** ("stamp"). This small っ is one syllable in length, and there is the slightest pause after it is pronounced (as between the *k*'s in *bookkeeping*). In the case of the **chi** syllable, the **tsu** is represented by a *t* in roman letters, i.e., マッチ **matchi** ("match").

7 In *hiragana*, the syllables **ji** and **zu** are written じ and ず as a general rule. In a few rare cases they are traditionally written ぢ and づ.

8 *Hiragana* follows a tradition in which the following three particles are written a special way:

o when used as a particle is written を, not お
e when used as a particle is written へ, not え
wa when used as a particle is written は, not わ

CHARACTERISTICS OF JAPANESE GRAMMAR

The grammar in this text is derived from a natural analysis of the Japanese language, rather than being an interpretation adapted to the syntax of Western languages. We have given as few technical terms as possible, choosing ones that will make for a smooth transition from the basic level to more advanced study.

The following points are basic and in most cases reflect differences between the grammars of Japanese and English.

1. Japanese nouns have neither gender nor number. But plurals of certain words can be expressed by the use of suffixes.

2. The verb (or the copula **desu**) comes at the end of the sentence or clause.

   ex. **Watashi wa Nihon-jin desu.** "I am a Japanese."
   Watashi wa Kyōto ni ikimasu. "I go (or *will go*) to Kyoto."

3. The gender, number, or person of the subject does not affect the other parts of the sentence.

4. Verb conjugation shows only two tenses, the "present form" and the "past form." Whether use of the "present form" refers to habitual action or the future, and whether the "past form" is equivalent to the English past tense, present perfect, or past perfect can usually be determined from the context.

5. Japanese adjectives, unlike English ones, inflect for tense (present and past) and mood (for example, to show whether the word is negative).

6. The grammatical function of nouns is indicated by particles. Their role is similar to English prepositions, but since they always come after the word, they are sometimes referred to as *postpositions*.

   ex. **Tōkyō de,** "at Tokyo"
   15-nichi ni, "on the 15th (of the month)"

7. Many degrees of politeness are expressible in Japanese. In this book the style is one that anyone may use without being rude.

NOTE The following abbreviations are used in this book.

aff.	affirmative
neg.	negative
Aa:	answer, affirmative
An:	answer, negative
ex.	example
-i adj.	**-i** adjective
-na adj.	**-na** adjective

USEFUL DAILY EXPRESSIONS

1 おはようございます。**Ohayō gozaimasu.** "Good morning." Used until about 10:00 a.m.

2 こんにちは。**Konnichiwa.** "Hello." A rather informal greeting used from about 10:00 a.m. until sundown.

3 こんばんは。**Kombanwa.** "Good evening."

4 おやすみなさい。**Oyasuminasai.** "Good night." Said at night before going to bed and when parting at night during late hours outside the home.

5 さようなら。**Sayōnara.** "Good-bye." On more formal occasions one uses **shitsureishimasu**.

6 では／じゃ　また。**Dewa/Ja mata.** "Well then . . ." Said informally when parting from relatives or friends.

7 おさきに　しつれいします。**O-sakini shitsureishimasu.** Said when leaving the office or a meeting before other people.

8 いってらっしゃい。**Itterasshai.** "So long." (*lit.* "Go and come back.") Said to members of a household as they leave the house. Occasionally it is used at work.

9 いってきます。**Ittekimasu.** "So long." (*lit.*, "[I'm] going and coming back.") This expression forms a pair with **itterasshai**. (See 8 above.) Occasionally it is used at work. A politer form is **ittemairimasu**.

10 ただいま。**Tadaima.** "I'm back." (*lit.*, "[I have returned] just now.") Said by a person on returning home. Occasionally it is used at work.

11 おかえりなさい。**Okaerinasai.** "Welcome home." This expression forms a pair with **tadaima**. (See 10 above.) Occasionally it is used at work.

12 いただきます。**Itadakimasu.** Said before eating a meal.

13 ごちそうさまでした。**Gochisōsamadeshita.** Said after eating a meal.

14 おめでとうございます。**Omedetō gozaimasu.** "Congratulations."

15 どうも　ありがとうございます。**Dōmo arigatō gozaimasu.** "Thank you very much."

16 どういたしまして。**Dō itashimashite.** "You're welcome."

17 すみません。**Sumimasen.** "Excuse me," "I'm sorry."

18 ちょっと　まってください。**Chotto matte kudasai.** "Wait just a moment, please."

19 もう　いちど　おねがいします。**Mō ichi-do onegaishimasu.** "Once more, please."

20 どうぞ　おさきに。**Dōzo o-sakini.** "Please, go ahead."

21 きをつけて。**Ki o tsukete.** "Take care," "Be careful."

22 おだいじに。**O-daijini.** "Take care of yourself." Used toward an ill or injured person.

UNIT 1

MEETING PEOPLE

In Japan, people bow rather than shake hands, hug, or kiss, when they meet for the first time. A typical bow is performed with both feet together, the hands flat on the thighs (for men) or crossed in front (for women), and the torso inclined at a 15- to 45 degree angle. The eyes remain open during the bow, and the bowing person's line of sight moves with his or her torso rather than staying fixed on the other person. Generally, the deeper and slower the bow, the politer it is. Bowing properly is essential to making a good first impression, so we recommend practicing it until you become comfortable with it.

UNIT 1 GRAMMAR

Identifying People and Things

noun 1 **wa** noun 2 **desu**

ex **Gurei-san wa bengoshi desu.** "Mr. Grey is an attorney."

■ The particle **wa**—the topic marker

Wa ("as for ...") follows noun 1, singling it out as the "topic" of the sentence. Noun 2 is then identified, and the phrase is concluded with **desu**. The topic is the person or thing that the sentence is about. The topic is often the same as the subject but not necessarily.

noun 1 **wa** noun 2 **desu ka** **Hai,** (noun 1 **wa**) noun 2 **desu** **Iie,** (noun 1 **wa**) noun 2 **dewa/ja arimasen**

ex **Gurei-san wa bengoshi desu ka.** "Is Mr. Grey an attorney?"
Hai, bengoshi desu. "Yes, (he) is an attorney."
Iie, bengoshi dewa arimasen. "No, (he) isn't an attorney."

■ The particle **ka**—the question marker

It is easy to make questions in Japanese. Simply place the particle **ka** at the end of the sentence. No change in word order is required even when the question contains interrogatives like "who," "what," "when," etc.

NOTE: Intonation normally rises on **ka**, i.e., **. . . desu ka** ↗.

■ **Hai/Iie**

Hai is virtually the same as "yes," and **iie** is virtually the same as "no."

■ Omission of the topic (noun 1)

When it's obvious to the other person what the topic is, it is generally omitted.

ex **(Watashi wa) Gurei desu.** "(As for me) I'm Grey."

But when it's necessary to make clear what the topic is, it is not omitted.

ex. **Kochira wa Gurei-san desu.** "This is Mr. Grey."

Often the topic is omitted in answers to questions.

ex **Gurei-san wa bengoshi desu ka.** "Is Mr. Grey an attorney?"
Hai, bengoshi desu. "Yes, (he) is an attorney."
Iie, bengoshi dewa arimasen. "No, (he) isn't an attorney."

■ **Dewa/Ja arimasen**

Dewa arimasen or **ja arimasen** is the negative form of **desu**. **Ja** is more informal than **dewa**, otherwise they are the same. The chart below summarizes the forms of **desu**.

PRESENT FORM		PAST FORM	
aff	*neg*	*aff*	*neg.*
desu	**dewa arimasen**	**deshita**	**dewa arimasendeshita**
is	is not	was	was not

LESSON 1 INTRODUCTIONS

TARGET DIALOGUE

TRACK 1

Ms. Sasaki introduces Mr. Smith to Mr. Takahashi.

ささき　たかはしさん、こちらは　スミスさんです。
スミスさんは　ＡＢＣフーズの　べんごしです。
スミス．はじめまして。スミスです。よろしく　おねがいします。
たかはし　はじめまして。のぞみデパートの　たかはしです。
よろしく　おねがいします。

Sasaki: Takahashi-san, kochira wa Sumisu-san desu. Sumisu-san wa ABC Fūzu no bengoshi desu.
Sumisu: Hajimemashite. Sumisu desu. Yoroshiku onegaishimasu.
Takahashi: Hajimemashite. Nozomi Depāto no Takahashi desu. Yoroshiku onegaishimasu.

Sasaki: Mr. Takahashi, this is Mr. Smith. Mr. Smith is an attorney with ABC Foods.
Smith: How do you do. My name is Smith. Pleased to meet you.
Takahashi: How do you do. I'm Takahashi from Nozomi Department Store. Pleased to meet you.

VOCABULARY

～さん	**-san**	Mr., Mrs., Ms., Miss (see Note 1 below)
こちら	**kochira**	this one (polite for "this person", see Note 2 below)
は	**wa**	(particle that denotes the topic of a sentence)
です	**desu**	be
ABCフーズ	**ABC Fūzu**	ABC Foods (fictitious company name)
の	**no**	's, of (particle indicating belonging; see Note 4 below)
べんごし	**bengoshi**	attorney, lawyer
はじめまして	**hajimemashite**	how do you do
よろしく　おねがいします	**yoroshiku onegaishimasu**	pleased to meet you (see Note 5 below)
のぞみデパート	**Nozomi Depāto**	Nozomi Department Store (fictitious company name)
デパート	**depāto**	department store

NOTES

1. Takahashi-san

-San is a title of respect added to a person's name, so it cannot be used after one's own name. **-San** may be used with both male and female names, and with either surnames or given names.

2. Kochira wa Sumisu-san desu.

Kochira ("this one") implies "this person here" and is a polite way of saying "this person." It is used when introducing one person to another.

3. **(Watashi wa) Sumisu desu.**
Especially in conversational Japanese, **watashi** ("I") is hardly ever used. **Anata** ("you") is similarly avoided, especially when addressing superiors, in which case the person's surname followed by **-san** is used.

4. **Nozomi Depāto no Takahashi desu.**
The particle **no** attaches to nouns, and the noun-**no** combination modifies the word that comes after it. **No** expresses belonging or affiliation. Here it shows that Mr. Takahashi belongs to, in the sense that he works for, Nozomi Department Store. Japanese customarily give their company name and position when being introduced.

5. **Yoroshiku onegaishimasu.**
A phrase used when being introduced, **yoroshiku onegaishimasu** is usually combined with **hajime-mashite**. It is also used when taking one's leave after having asked a favor. **Yoroshiku** means "well," and is a request for the other person's favorable consideration in the future.

PRACTICE

WORD POWER

Countries and nationalities

1 **Nihon**	5 **Amerika**	9 **Chūgoku-jin**	13 **Ōsutoraria-jin**
2 **Chūgoku**	6 **Ōsutoraria**	10 **Doitsu-jin**	14 **Tai-jin**
3 **Doitsu**	7 **Tai**	11 **Igirisu-jin**	
4 **Igirisu**	8 **Nihon-jin**	12 **Amerika-jin**	

VOCABULARY

Nihon	Japan	**Amerika**	the United States
Chūgoku	China	**Ōsutoraria**	Australia
Doitsu	Germany	**Tai**	Thailand
Igirisu	England, the United Kingdom	**-jin**	-ese, -ian (person from)

II Occupations

1 **bengoshi**

2 **hisho**

3 **gakusei**

4 **enjinia**

KEY SENTENCES

1. **(Watashi wa) Sumisu desu.**
2. **Sumisu-san wa ABC Fūzu no bengoshi desu.**
3. **Kochira wa Nozomi Depāto no Takahashi-san desu.**

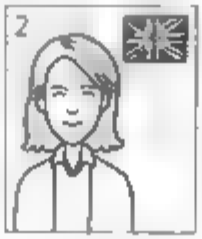
1 I am Smith
2 Mr Smith is an attorney with ABC Foods
3. This is Mr Takahashi from Nozomi Department Store

EXERCISES

Make up sentences following the patterns of the examples Substitute the underlined words with the words in parentheses

Mr Smith, attorney

Ms. Hoffman, eng neer



Ms. Brown, secretary

Ms. Lin, student

Mr Takahashi

A ***State someone's nationality.***

ex **Sumisu-san wa Amerika-jin desu.**

1 ..... (Hofuman-san, Dōitsu-jin)

2 ..... (Buraun-san, Igirisu-jin)

3 ..... (Rin-san, Chūgoku-jin)

4 ..... (Takahashi-san, Nihon-jin)

VOCABULARY

bengoshi	attorney, lawyer	**Hofuman**	Hoffman (surname)
hisho	secretary	**Buraun**	Brown (surname)
gakusei	student	**Rin**	Lin (surname)
enjinia	engineer		

B. *State someone's occupation.*

ex **Sumisu-san wa bengoshi desu.**

1 _____ (Hofuman-san, enjinia)

2 _____ (Buraun-san, hisho)

3 _____ (Rin-san, gakusei)

II Make up dialogues following the patterns of the examples. Substitute the underlined words with the words in parentheses.

A. *Ask and answer what someone's nationality is.*

ex **A: Sumisu-san wa Amerika-jin desu ka.**
B: Hai, Amerika-jin desu.

1 A: _____ (Hofuman-san, Doitsu-jin)

B: _____ (Doitsu-jin)

2. A: _____ (Buraun-san, Igirisu-jin)

B: _____ (Igirisu-jin)

3 A: _____ (Rin-san, Chūgoku-jin)

B: _____ (Chūgoku-jin)

4. A: _____ (Takahashi-san, Nihon-jin)

B: _____ (Nihon-jin)

B. *Ask and answer what someone's occupation is.*

ex **A: Sumisu-san wa enjinia desu ka.**
B: Iie, bengoshi desu.

1 A: _____ (Buraun-san)

B: _____ (hisho)

2 A: _____ (Rin-san)

B: _____ (gakusei)

C. *Ask and answer whether someone is of one nationality/occupation or another.*

ex **A: Sumisu-san wa Amerika-jin desu ka, Igirisu-jin desu ka.**
B: Amerika-jin desu.

1 A: _____ (Takahashi-san, Nihon-jin, Chūgoku-jin)

B: _____ (Nihon-jin)

VOCABULARY

ka	(particle that denotes question)
hai	yes
iie	no

2. A. ..... (Buraun-san, Igirisu-jin, Doitsu-jin)

B ..... (Igirisu-jin)

3. A. ..... (Hofuman-san, enjinia, bengoshi)

B ..... (enginia)

I ***Respond to a self-introduction.*** Make up dialogues following the pattern of the example, assuming the roles indicated in parentheses.

ex **Sumisu. Hajimemashite. ABC Fūzu no Sumisu desu. Yoroshiku onegaishimasu.**
anata: Hajimemashite. Berurin Mōtāzu no Hofuman desu. Yoroshiku onegaishimasu.

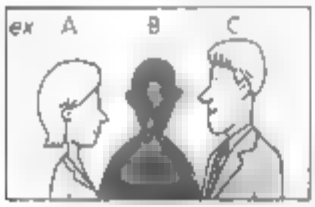
1 Sumisu.

anata: ..... (Rondon Ginkō, Buraun)

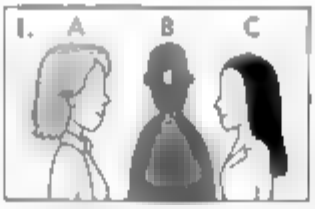
2 Sumisu.

anata: ..... (Nozomi Depāto, Takahashi)

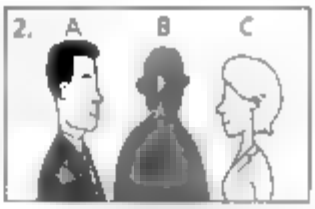
V ***Introduce people.*** Look at the illustrations and pretend you are B. Introduce A and C to each other, as in the example.



A. Berurin Mōtāzu, Hofuman-san
C. ABC Fūzu, Sumisu-san



A: Rondon Ginkō, Buraun-san
C. Tōkyō Daigaku, Rin-san



A. Nozomi Depāto, Takahashi-san
C. Berurin Mōtāzu, Hofuman-san

ex **B: Kochira wa Berurin Mōtāzu no Hofuman-san desu. Kochira wa ABC Fūzu no Sumisu-san desu.**

1 B

2 B

V Listen to the CD and fill in the blank based on the information you hear.

Sumisu-san wa ..... desu.

VOCABULARY

anata	you	**Tōkyō Daigaku**	Tokyo University
Berurin Mōtāzu	Berlin Motors (fictitious company name)	**Tōkyō**	Tokyo
Rondon Ginkō	Bank of London (fictitious bank name)	**daigaku**	university, college
Rondon	London		
ginkō	bank		

SHORT DIALOGUES

At the reception desk of a company

Sumisu:	**ABC Fūzu no Sumisu desu. Takahashi-san o onegaishimasu.**
uketsuke:	**Hai.**
Smith:	I'm Smith from ABC Foods. (I'd like to see) Mr. Takahashi, please.
receptionist:	All right.

VOCABULARY

o	(particle, see Note 1 below)
onegaishimasu	please (get me ...)
uketsuke	reception desk, receptionist

II The buzzer on a home security intercom system sounds

Chan:	**Hai. Donata desu ka.**
Nakamura:	**Nakamura desu.**
Chan:	**Hai, dōzo.**
Chan:	Yes? Who is it?
Nakamura:	It's Nakamura.
Chan:	All right. Please (come in).

VOCABULARY

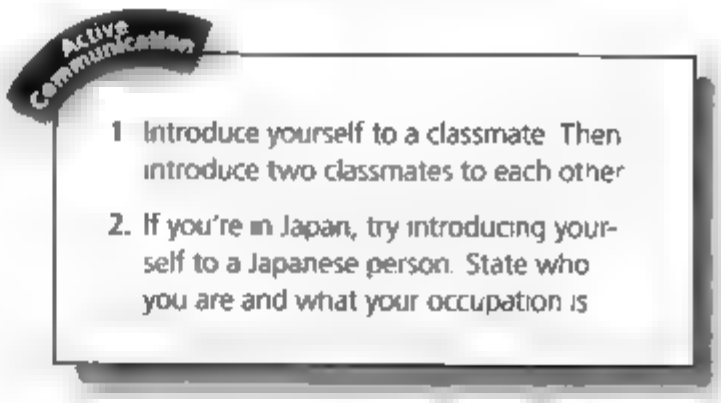
donata	who
hai, dōzo	please go ahead, please feel free

NOTES

1. **Takahashi-san o onegaishimasu.**
   Use "(person) **o onegaishimasu**" when asking a receptionist to summon somebody you want to see. **Onegaishimasu** is a very convenient phrase often used in making polite requests.

2. **Donata**
   The basic word for "who" is **dare**, but **donata** is more polite.

3. **Hai, dōzo.**
   This expression is used when granting a visitor permission to enter a room or an office. It can also be used when handing over something that another person has asked for.



LESSON 2 EXCHANGING BUSINESS CARDS

TARGET DIALOGUE

TRACK 5

Mr. Takahashi gives Mr. Smith his business card. Mr. Smith cannot read *kanji*.

たかはし：わたしの　めいしです。どうぞ。

スミス　どうも　ありがとうございます。*(flipping over Takahashi's business card to examine the other side)* これは　たかはしさんの　なまえですか。

たかはし：ええ、そうです。たかはし　しんごです。

スミス：これは？

たかはし　かいしゃの　なまえです。のぞみデパートです。

Takahashi: Watashi no meishi desu. Dōzo.
Sumisu: Dōmo arigatō gozaimasu. *(flipping over Takahashi's business card to examine the other side)* **Kore wa Takahashi-san no namae desu ka.**
Takahashi: Ee, sō desu. Takahashi Shingo desu.
Sumisu: Kore wa?
Takahashi: Kaisha no namae desu. Nozomi Depāto desu.

Takahashi: This is my business card. Here.
Smith: Thank you very much. Is this your name?
Takahashi: Yes, that's right. It's Shingo Takahashi.
Smith: What about this?
Takahashi: It's the name of (my) company. It's "Nozomi Department Store."

わたしの	**watashi no**	my
めいし	**meishi**	business card
どうぞ	**dōzo**	please; if you please
どうも　ありがとうございます	**dōmo arigatō gozaimasu**	thank you very much
これ	**kore**	this one
なまえ	**namae**	name
ええ	**ee**	yes (less formal than **hai**)
そうです	**sō desu**	that's right
これは？	**kore wa?**	what about this?
かいしゃ	**kaisha**	company, the office

NOTES

1. **(Kore wa) watashi no meishi desu.**
   Watashi no meishi means "my business card." The particle **no** here expresses possession.

2. Dōmo arigatō gozaimasu.
This is an expression of gratitude. There are several levels of politeness in Japanese, and **dōmo arigatō gozaimasu** is an example of the most polite level. More casual are, in descending order of politeness, **arigatō gozaimasu, domo arigatō,** and **arigatō**.

3. Kore wa Takahashi-san no namae desu ka.
Note that although addressing Mr. Takahashi, Mr. Smith uses his name rather than saying **anata no,** "your." (See Note 3, p. 3.)

4. Sō desu.
When replying to questions that end with **desu ka, sō** can be used instead of repeating the noun.

5. Kore wa?
A rising intonation on the particle **wa** makes this informal phrase a question without using the question marker **ka**.

PRACTICE

WORD POWER

I. Numbers

0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
zero/rei	**ichi**	**ni**	**san**	**yon/shi**	**go**	**roku**	**nana/ shichi**	**hachi**	**kyū/ku**

II. Business vocabulary

① のぞみデパート

② 高橋真吾

③ 東京都港区虎ノ門 3-25-2

④ (03) 3459-9620*

⑤ s.takahashi@nozomidpt.com

Nozomi Department Store

Shingo Takahashi

3-25-2 Toranomon, Minato-ku, Tokyo

(03) 3459-9620

E-MAIL: s.takahashi@nozomidpt.com

1. **meishi**
2. **namae**
3. **jūsho**
4. **denwa-bangō**
5. **mēru-adoresu**

*The area code for Tokyo is 03. When saying a phone number aloud, put **no** between the area code (e.g., 03) and the exchange, and between the exchange and the last four numbers. The phone number here is pronounced **zero-san no san-yon-go-kyū no kyu-roku-ni-zero**.
NOTE: The 0 used in telephone numbers is pronounced **zero** instead of **rei**.

VOCABULARY

meishi	business card	**denwa-bangō**	telephone number
namae	name	**denwa**	telephone
jūsho	address	**bangō**	number
		mēru-adoresu	e-mail address

III Personal belongings.

1 **keitai** 2 **kasa** 3 **hon** 4 **shimbun** 5 **kagi** 6 **tokei**

KEY SENTENCES

1. **Kore wa meishi desu.**
2. **Kore wa meishi dewa arimasen.**
3. **Kore wa Sasaki-san no kasa desu.**
4. **Takahashi-san no denwa-bangō wa 03-3459-9620 desu.**

1 This is a business card
2 This is not a business card
3 This is Ms Sasaki's umbrella
4 Mr Takahashi's telephone number is 03-3459-9620

VOCABULARY

keitai	cell/mobile phone	**kagi**	key
kasa	umbrella	**tokei**	watch, clock
hon	book	**dewa arimasen**	is/are not
shimbun	newspaper		

EXERCISES

Make up sentences following the patterns of the examples. Substitute the underlined words with the words in parentheses.

A. ***State what an object is.***

ex. **Kore wa hon desu.**

1. ..... (kagi)

2. ..... (tokei)

B. ***State what an object is not.***

ex. **Kore wa hon dewa arimasen.**

1. ..... (kagi)

2. ..... (tokei)

II. Make up dialogues following the patterns of the examples and based on the information in the illustrations.

A. ***Ask and answer whether an object is what it appears to be.***

ex. **A: Kore wa shimbun desu ka.**
B: Hai, shimbun desu.

1. A.

   B

2. A.

   B

3. A

   B

B. ***Negate the identity of an object.***

ex. **A: Kore wa hon desu ka.**
B. Iie, hon dewa arimasen.

1. A. Kore wa kasa desu ka

   B

2 A. Kore wa tokei desu ka

B

3 A. Kore wa kagi desu ka.

B

III ***Ask and answer what an object is.*** Look at the illustrations and make up dialogues following the pattern of the example

ex **A: Kore wa nan desu ka.**
B: Shimbun desu.

1 A

B

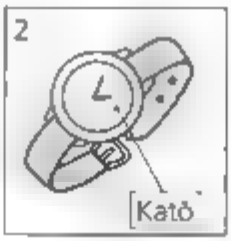
2 A

B

3 A

B

IV ***State who the owner of an object is.*** Make up sentences following the pattern of the example and based on the information in the illustrations.



ex. **Kore wa Sumisu-san no hon desu.**

1

2 _____

3

VOCABULARY **nan** what

V Make up dialogues following the patterns of the examples and based on the information in the illustrations.

A. ***Ask and answer whether an object belongs to someone.***

ex **A. Kore wa Sasaki-san no kasa desu ka.**
B: Hai, Sasaki-san no desu.

1 A

B

2 A

B

3 A

B

B. ***Deny that an object belongs to someone.***

ex. **A: Kore wa Nakamura-san no kasa desu ka.**
B: Iie, Nakamura-san no dewa arimasen.

1. A Kore wa Sasaki-san no hon desu ka

B

2. A. Kore wa Chan-san no kagi desu ka

B

3 A. Kore wa Sumisu-san no keitai desu ka.

B

C. ***Ask and answer who an object's owner is.***

ex. **A: Kore wa dare no kasa desu ka.**
B: Sasaki-san no desu.

1 A.

B

2 A

B

VOCABULARY **dare** who

3 A

B

VI. Use the information in the table to make up sentences or dialogues as in the examples

	NAME	TELEPHONE NUMBER
ex.	Sumisu	03-3459-9660
1	Sasaki	03-3298-7748
2	taishikan	03-3225-1116
3	ginkô	03-5690-3111
4.	Takahashi	03-3459-9620

A. ***State someone's phone number.***

ex. **Sumisu-san no denwa-bangô wa zero-san no san-yon-go-kyû no kyû-roku-roku-zero desu.**

1

2

3

4

B. ***Ask for and provide someone's phone number.***

ex. **A: Sumisu-san no denwa-bangô wa nan-ban desu ka.**
B: Zero-san no san-yon-go-kyû no kyû-roku-roku-zero desu.

1 A.

B

2 A.

B

3 A. _____

B _____

4 A. _____

B _____

VOCABULARY

taishikan	embassy
nan-ban	what number

VII ***Talk about who an object's owner is.*** Make up dialogues following the pattern of the example. Substitute the underlined words with the words in parentheses.

ex Ms. Nakamura is cleaning up the meeting room after a meeting. Mr. Smith comes into the room.

Sumisu: **Kore wa Nakamura-san no hon desu ka.**
Nakamura: (*looking at the book*) **Iie, watashi no dewa arimasen.**
Sumisu: **Dare no hon desu ka.**
Nakamura: **Chan-san no desu.**

1 Sumisu: _____ (kasa)

Nakamura.

Sumisu: _____ (kasa)

Nakamura

2. Sumisu: _____ (kagi)

Nakamura

Sumisu: _____ (kagi)

Nakamura

3. Sumisu: _____ (keitai)

Nakamura:

Sumisu: _____ (keitai)

Nakamura

VIII Listen to the CD and fill in the blank based on the information you hear.

Sumisu-san no denwa-bangô wa _____ desu

1 After Mr. Takahashi leaves the room, Mr. Smith finds a date book on the sofa

Sumisu: Kore wa Nakamura-san no techō desu ka.
Nakamura: Iie, watashi no dewa arimasen.
Sumisu: Dare no desu ka.

Ms. Nakamura notices the name "Takahashi" on the date book, so she runs after him

Nakamura: Kore wa Takahashi-san no techō desu ka.
Takahashi: Ee, sō desu. Dōmo arigatō gozaimasu.

Smith: Ms. Nakamura, is this your date book?
Nakamura: No, it's not mine
Smith: Whose is it?

Nakamura: Is this your date book, Mr. Takahashi?
Takahashi: Yes, it is. Thank you very much

VOCABULARY

techō	date book, small notebook, planner

2 Ms. Chan meets Mrs. Matsui at a party and asks her for her telephone number

Chan: Matsui-san no denwa-bangō wa nan-ban desu ka.
Matsui: 03-3459-9630 desu. Keitai wa 090-1234-5678 desu.
Chan: Sumimasen. Mō ichi-do onegaishimasu.

Chan: What is your phone number, Mrs. Matsui?
Matsui: It's 03-3459-9630. My mobile phone number is 090-1234-5678
Chan: I'm sorry, could you repeat that?

VOCABULARY

sumimasen	I'm sorry
mō ichi-do onegaishimasu	one more time, please
mō ichi-do	one more time
mō	more
ichi-do	one time

Active Communication

1. Ask the people around you what their phone numbers are and make a list
2. If you're in Japan, ask an employee of a restaurant or store what the establishment's phone number is

Ms. Makamura notes the name: "Takashi." Does this ring a bell?

Takashi: Ee, sō desu. Bōmo arigatō gozaimasu.

Ms. Makamura, is that your date book?

Yes, it's our [illegible]

Makamura: Is this your date book, Mr. Takashi?

Takashi: Yes, it is. Thank you very much.

Mr. Chan meets Mrs. Matsui at a party and asks her for her

Chan: **Matsui san no denwa-bango wo oshiete kudasai.**

Matsui: **Sō desu. Watashi no denwa-bango wa 090-4294-5827 desu.**

Chan: **Sumimasen. Mō ichi-do onegaishimasu.**

UNIT 2

SHOPPING

Japan is a shopper's paradise. From large and lavish department stores to small, hole-in-the-wall establishments in shopping arcades, the country abounds with shops. For the most part, price labels are attached to goods, although sometimes when the prices are not given or are written in *kanji* it is necessary to ask how much an item costs. Salesclerks are generally polite and helpful, upon entering a store or restaurant, a customer will almost always be greeted. The greeting is *irasshaimase*!

UNIT 2 GRAMMAR

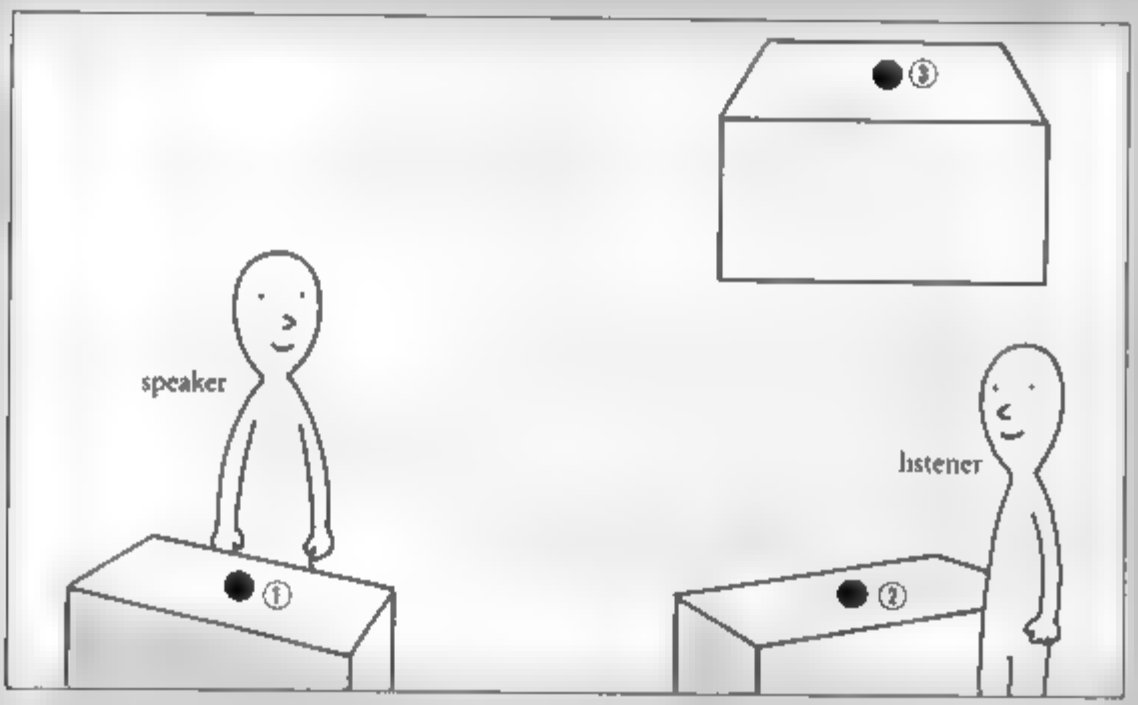
Pronouns and Noun Modifiers

kore/sore/are wa noun **desu**

ex. **Kore wa hon desu.** "This is a book."

■ Kore/Sore/Are

Whereas English has only "this" and "that," Japanese has three separate demonstrative pronouns **kore**, **sore**, and **are**. **Kore** (see ① below) indicates something near the speaker, **sore** (see ② below) something near the listener, and **are** (see ③ below) something not near either person.



kono/sono/ano noun 1 **wa** noun 2 **desu**

ex. **Kono hon wa watashi no desu.** "This book is mine."

■ Kono/Sono/Ano

Kono, **sono**, and **ano** have similar meanings to **kore**, **sore**, and **are**, but they modify nouns.

LESSON 3 ASKING ABOUT BUSINESS HOURS

TARGET DIALOGUE

TRACK 9

Mr. Smith goes to the department store, but it isn't open yet

スミス：すみません、いま　なんじですか。

おんなの　ひと：９じ５０ぷんです。

スミス：デパートは　なんじからですか。

おんなの　ひと：１０じからです。

スミス：なんじまでですか。

おんなの　ひと：ごご　８じまでです。

スミス：ありがとうございます。

おんなの　ひと：どういたしまして。

■ デパートは　１０じから　８じまでです。

Sumisu: Sumimasen, ima nan-ji desu ka.
onna no hito: Ku-ji gojuppun desu.
Sumisu: Depāto wa nan-ji kara desu ka.
onna no hito: Jū-ji kara desu.
Sumisu: Nan-ji made desu ka.
onna no hito: Gogo hachi-ji made desu.
Sumisu: Arigatō gozaimasu.
onna no hito: Dō itashimashite.

■ Depāto wa jū-ji kara hachi-ji made desu.

Smith: Excuse me. What time is it?
woman: It's 9:50.
Smith: What time does the department store open?
woman: It opens at 10:00.
Smith: Until what time is it open?
woman: It's open till 8:00 p.m.
Smith: Thank you.
woman: You're welcome.

■ The department store is open from 10:00 to 8:00.

すみません	sumimasen	excuse me
いま	ima	now

なんじ	**nan-ji**	what time
～じ	**-ji**	o'clock (counter)
おんなの　ひと	**onna no hito**	woman
おんな	**onna**	female, woman
ひと	**hito**	person
9じ	**ku-ji**	nine o'clock
50ぷん	**gojuppun/gojippun**	fifty minutes
50	**goju**	fifty
～ふん／ぷん	**-fun/-pun**	minute
から	**kara**	from (particle)
10じ	**jū-ji**	ten o'clock
まで	**made**	until (particle)
ごご	**gogo**	p.m., in the afternoon
8じ	**hachi-ji**	eight o'clock
どういたしまして	**dō itashimashite**	you're welcome, don't mention it

NOTES

1. **(Depāto wa) jū-ji kara desu./(Depāto wa) gogo hachi-ji made desu.**
   When stating the hours that a business is open, use the "noun 1 **wa** noun 2 **desu**" pattern. However, if the topic of the sentence is clear from the context, it may be omitted, as it has been here. (See "Omission of the topic (noun 1)" in Unit 1 Grammar, p. 2.) The time the business opens is followed by **kara**, and the time that it closes is followed by **made**.

PRACTICE

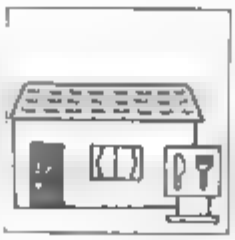
WORD POWER

CD TRACK 10

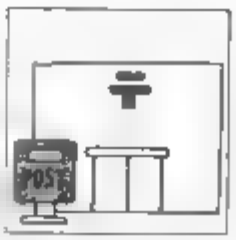
I. Services and activities.

1. **depāto**

2. **sūpā**



3. **resutoran**



4. **yubinkyoku**

5. **ginkō**

VOCABULARY

depāto	department store	**ginkō**	bank
sūpā	supermarket		
resutoran	restaurant		
yūbinkyoku	post office		

6. **shigoto** 7. **kaigi** 8. **hiru-yasumi** 9. **pāti** 10. **eiga**

II. Numbers

10	**jū**	20	**nijū**	30	**sanjū**	100	**hyaku**
11	**jūichi**	21	**nijūichi**	40	**yonjū**		
12	**jūni**	22	**nijūni**	50	**gojū**		
13	**jūsan**	23	**nijūsan**	60	**rokujū**		
14	**jūyon/jūshi**	24	**nijūyon/nijūshi**	70	**nanajū**		
15	**Jūgo**	25	**nijūgo**	80	**hachijū**		
16	**Jūroku**	26	**nijūroku**	90	**kyūjū**		
17	**jūnana/ jūshichi**	27	**nijūnana/ nijushichi**				
18	**Jūhachi**	28	**nijūhachi**				
19	**Jūku/jūkyū**	29	**nijūku/nijūkyū**				

II. Times

1:00	**ichi-ji**	3:05	**san-ji go-fun**	3:10	**san-ji juppun**
2:00	**ni-ji**	3:15	**san-ji jūgo-fun**	3:20	**san-ji nijuppun**
3:00	**san-ji**	3:25	**san-ji nijūgo-fun**	3:30	**san-ji sanjuppun/san-ji han**
4:00	**yo-ji**	3:35	**san-ji sanjūgo-fun**	3:40	**san-ji yonjuppun**
5:00	**go-ji**	3:45	**san-ji yonjūgo-fun**	3:50	**san-ji gojuppun**
6:00	**roku-ji**	3:55	**san-ji gojūgo-fun**		
7:00	**shichi-ji**				
8:00	**hachi-ji**			4:00 a.m.	**gozen yo-ji**
9:00	**ku-ji**			9:00 p.m.	**gogo ku-ji**
10:00	**jū-ji**				
11:00	**jūichi-ji**				
12:00	**jūni-ji**				

NOTE: Hours and minutes are romanized here, but throughout the rest of the book they are spelled with numerals, e.g., **1-ji** for "1:00," **10-ji 20-pun** for "10:20," etc.

VOCABULARY

shigoto	work, job	**pāti**	party
kaigi	meeting, conference	**eiga**	[illegible]
hiru-yasumi	lunch break	**han**	half past (of time)
hiru	afternoon	**gozen**	a.m., in the morning
yasumi	break, rest		

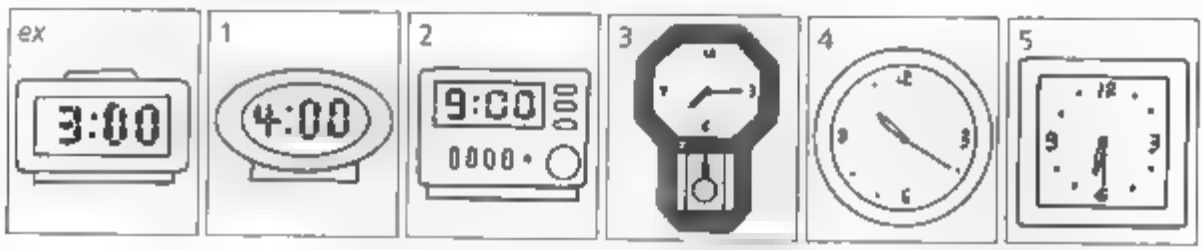
KEY SENTENCES

1. **Ima 3-ji desu.**
2. **Shigoto wa 9-ji kara 5-ji made desu.**

1 It's 3:00
2 Work is from 9:00 to 5:00

EXERCISES

I ***State the time.*** Practice telling the times indicated below



ex. **3-ji** 1 2 3 4 5

II ***Ask and give the time*** Make up dialogues following the pattern of the example. Substitute the underlined word with the times indicated in exercise I.

ex. **A: Ima nan-ji desu ka.**
B: 3-ji desu.

1 A

B

2 A

B

3 A

B

4 A

B

5 A

B

III. Make up sentences following the patterns of the examples. Substitute the underlined word(s) with the alternatives given.

A. ***State a department store's opening time.***

ex. **Depāto wa 10-ji kara desu.**

1. ..... (9:00)

2. ..... (11:00)

B. ***State what time work will finish.***

ex. **Shigoto wa 5-ji made desu.**

1. ..... (7:00)

2. ..... (6:30)

C. ***State what work hours are, from what time until what time.***

ex. **Shigoto wa 9-ji kara 5-ji made desu.**

1. ..... (9:30, 6:00)

2. ..... (10:00, 7:00)

IV. Make up dialogues following the patterns of the examples. Substitute the underlined words with the alternatives given.

A. ***Ask and answer what time a business will open.***

ex. **A: Ginkō wa nan-ji kara desu ka.**
B: 9-ji kara desu.

1. A. ..... (sūpā)

   B: ..... (11:00)

2. A. ..... (yūbinkyoku)

   B. ..... (9:00)

B. ***Ask and answer what time something will end or close.***

ex. **A: Pāti wa nan-ji made desu ka.**
B: Gogo 9-ji made desu.

1. A. ..... (resutoran)

   B. ..... (gogo 11:30)

2. A: ..... (kaigi)

   B: ..... (10:30)

C *Ask and answer what an event's hours are.*

ex. **A: Kaigi wa nan-ji kara nan-ji made desu ka.**
B: 1-ji kara 3-ji made desu.

1 A. _____ (hiru-yasumi)

B _____ (12:30, 1:30)

2 A. _____ (eiga)

B. _____ (4:15, 6:30)

V *Find out when a service will begin or when a facility will open.* Make up dialogues following the pattern of the example. Substitute the underlined words with the alternatives given.

ex. Mr. Smith is at a resort hotel. He asks the front desk when meals are served and when the hotel's facilities open.

Sumisu: Sumimasen. Asa-gohan wa nan-ji kara desu ka.
furonto: 7-ji kara desu.
Sumisu: Dōmo arigatō.

1 Sumisu: _____ (ban-gohan)

furonto: _____ (6:00)

Sumisu

2 Sumisu: _____ (pūru)

furonto: _____ (8:00 a.m.)

Sumisu

3 Sumisu: _____ (jimu)

furonto: _____ (9:00 a.m.)

Sumisu

VI. Listen to the CD and fill in the blank based on the information you hear.

jimu wa _____ kara desu

VOCABULARY

asa-gohan	breakfast	**furonto**	the front desk (of a hotel)	**pūru**	pool
asa	morning	**dōmo arigatō**	thank you	**jimu**	gym
gohan	meal	**ban-gohan**	dinner		
		ban	evening		

SHORT DIALOGUE

Ms. Sasaki wants to call the London branch of her company.

Sasaki: **Nakamura-san, ima nan-ji desu ka.**
Nakamura: **4-ji han desu.**
Sasaki: **Rondon wa ima nan-ji desu ka.**
Nakamura: **Gozen 8-ji han desu.**
Sasaki: **Sō desu ka. Dōmo arigatō.**

Sasaki: Ms. Nakamura, what time is it?
Nakamura: It's 4:30.
Sasaki: What time is it in London?
Nakamura: It's 8:30 in the morning.
Sasaki: Is that so? Thank you very much.

sō desu ka I see

NOTES

1. Sō desu ka.
This expression, meaning "I see" or "is that so?" is used as a comment on what someone else has said. It is spoken with falling intonation.

Active Communication

1. Ask someone for the time.
2. If you're in Japan, try asking for the business hours of a restaurant or other facilities you are interested in.

LESSON 4 SHOPPING, PART I

TARGET DIALOGUE

TRACK 13

Mr. Smith is shopping in a department store

みせの　ひと：いらっしゃいませ。

スミス：(*pointing*) それを　みせてください。

みせの　ひと：はい、どうぞ。

スミス：ありがとう。これは　いくらですか。

みせの　ひと：3,000 えんです。

スミス：(*pointing*) それは　いくらですか。

みせの　ひと：これも　3,000 えんです。

スミス：じゃ、それを　ください。

みせの　ひと：はい、ありがとうございます。

mise no hito: Irasshaimase.
Sumisu: (*pointing*) **Sore o misete kudasai.**
mise no hito: Hai, dōzo.
Sumisu: Arigatō. Kore wa ikura desu ka.
mise no hito: Sanzen-en desu.
Sumisu: (*pointing*) **Sore wa ikura desu ka.**
mise no hito: Kore mo sanzen-en desu.
Sumisu: Ja, sore o kudasai.
mise no hito: Hai, arigatō gozaimasu.

salesperson: May I help you?
Smith: Please show me that one.
salesperson: Yes, here it is.
Smith: Thank you. How much is this?
salesperson: It's 3,000 yen.
Smith: How much is that one?
salesperson: This is also 3,000 yen.
Smith: I'll take that one, then.
salesperson: All right. Thank you.

VOCABULARY

みせ	**mise**	shop, store, restaurant
いらっしゃいませ	**irasshaimase**	may I help you?, welcome
それ	**sore**	that one
みせてください	**misete kudasai**	please show me
いくら	**ikura**	how much

3,000えん	**sanzen-en**	3,000 yen
～えん	**-en**	yen
も	**mo**	also, too, either (particle)
じゃ	**ja**	well then
ください	**kudasai**	please give me

NOTES

1. Sore o misete kudasai.

When you want to take a closer look at an item in a store, use "(something) **o misete kudasai**" ("please show me . . .").

2. Sanzen-en

The system of counting large numbers is different in Japanese and English. The chart below shows how to count from a thousand to a trillion.

1,000	**sen**
10,000	**ichi-man**
100,000	**jū-man**
1,000,000	**hyaku-man**
10,000,000	**sen-man**
100,000,000	**ichi-oku**
1,000,000,000	**jū-oku**
10,000,000,000	**hyaku-oku**
100,000,000,000	**sen-oku**
1,000,000,000,000	**it-chō**

chō oku man
2,222,222,222,222
nichō nisen nihyaku nijūni-oku nisen nihyaku nijūni-man nisen nihyaku nijūni

Decimals. (The word for "decimal point" is **ten**.)

0	**rei**
0.7	**rei ten nana**
0.29	**rei ten ni kyū**
0.538	**rei ten go san hachi**

Fractions. (**Bun** means "part.")

1/2	**ni-bun no ichi**	2/3	**san-bun no ni**
1/4	**yon-bun no ichi**		

3. Kore mo sanzen-en desu.

The particle **mo** means "too," "also," "either," etc. It is used in both affirmative and negative sentences.

ex. **Sore wa sanzen-en desu. Kore mo sanzen-en desu.**
"That one is 3,000 yen. This one is 3,000 yen, too."
Kore wa watashi no kasa dewa arimasen. Sore mo watashi no dewa arimasen.
"This is not my umbrella. That's not mine either."

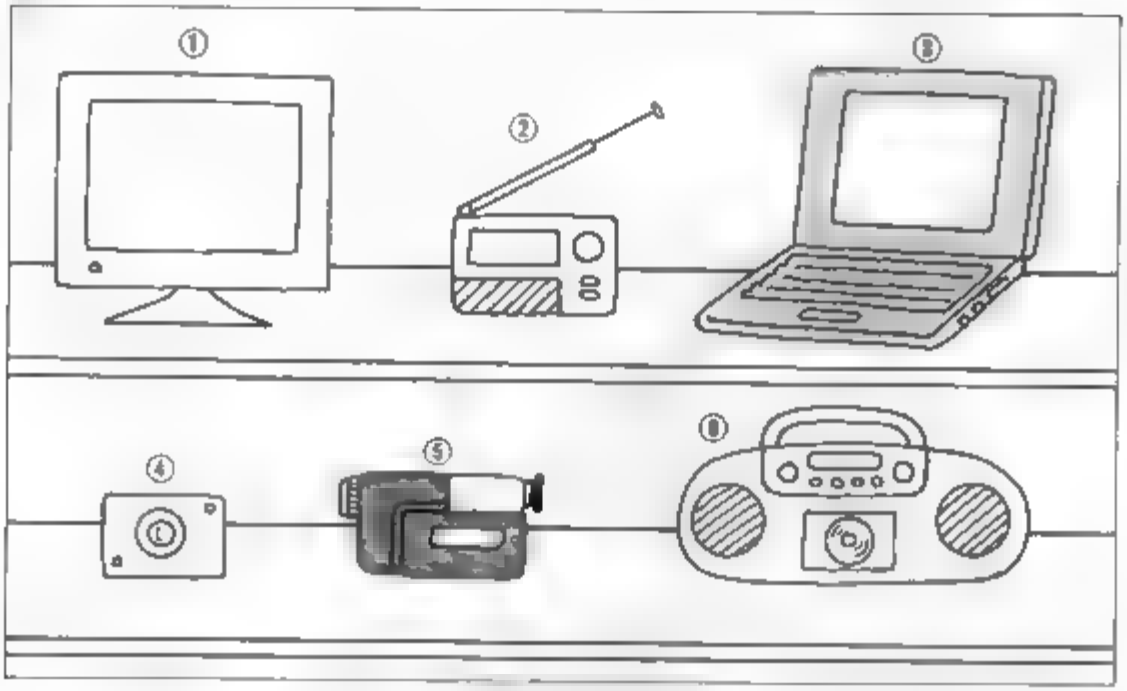
4. Ja, kore o kudasai.

Ja and **dewa** correspond to "well" or "well then," interjections that express conclusion or resignation. **Kore o kudasai** means "I'll take this one" and is the phrase to use when you have decided what you want to buy.

PRACTICE

WORD POWER

I Electronic appliances



1 **terebi** 2 **rajio** 3 **pasokon** 4 **dejikame** 5 **bideo-kamera** 6 **CD-purêyā**

II Numbers

100	**hyaku**	1 000	**sen**	10 000	**ichiman**
200	**nihyaku**	2,000	**nisen**	20 000	**niman**
300	**sambyaku**	3,000	**sanzen**	30,000	**samman**
400	**yonhyaku**	4,000	**yonsen**	40,000	**yomman**
500	**gohyaku**	5,000	**gosen**	50,000	**goman**
600	**roppyaku**	6,000	**rokusen**	60,000	**rokuman**
700	**nanahyaku**	7,000	**nanasen**	70 000	**nanaman**
800	**happyaku**	8,000	**hassen**	80,000	**hachiman**
900	**kyūhyaku**	9,000	**kyūsen**	90,000	**kyūman**

intermediate numbers are made by combining the numbers composing them
ex 135 **hyaku-sanjū-go** 1,829 **sen-happyaku-nijukyū**

NOTE Large numbers are spelled out here in romanized Japanese but throughout the rest of the book, numerals are used to write them, e g , **3,000-en** for "3,000 yen "

VOCABULARY

terebi	television
rajio	radio
pasokon	(personal) computer
dejikame	digital camera
bideo-kamera	video camera
bideo	video
kamera	camera
CD-purêyā	CD player
CD (=shidi)	CD

III. Japanese currency

1 **1-en**

2 **5-en**

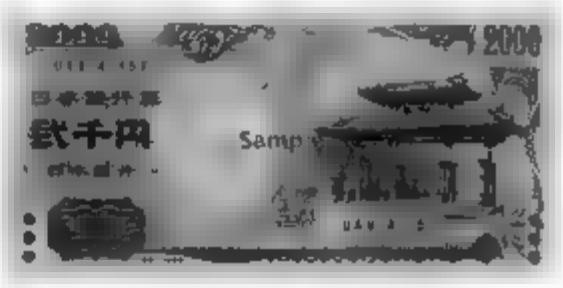
3. **10-en**

4 **50-en**

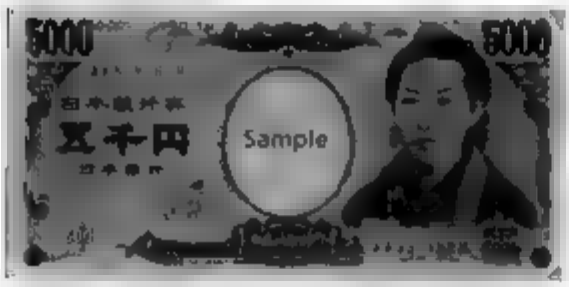
5. **100-en**

6 **500-en**

7 **1,000-en**



8 **2,000-en**



9 **5,000-en**

10. **10,000-en**

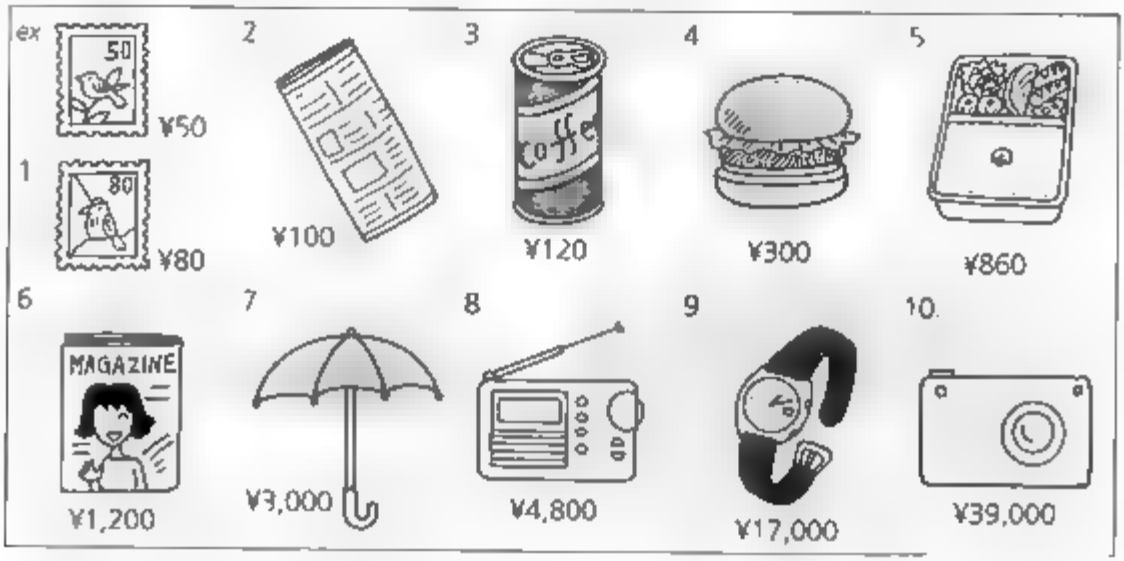
KEY SENTENCES

1. **Sore wa terebi desu.**
2. **Are wa pasokon desu.**
3. **Kore wa 3,000-en desu. Are mo 3,000-en desu.**

1 That is a television set
2 That over there is a personal computer
3. This is 3,000 yen. That, too, is 3,000 yen

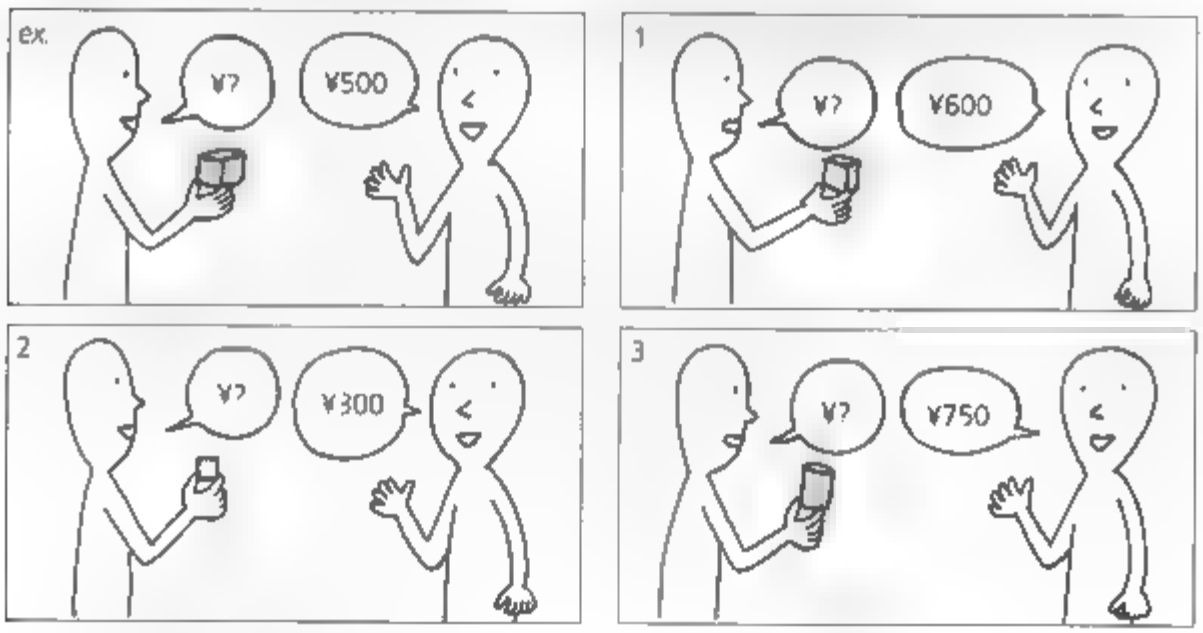
VOCABULARY **are** that one over there

State an item's price Look at the illustrations and state the price of each item



ex. **gojū-en**
1. .....
2. .....
3. .....
4. .....
5.
6. .....
7. .....
8
9
10

II ***Ask and give an item's price.*** Make up dialogues following the pattern of the example and based on the information in the illustrations.



ex. **A: Kore wa ikura desu ka.**
B: 500-en desu.

1 A

B

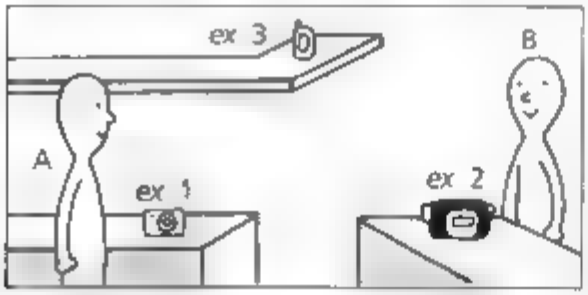
2 A

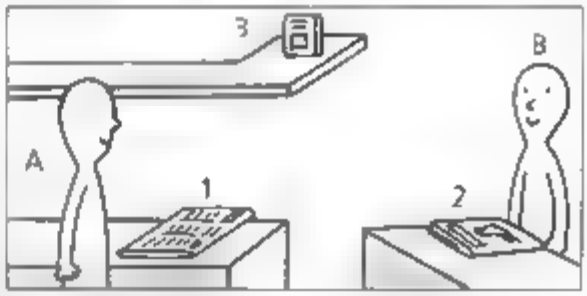
B

3 A

B

III ***Identify objects in different locations.*** Look at the illustration and make up sentences like the examples. Substitute the underlined words with the alternatives given





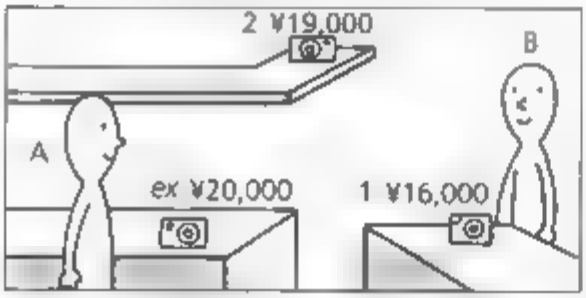
ex. 1 **A: Kore wa dejikame desu.**
ex. 2 **A: Sore wa bideo-kamera desu.**
ex. 3 **A: Are wa keitai desu.**

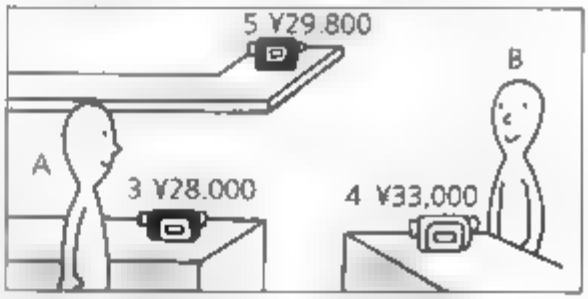
1. A. ..... (shimbun)

2. A. ..... (zasshi)

3. A. ..... (hon)

IV ***Ask and give an item's price.*** Use the information in the illustrations to make appropriate questions for each of the answers given.





ex. **A: Kore wa ikura desu ka.**
B: 20,000-en desu.

1 A
B 16,000-en desu.

VOCABULARY **zasshi** magazine

2 A
B 19,000-en desu.

3 A
B 28,000-en desu

4 A.
B. 33,000-en desu.

5 A
B 29 800-en desu

V ***State that two things cost the same or are the same thing*** Make up sentences following the pattern of the example Substitute the underlined words with the alternatives given

ex. **Kore wa 800-en desu. Sore mo 800-en desu.**

1 ..... (1,500-en)

2 ..... (tokei)

3. ..... (Sumisu-san no hon)

VI ***Ask the price of more than one item.*** Make up dialogues following the pattern of the example Subst tute the underlined words with the alternatives given

ex. **Sumisu: Kore wa ikura desu ka.**
mise no hito: 8,000-en desu.
Sumisu: Are mo 8,000-en desu ka.
mise no hito: Ie, 8,000-en dewa arimasen.
7,500-en desu.

1. Sumisu

mise no hito: ..... (7,000-en)

Sumisu: ..... (7,000-en)

mise no hito: ..... (7,000-en)

2. Sumisu

mise no hito: ..... (9,000-en)

Sumisu: ..... (9,000-en)

mise no hito: ..... (9,000-en)

3 Sumisu

mise no hito: ..... (6,500-en)

Sumisu: ..... (6,500-en)

mise no hito: ..... (6,500-en)

VII ***Confirm what an item is.*** Make up dialogues following the pattern of the example. Substitute the underlined words with the alternatives given.

ex. Mr. Smith comes to a store.

Sumisu: Are wa DVD desu ka.
mise no hito: Iie, CD desu.
Sumisu: Sore wa DVD desu ka.
mise no hito: Hai, DVD desu.

1. Sumisu: ..... (shāpupenshiru)
   mise no hito: ..... (bōrupen)
   Sumisu: ..... (shāpupenshiru)
   mise no hito: ..... (shāpupenshiru)
2. Sumisu: ..... (Furansu-go no jisho)
   mise no hito: ..... (Eigo no jisho)
   Sumisu: ..... (Furansu-go no jisho)
   mise no hito: ..... (Furansu-go no jisho)

VII ***Buy something at a store.*** Make up dialogues following the pattern of the example. Substitute the underlined words with the alternatives given.

ex. **Sumisu: Sumimasen. Are wa bideo-kamera desu ka.**
mise no hito: Iie, dejikame desu.
Sumisu: Sore wa bideo-kamera desu ka.
mise no hito: Hai, sō desu.
Sumisu: Ikura desu ka.
mise no hito: 50,000-en desu.
Sumisu: Ja, sore o kudasai.

1. Sumisu: ..... (CD-purēyā)
   mise no hito: ..... (rajio)
   Sumisu: ..... (CD-purēyā)
   mise no hito
   Sumisu
   mise no hito: ..... (15,000-en)
   Sumisu

VOCABULARY

DVD (=dibuidi)	DVD	**Furansu-go**	French (language)
shāpupenshiru	mechanical pencil	**Furansu**	France
bōrupen	ballpoint pen	**-go**	language
		jisho	dictionary
		Eigo	English (language)

2 Sumisu: _____ (terebi)

mise no hito: _____ (pasokon)

Sumisu: _____ (terebi)

mise no hito: _____

Sumisu: _____

mise no hito: _____ (180,000-en)

Sumisu: _____

IX. Listen to the CD and fill in the blank based on the information you hear.

Bideo-kamera wa _____ -en desu.

SHORT DIALOGUE

Mr. Smith is at a store, shopping.

Sumisu: Kore o kudasai.
mise no hito: 4,300-en desu.
Sumisu: Kādo demo ii desu ka.
mise no hito: Hai, kekkō desu.

Smith: I'll take this.
salesperson: It's 4,300 yen.
Smith: Is it all right to use a credit card?
salesperson: Yes, it's fine.

kādo	(credit) card
demo ii desu ka	is ... all right?
hai, kekkō desu	yes, it's fine

NOTES

1. Kādo demo ii desu ka.
The phrase **demo ii desu ka** is used to ask if something is permissible. It means "Is ... all right?"

Active Communication

If you're in Japan, try asking the prices of items at vendors where prices are not listed or are written in *kanji*.

SHOPPING, PART II

TARGET DIALOGUE

TRACK 17

Mr. Smith buys a T-shirt

スミス：すみません。あの　Ｔシャツは　いくらですか。

みせの　ひと：どれですか。

スミス：あの　あおい　Ｔシャツです。

みせの　ひと：あれは　1,500えんです。

スミス：その　あかい　Ｔシャツは　いくらですか。

みせの　ひと：1,000えんです。

スミス：じゃ、それを　２まい　ください。

■ あかい　Ｔシャツは　1,000えんです。

Sumisu. Sumimasen. Ano T-shatsu wa ikura desu ka.
mise no hito: Dore desu ka.
Sumisu: Ano aoi T-shatsu desu.
mise no hito: Are wa 1,500-en desu.
Sumisu: Sono akai T-shatsu wa ikura desu ka.
mise no hito: 1,000-en desu.
Sumisu. Ja, sore o 2-mai kudasai.

■ Akai T-shatsu wa 1,000-en desu.

Smith: Excuse me. How much is that T-shirt over there?
salesperson: Which one?
Smith: That blue T-shirt.
salesperson: That's 1,500 yen.
Smith: How much is that red T-shirt?
salesperson: It's 1,000 yen.
Smith: Well then, give me two of those.

■ The red T-shirt is 1,000 yen.

VOCABULARY

あの	**ano**	that over there (used before a noun)
Ｔシャツ	**T-shatsu**	T-shirt
どれ	**dore**	which one
あおい	**aoi**	blue
その	**sono**	that (used before a noun)

あかい	**akai**	red
2まい	**2-mai**	two (shirts or other flat objects)
～まい	**-mai**	(counter for flat objects)

NOTES

1. Sore o 2-mai kudasai.

-Mai is a unit for counting thin, flat objects like shirts and pieces of paper. Japanese has two numerical systems: the **hitotsu, futatsu, mittsu** system and the abstract **ichi, ni, san** system. Counting things can be done in two ways: (1) using the **hitotsu, futatsu, mittsu** system independently (see Word Power, p. 39) or (2) using the **ichi, ni, san** system combined with a counter such as **-mai** or **-hon** (**-bon, -pon**), the latter for long, slender objects like pencils and bottles.

ex. **Ringo o futatsu kudasai.** "Please give me two apples."

The **hitotsu, futatsu, mittsu** system, however, only goes as far as **tō** (10), after which the **ichi, ni, san** system is used: **jūichi, jūni, jūsan**, etc.

Note the word order here: thing + **o** + number (or number and counter) + **kudasai**

PRACTICE

WORD POWER

TRACK 18

I. Items for sale

1 **hagaki**	4 **akai**	7 **biru**	10 **chiisai**
2 **kitte**	5 **aoi**	8 **ringo**	
3 **T-shatsu**	6 **kuroi**	9 **ōkii**	

VOCABULARY

hagaki	postcard	**aoi**	blue	**ōkii**	large, big
kitte	stamp	**kuroi**	black	**chiisai**	small, little
T-shatsu	T-shirt	**biru**	beer		
akai	red	**ringo**	apple		

	etc.	etc	etc
1	ichi-mai	ippon	hitotsu
2	ni-mai	ni-hon	futatsu
3	san-mai	sam-bon	mittsu
4	yon-mai	yon-hon	yottsu
5	go-mai	go-hon	itsutsu
6	roku-mai	roppon	muttsu
7	nana-mai	nana-hon	nanatsu
8	hachi-mai	happon	yattsu
9	kyū-mai	kyū-hon	kokonotsu
10	jū-mai	juppon	tō
11	jūichi-mai	jūippon	jūichi
12	jūni-mai	jūni-hon	juni

KEY SENTENCES

1. **Kono T-shatsu wa 2,000-en desu.**
2. **Ano chiisai kamera wa 5,000-en desu.**
3. **Kore wa Suisu no tokei desu.**
4. **Sono ringo o futatsu kudasai.**

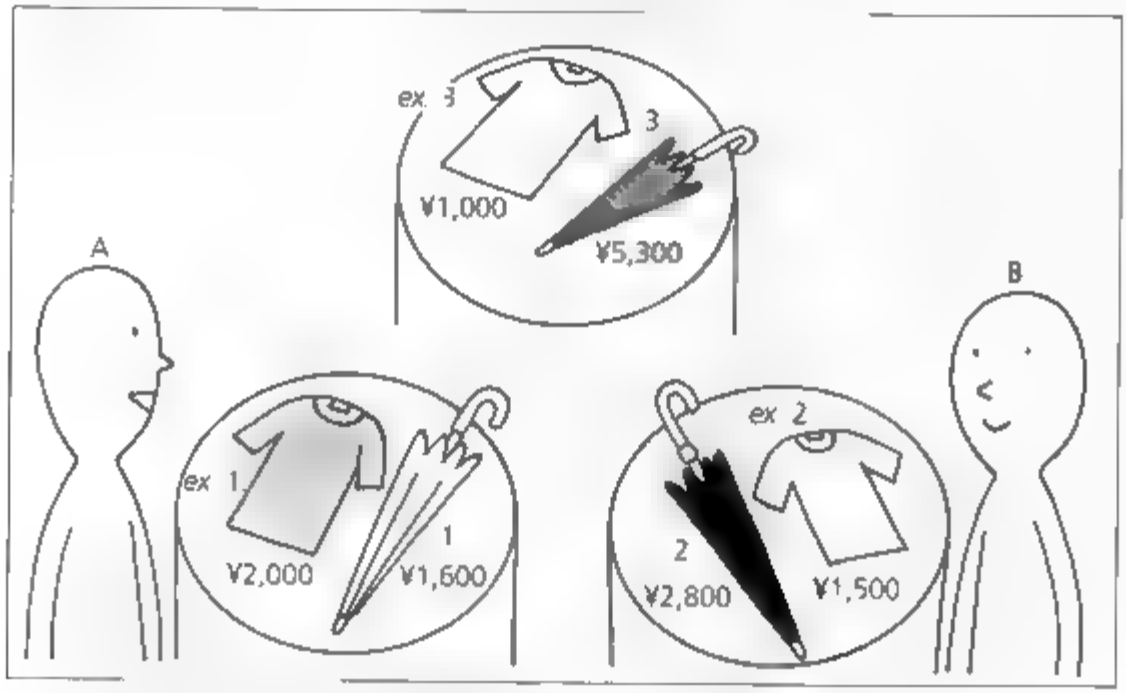
1. This T-shirt is 2,000 yen
2. That little camera over there is 5,000 yen
3. This is a Swiss watch
4. Give me two of those apples

VOCABULARY

kono	this (used before a noun)
Suisu	Switzerland

EXERCISES

Single out a specific item and state its price. Look at the illustration and state how much the umbrellas cost, following the pattern of the example



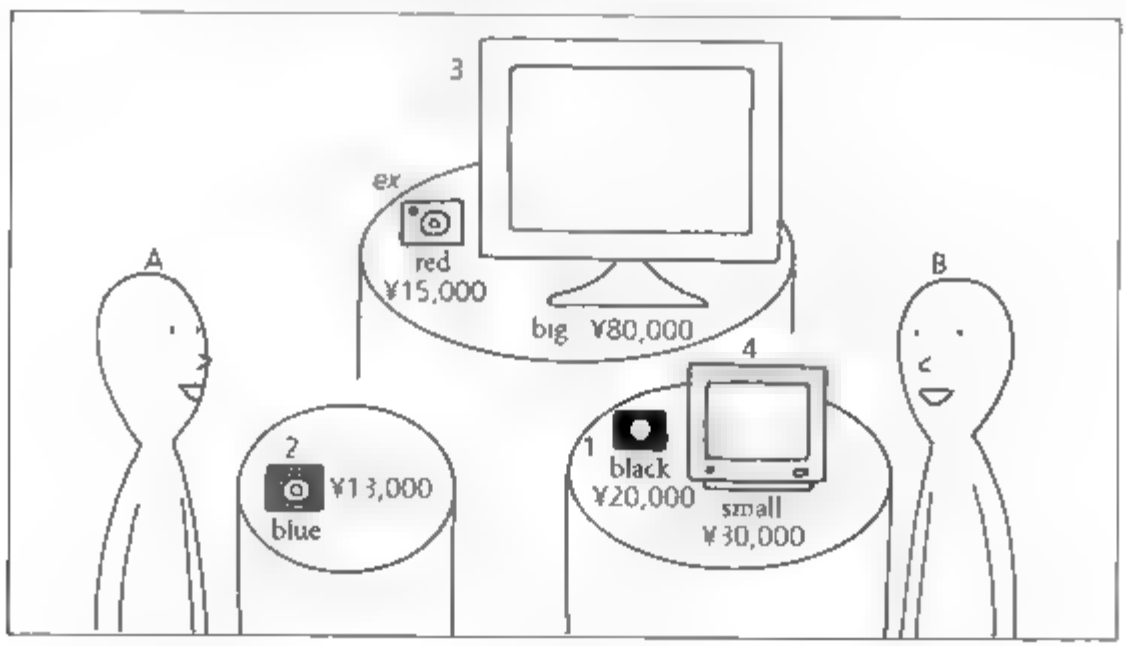
ex 1 **A: Kono T-shatsu wa 2,000-en desu.**
ex 2 **A: Sono T-shatsu wa 1,500-en desu.**
ex 3 **A: Ano T-shatsu wa 1,000-en desu.**

1 A

2 A

3 A

1 ***Ask and give a specific item's price*** Make up dialogues following the pattern of the example and based on the information in the illustration



ex. **A: Ano akai kamera wa ikura desu ka.**
B: 15,000-en desu.

1 A

B

2 A

B

3 A

B

4. A

B

III Make up dialogues following the patterns of the examples. Substitute the underlined parts with the alternatives given

A *Ask and answer whether an item is from a given country.*

ex. **A: Kore wa Suisu no tokei desu ka.**
B: Iie, Suisu no dewa arimasen. Furansu no desu.

1. A: ..... (Igirisu no kuruma)

B. ..... (Igirisu no, Itaria no)

2. A: ..... (N hon no kamera)

B. ..... (N hon no, Doitsu no)

B *Ask and answer what an item's country of origin is.*

ex. **A: Kore wa doko no pasokon desu ka.**
B: Kankoku no desu.

1. A. ..... (dejikame)

B: ..... (Nihon no)

2. A. ..... (biru)

B. ..... (Doitsu no)

VOCABULARY		
	kuruma	car
	Itaria	Italy
	doko	where, which place
	Kankoku	South Korea

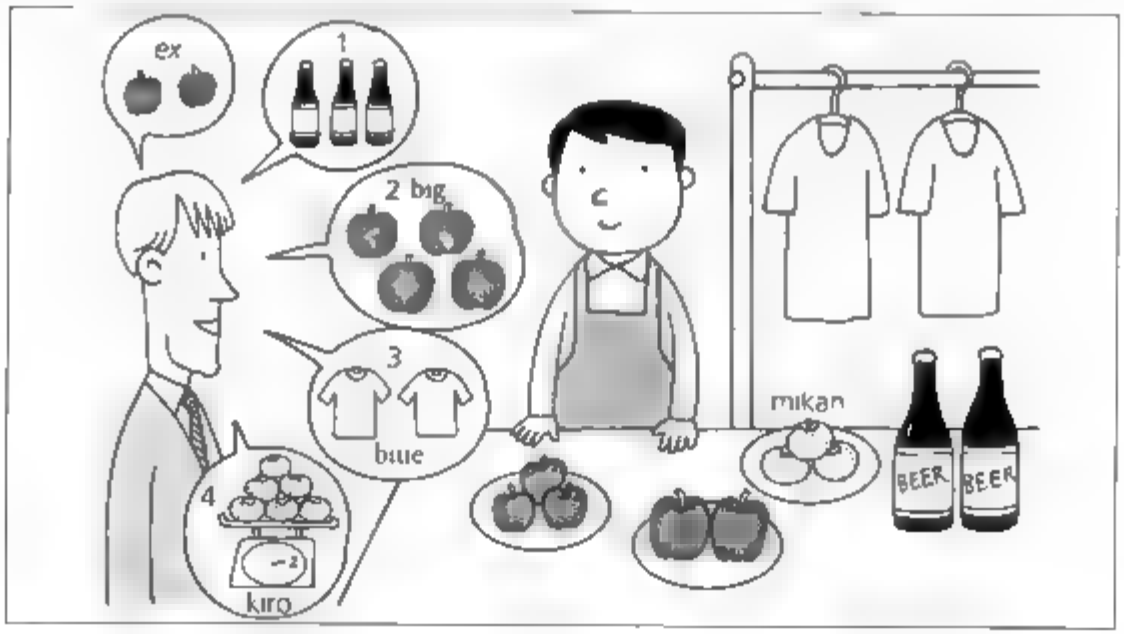
IV ***Ask an item's price and whether it is a product of Japan.*** Make up dialogues following the pattern of the example. Substitute the underlined parts with the alternatives given.

ex. Mr. Smith has gone to a store to shop

Sumisu: Ano kamera wa ikura desu ka.
mise no hito: 20,000-en desu.
Sumisu: Are wa Nihon no kamera desu ka.
mise no hito: Hai, Nihon no desu.

1. Sumisu: ..... (sono tokei)
   mise no hito: ..... (15,000-en)
   Sumisu: ..... (sore, tokei)
   mise no hito: .....
2. Sumisu: ..... (kono terebi)
   mise no hito: ..... (43,000-en)
   Sumisu: ..... (kore, terebi)
   mise no hito: .....
3. Sumisu: ..... (kono kuruma)
   mise no hito: ..... (1,500,000-en)
   Sumisu: ..... (kore, kuruma)
   mise no hito: .....

V ***Ask for more than one of an item at a store.*** Make up sentences following the pattern of the example and based on the information in the illustration.



VOCABULARY

mikan	tangerine
kiro	kilogram

ex **Sumisu: Sono ringo o futatsu kudasai.**

1 Sumisu:

2 Sumisu:

3 Sumisu:

4 Sumisu:

VI ***Talk about an item's price and country of origin.*** Make up dialogues following the pattern of the example. Substitute the underlined words with the words in parentheses.

ex. **Sumisu: Sumimasen. Sono wain wa ikura desu ka.**
mise no hito: 1,200-en desu.
Sumisu: Sore wa doko no wain desu ka.
mise no hito: Furansu no desu.
Sumisu: Ja, sore o 2-hon kudasai.

1. Sumisu: ..... (kōhī-kappu)

mise no hito

Sumisu: ..... (kōhī-kappu)

mise no hito: ..... (Itaria)

Sumisu: ..... (muttsu)

2. Sumisu: ..... (taoru)

mise no hito

Sumisu: ..... (taoru)

mise no hito: ..... (Igirisu)

Sumisu: ..... (4-mai)

VII Listen to the CD and choose the correct answers based on the information you hear.

1 Where is the beer from?

a) Nihon b) Amerika c) Doitsu

2 How much does the beer cost?

a) 300-en b) 200-en c) 100-en

VOCABULARY

wain	wine	**taoru**	towel
kōhī-kappu	coffee cup		
kōhī	coffee		
kappu	cup		

SHORT DIALOGUE

At a confectionary:

mise no hito: Irasshaimase.
Chan: Shūkurīmu o mittsu kudasai.
mise no hito: Hai. 630-en desu.

salesperson: May I help you?
Chan: I'd like three cream puffs, please
salesperson: All right. That will be 630 yen.

VOCABULARY

shūkurīmu cream puff

Active Communication

1 Ask your classmates or colleagues where an item they own is from (i.e., what its country of origin is)

2 If you're in Japan, go shopping and buy more than one of an item. Be sure to use the pattern "number of items + **kudasai**."

Quiz 1 (Lesson 1-2)

I Fill in the blank(s) in each sentence with the appropriate particle. Where a particle is not needed, write in an *X*.

1. Kochira ( ) Sasaki-san desu.
2. Sumisu-san wa ABC Fūzu ( ) bengoshi desu.
3. Buraun-san wa enjinia desu ( ), bengoshi desu ( ).
   Enjinia desu.
4. Kore wa watashi ( ) hon dewa arimasen.
   Suzuki-san ( ) desu.
5. Kaigi wa 9-ji ( ) 11-ji ( ) desu.
6. Sore ( ) ikura desu ka.
   3,000-en desu.
   Are ( ) 3,000-en desu ka.
   Iie, 3,000-en dewa arimasen. 3,800-en desu.
7. Sono bīru ( ) 5-hon ( ) kudasai.
8. Sore wa doko ( ) kamera desu ka.
   Doitsu ( ) desu.

II Complete each sentence by filling in the blank(s) with the appropriate word.

1. Hofuman-san wa ( ) desu ka.
   Hai, Doitsu-jin desu.
2. Sore wa ( ) desu ka.
   Tokei desu.
3. Kore wa ( ) no kasa desu ka.
   Iie, Takahashi-san no dewa arimasen.
   ( ) no desu ka.
   Sumisu-san no desu.
4. Sumisu-san no uchi no denwa-bangō wa ( ) desu ka.
   03-3459-9660 desu.
5. Hiru-yasumi wa ( ) kara ( ) made desu ka.
   12-ji kara 1-ji made desu.
6. Sono akai T-shatsu wa ( ) desu ka.
   2,300-en desu.
7. Ano pasokon wa ( ) no desu ka.
   Nihon no desu.

UNIT 3

GETTING AROUND

Japan boasts one of the most convenient transportation systems in the world. All major cities from Fukuoka in southern Japan to Tokyo in the east and Hachinohe in the north are connected by bullet train. Other train systems connect towns and outlying suburbs of cities. In large metropolitan areas such as Tokyo, Nagoya, and Osaka, there are also extensive subway systems. To an astounding degree of accuracy, these modes of transportation depart and arrive as scheduled.

UNIT 3 GRAMMAR

Motion Verbs

noun **wa** place **ni ikimasu**

ex **Gurei-san wa ashita Kyôto ni ikimasu.** "Mr. Grey will go to Kyoto tomorrow."

■ Verbs

Japanese sentences end with a verb (or some other element followed by **desu**, which behaves like a verb). The endings of verbs show the tense and whether the verb is affirmative or negative.
Tenses of Japanese verbs can be divided roughly into two categories.
1. The present form. The present, or **-masu** form—so called because verbs in this tense end in **-masu**—encompasses both the simple present (used for expressing habitual action) and future tenses.
   ex **Gurei-san wa mainichi kaisha ni ikimasu.**
   "Mr. Grey goes to the office (*lit.*, 'company') every day."
   (Watashi wa) ashita kaerimasu. "(I) return/am returning/will return tomorrow."
2. The past form. The past, or **-mashita** form, on the other hand, includes not only the simple past tense but also the present perfect.
   ex **(Watashi wa) senshû Kyôto ni ikimashita.** "Last week (I) went to Kyoto."
   Gurei-san wa mô uchi ni kaerimashita. "Mr. Grey has already gone home."

The chart below summarizes the tenses of Japanese verbs and shows the endings—affirmative and negative—that correspond to each.

PRESENT FORM		PAST FORM	
aff	*neg*	*aff*	*neg*
-masu	**-masen**	**-mashita**	**-masendeshita**

■ The particle **ni**

The role of the preposition "to" in English is played by the particle **ni** in Japanese. **Ni** is placed after a noun that denotes a place. It indicates the direction of movement with verbs such as **ikimasu** ("go"), **kimasu** ("come"), and **kaerimasu** ("return").
ex. **Tôkyô ni ikimasu.** "I am going to Tokyo." (*lit.*, "Tokyo-ward I am going.")
In this pattern, the particle **e** can also be used in place of **ni**.

noun **wa** place **ni ikimasu ka**
Hai, (noun **wa** place **ni**) **ikimasu**
Iie, (noun **wa** place **ni**) **ikimasen**

ex **Gurei-san wa ashita Kyôto ni ikimasu ka.** "Mr. Grey, will you go to Kyoto tomorrow?"
Hai, ikimasu. "Yes, (I) will go."
Iie, ikimasen. "No, (I) will not go."

■ Questions that contain verbs

To ask a question like "will you go?" that contains a verb, simply add **ka** to the verb. Answers to such questions can be brief, as in the examples above.

CONFIRMING SCHEDULES

TARGET DIALOGUE

TRACK 21

Mr. Smith phones Mr. Takahashi of Nozomi Department Store to confirm the time of Friday's meeting.

スミス：もしもし、ＡＢＣの　スミスです。

たかはし：たかはしです。おはようございます。

スミス　あした　そちらに　いきます。かいぎは　３じからですね。

たかはし：はい、３じからです。ひとりで　きますか。

スミス：いいえ、かいしゃの　ひとと　いきます。

たかはし：そうですか。では、あした。

スミス：しつれいします。

■スミスさんは　あした　かいしゃの　ひとと　のぞみデパートに　いきます。

Sumisu: Moshimoshi, ABC no Sumisu desu.
Takahashi: Takahashi desu. Ohayō gozaimasu.
Sumisu: Ashita sochira ni ikimasu. Kaigi wa 3-ji kara desu ne.
Takahashi: Hai, 3-ji kara desu. Hitori de kimasu ka.
Sumisu: Iie, kaisha no hito to ikimasu.
Takahashi: Sō desu ka. Dewa, ashita.
Sumisu: Shitsurei shimasu.

■ Sumisu-san wa ashita kaisha no hito to Nozomi Depāto ni ikimasu.

Smith: Hello, this is Smith from ABC.
Takahashi: This is Takahashi. Good morning.
Smith: I'll go to your company (*lit.* "there") tomorrow. The meeting is from 3:00, right?
Takahashi: Yes, it starts at 3:00. Are you coming alone?
Smith: No, I'll go with someone from the company.
Takahashi: Is that so? Well then, till tomorrow.
Smith: Good-bye.

■ Mr. Smith is going to Nozomi Department Store with a colleague tomorrow.

もしもし	**moshimoshi**	hello (on the telephone)
おはようございます	**ohayō gozaimasu**	good morning
あした	**ashita**	tomorrow
そちら	**sochira**	there (where your listener is)

に	**ni**	to (particle; see Unit 3 Grammar, p. 48)
いきます	**ikimasu**	go
ね	**ne**	right?; isn't it? (particle; see Notes 3 below)
ひとりで	**hitori de**	alone (*lit.*, "by one person")
きます	**kimasu**	come
と	**to**	with, together with (particle)
では	**dewa**	well then, in any case (formal way of saying **ja**)
しつれいします	**shitsureishimasu**	good-bye (*lit.* "I'm going to be rude.")

NOTES

1. **Moshimoshi**
   This is the conventional beginning of a telephone conversation and may be repeated during the call to confirm whether the other party is still on the line.

2. **Ashita sochira ni ikimasu.**
   Relative time expressions like **ashita** "tomorrow," **raishū** ("next week"), **kongetsu** ("this month"), and **kyonen** ("last year") generally do not take particles.

3. **Kaigi wa 3-ji kara desu ne.**
   The particle **ne** comes at the end of a sentence or phrase and, like "isn't it?" in English, seeks confirmation and agreement from the other person. It is spoken with rising intonation.

4. **Hitori de kimasu ka.**
   Iie, kaisha no hito to ikimasu.
   The phrase **kaisha no hito to ikimasu** means "I'll go with someone from the company." The Japanese verbs **ikimasu** and **kimasu** are always used from the point of view of the speaker. **Ikimasu** expresses the idea of moving from where the speaker is now to some other place. **Kimasu**, on the other hand, expresses the idea of moving toward the place where the speaker is now. Therefore, unlike in English, a speaker talking about going to the place where the listener is located, as in the above exchange, uses **Ikimasu** rather than **kimasu**.
   The particle **to** ("with") in **kaisha no hito to ikimasu** is used to indicate accompaniment.

5. **Shitsureishimasu.**
   This expression is used as a form of "good-bye" when hanging up the phone or leaving a house or room. It is also used when entering a house or room, passing in front of someone, leaving in the middle of a gathering, and so on to mean "excuse me."

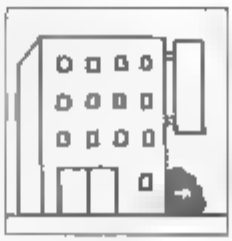
PRACTICE

WORD POWER

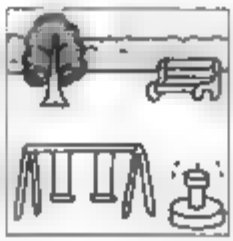
Destinations.

1. **kūkō**

2. **eki**



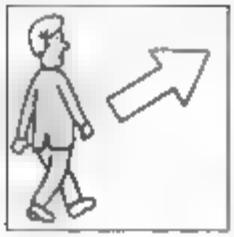
3. **shisha**



4. **kōen**

5. **tomodachi no uchi**

II Verbs.



1 **ikimasu**

2 **kimasu**

3. **kaerimasu**

III Time expressions.

	LAST	THIS	NEXT
day	**kinō**	**kyō**	**ashita**
week	**senshū**	**konshū**	**raishū**
month	**sengetsu**	**kongetsu**	**raigetsu**
year	**kyonen**	**kotoshi**	**rainen**

VOCABULARY

kūkō airport
eki station
shisha branch office
kōen park
tomodachi friend
uchi house
ikimasu go
kimasu come
kaerimasu return, go home
kinō yesterday
kyō today
ashita tomorrow
senshū last week
konshū this week
raishū next week
sengetsu last month
kongetsu this month
raigetsu next month
kyonen last year
kotoshi this year
rainen next year

KEY SENTENCES

1. **Sumisu-san wa ashita ginkō ni ikimasu.**
2. **Sumisu-san wa senshū Honkon ni ikimashita.**
3. **Chan-san wa kinō tomodachi to resutoran ni ikimashita.**
4. **Chan-san wa kyonen Nihon ni kimashita.**
5. **Sumisu-san wa rainen Amerika ni kaerimasu.**

1 Mr. Smith is going to the bank tomorrow
2 Mr. Smith went to Hong Kong last week
3 Ms. Chan went to a restaurant with a friend yesterday
4 Ms. Chan came to Japan last year
5 Mr. Smith will return to the United States next year

EXERCISES

I *Practice conjugating verbs.* Repeat the verbs below and memorize their forms: present and past, affirmative and negative

	PRESENT FORM		PAST FORM	
	aff	*neg*	*aff*	*neg*
go	**ikimasu**	**ikimasen**	**ikimashita**	**ikimasendeshita**
come	**kimasu**	**kimasen**	**kimashita**	**kimasendeshita**
return, go home	**kaerimasu**	**kaerimasen**	**kaerimashita**	**kaerimasendeshita**

II Make up sentences following the patterns of the examples. Substitute the underlined words with the alternatives given.

A. *State where someone will go.*

ex. **Sumisu-san wa <u>ginkō</u> ni ikimasu.**

1. _____ (kūkō)
2. _____ (Tōkyō Eki)
3. _____ (Ōsaka-shisha)
4. _____ (Ginza no depāto)

B. *State when someone will go to Kyoto.*

ex. **Sumisu-san wa ashita Kyōto ni ikimasu.**

1. _____ (raishū)
2. _____ (raigetsu)
3. _____ (asatte)

VOCABULARY

Honkon	Hong Kong	**Ginza**	Ginza (famous shopping district in Tokyo)
Tōkyō Eki	Tokyo Station	**Kyōto**	Kyoto
Ōsaka-shisha	Osaka (branch) office	**asatte**	the day after tomorrow
Ōsaka	Osaka		

C *State when someone went to Hong Kong.*

ex. **Sumisu-san wa kinō Honkon ni ikimashita.**

1 ..... (senshu)

2. ..... (sengetsu)

3. ..... (kyonen)

II Make up dialogues following the patterns of the examples. Substitute the underlined words with the alternatives given.

A *Ask and answer whether someone will go to a particular place.*

ex. **A: Sumisu-san wa ashita Kyōto ni ikimasu ka.**
B: Hai, ikimasu.

1 A. ..... (yūbinkyoku)

B

2 A. ..... (Ginza no depāto)

B

B *Ask and answer whether someone will go to a particular place.*

ex. **A: Sumisu-san wa ashita ginkō ni ikimasu ka.**
B: Iie, ikimasen.

1. A. ..... (Ōsaka-shisha)

B

2 A. ..... (kūkō)

B

C *Ask and answer whether someone went to a particular place.*

ex. **A. Sumisu-san wa kinō Honkon ni ikimashita ka.**
B: Hai, ikimashita.

1. A. ..... (kōen)

B

2 A. ..... (tomodachi no uchi)

B

D *Ask and answer whether someone went to a particular place.*

ex. **A: Sumisu-san wa kinō taishikan ni ikimashita ka.**
B. Iie, ikimasendeshita.

1 A. _____ (Nozomi Depāto)

B

2. A. _____ (ginkō)

B

IV Make up dialogues following the patterns of the examples. Substitute the underlined words with the alternatives given.

A. *Ask and answer where someone will go.*

ex **A: Sumisu-san wa ashita doko ni ikimasu ka.**
B: Nozomi Depāto ni ikimasu.

1 A.

B: _____ (Kyōto)

2 A.

B: _____ (tomodachi no uchi)

B *Ask and answer when someone will go to a particular place.*

ex **A. Katō-san wa itsu Ōsaka-shisha ni ikimasu ka.**
B: Raishū ikimasu.

1 A

B. _____ (ashita)

2. A

B _____ (raigetsu)

V ***State whom someone will go somewhere with.*** Make up sentences following the pattern of the example. Substitute the underlined word with the alternatives given.

ex **Chan-san wa tomodachi to resutoran ni ikimasu.**

1 _____ (Nakamura-san)

2 _____ (Suzuki-san)

3 _____ (Sumisu-san)

BULARY **itsu** when

VI ***Ask and answer whom someone will go somewhere with.*** Make up dialogues following the pattern of the example. Substitute the underlined word with the alternatives given.

ex **A: Sumisu-san wa ashita dare to Nozomi Depâto ni ikimasu ka.**
B: Katō-san to ikimasu.

1 A

B ..... (Chan-san)

2 A

B: ..... (Sasaki-san)

VI Make up sentences following the patterns of the examples. Substitute the underlined words with the alternatives given.

A. ***State who came to Japan.***

ex **Sumisu-san wa kyonen Nihon ni kimashita.**

1 ..... (Chan-san)

2 ..... (Gurin-san)

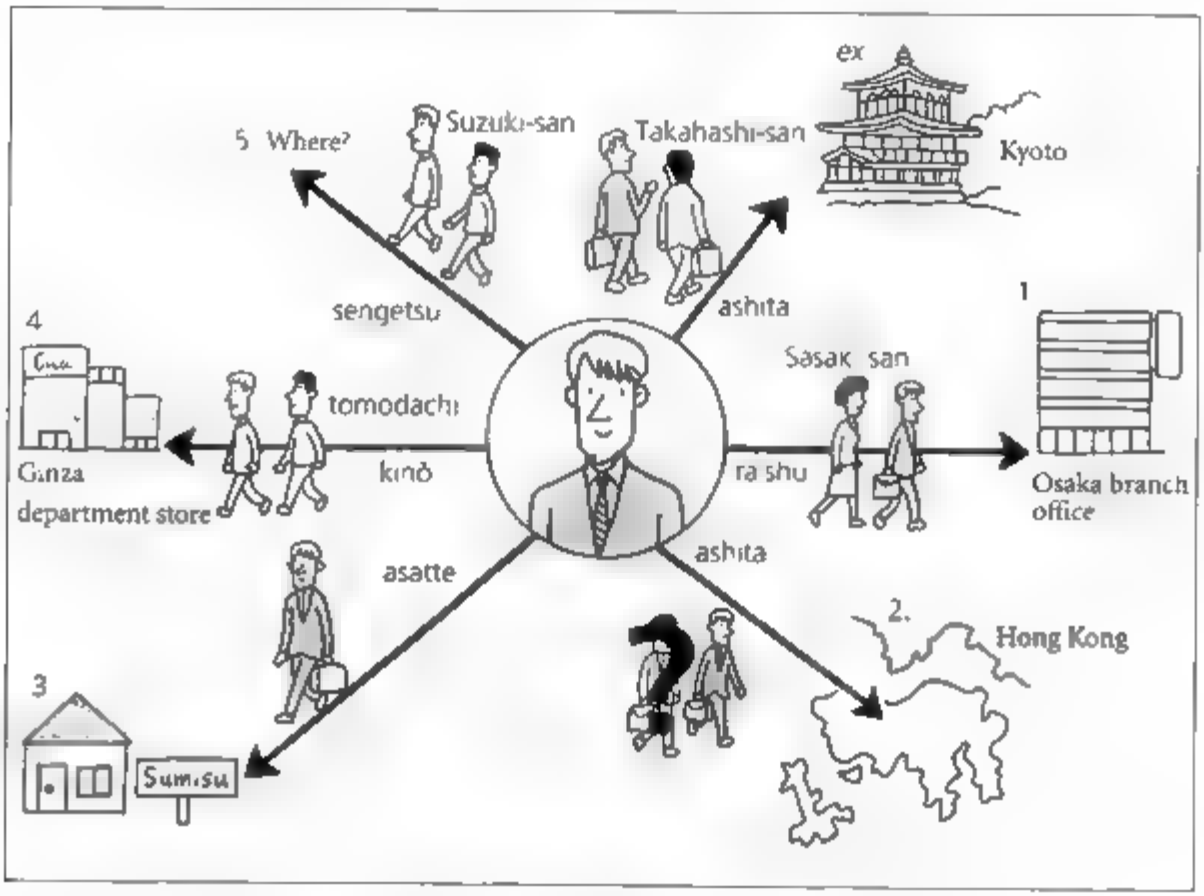
B ***State who will return to America.***

ex. **Sumisu-san wa rainen Amerika ni kaerimasu.**

1 ..... (Gurin-san)

2 ..... (Sumisu-san no tomodachi)

VII ***State when, where, and with whom someone will travel.*** Make up sentences following the pattern of the example and based on the information in the illustration



ex. **Sumisu-san wa ashita Takahashi-san to Kyōto ni ikimasu.**

1

2

3

4.

5

ABULARY

Yokohama-shisha	Yokohama (branch) office
Yokohama	Yokohama (port city southwest of Tokyo)

IX ***Talk about a plan.*** Make up dialogues following the pattern of the example. Substitute the underlined words with the words in parentheses.

ex. Mr. Smith is talking on the phone with a person from the Yokohama branch office.

Yokohama-shisha no hito: Sumisu-san wa itsu Yokohama-shisha ni kimasu ka.
Sumisu: Ashita ikimasu.
Yokohama-shisha no hito: Dare to kimasu ka.
Sumisu: Chan-san to ikimasu.
Yokohama-shisha no hito: Sō desu ka.

1 Yokohama-shisha no hito: _____

Sumisu: _____ (raishū)

Yokohama-shisha no hito: _____

Sumisu: _____ (Katō-san)

Yokohama-shisha no hito: _____

2 Yokohama-shisha no hito: _____

Sumisu: _____ (asatte)

Yokohama-shisha no hito: _____

Sumisu: _____ (Sasaki-san)

Yokohama-shisha no hito: _____

X Listen to the CD and fill in the blanks based on the information you hear.

Sumisu-san wa asatte _____ to _____ ni ikimasu.

SHORT DIALOGUES

Ms. Chan sees Mr. Suzuki in front of ABC Foods carrying a large piece of luggage.

Chan: A, Suzuki-san, shutchō desu ka.
Suzuki: Ee, Ōsaka-shisha ni ikimasu. Asatte Tōkyō ni kaerimasu.
Chan: Sō desu ka. Itterasshai.

Chan: Oh, Mr. Suzuki, are you going on a business trip?
Suzuki: Yes, I'm going to the Osaka branch office. I'll come back to Tokyo the day after tomorrow.
Chan: Really? Have a good trip.

VOCABULARY

a	oh (interjection used to get someone's attention)
shutcho	business trip
itterasshai	good-bye, have a nice trip

At a bus stop, Mr. Smith asks the driver a question before boarding.

Sumisu:	**Sumimasen. Kono basu wa Shibuya ni ikimasu ka.**
basu no untenshu:	**Iie, ikimasen.**
Sumisu:	**Dono basu ga ikimasu ka.**
basu no untenshu:	**88-ban no basu ga ikimasu.**
Sumisu:	**Arigatō gozaimasu.**

Smith:	Excuse me. Does this bus go to Shibuya?
bus driver:	No, it doesn't.
Smith:	Which bus goes there?
bus driver:	The number 88 bus goes there.
Smith:	Thank you.

VOCABULARY

basu	bus
Shibuya	Shibuya (district in Tokyo)
untenshu	driver
dono	which (used before a noun)
ga	(particle that marks the subject of a sentence; see Note 2 below)
-ban	number (counter; used as a suffix after a number)

NOTES

1. **Dono basu**

   Dore is used alone to mean "which," but if "which" is to be followed by a noun, then **dono** is used.

   ex. **dore**, "which one"
   dono basu, "which bus"

2. **Dono basu ga ikimasu ka.**
   88-ban no basu ga ikimasu.

   The particle **ga** is used instead of the topic marker **wa** after interrogatives like **dore** and **dono**. In the case of **dono**, it follows the noun: **dono basu ga**. **Ga** is repeated in replies to questions of the **dore ga** or **dono . . . ga** pattern, as in the exchange here.

Active Communication

Ask someone where they are going tomorrow, next week, next month, and so on.

LESSON 7 VISITING ANOTHER COMPANY

TARGET DIALOGUE

TRACK 25

Mr. Smith goes to Nozomi Department Store on business with Ms. Chan on Friday

たかはし　スミスさん、チャンさん、どうぞ　おはいりください。

スミス：しつれいします。

チャン：しつれいします。

たかはし：どうぞ　こちらへ。

スミス、チャン：ありがとうございます。

たかはし：くるまで　きましたか。

スミス：いいえ、ちかてつで　きました。

■ スミスさんは　きんようびに　チャンさんと　ちかてつで　のぞみデパートに　いきました。

Takahashi: Sumisu-san, Chan-san, dōzo ohairikudasai.
Sumisu: Shitsureishimasu.
Chan: Shitsureishimasu.
Takahashi: Dōzo kochira e.
Sumisu, Chan: Arigatō gozaimasu.
Takahashi: Kuruma de kimashita ka.
Sumisu: Iie, chikatetsu de kimashita.

■ **Sumisu-san wa kin-yōbi ni Chan-san to chikatetsu de Nozomi Depāto ni ikimashita.**

Takahashi: Mr. Smith, Ms. Chan, please come in.
Smith: Excuse me.
Chan: Excuse me.
Takahashi: Come right this way.
Smith, Chan: Thank you.
Takahashi: Did you come by car?
Smith: No, we came by subway.

■ On Friday, Mr. Smith went with Ms. Chan to Nozomi Department Store by subway.

おはいりください	**ohairikudasai**	please come in
どうぞ　こちらへ	**dōzo kochira e**	come right this way
で	**de**	by means of (particle indicating means)
ちかてつ	**chikatetsu**	subway
きんようび	**kin-yōbi**	Friday
に	**ni**	at, on, in (particle indicating time; see Note 2 below)

NOTES

1. Kuruma de kimashita ka.

The function of the particle **de** ("by means of"), which follows nouns, is to express means of conveyance

ex. **basu de**, "by bus"
takushi de, "by taxi"

But to say "by foot," use **aruite**, e.g. **aruite kimashita**, "(I) walked here."

To ask the means by which someone will go somewhere, use **nan de**.

ex. **Nan de ikimasu ka.** "How will you go?"
Basu de ikimasu. "I'll go by bus."

2. Kin-yōbi ni . . . ikimashita.

Unlike relative time expressions (see Note 2, p. 50), specific time expressions take the particle **ni**.

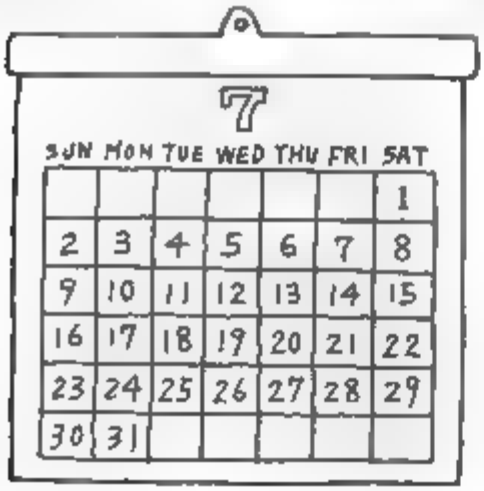
ex. **5-ji ni**, "at 5:00"
do-yōbi ni, "on Saturday"
12-nichi ni, "on the twelfth"
2006-nen ni, "in 2006"

PRACTICE

WORD POWER

1 Dates

YEARS		
1998-nen	**sen kyūhyaku kyūjūhachi-nen**	the year 1998
2006-nen	**nisen roku-nen**	the year 2006



DAYS OF THE WEEK	
nichi-yōbi	Sunday
getsu-yōbi	Monday
ka-yōbi	Tuesday
sui-yōbi	Wednesday
moku-yōbi	Thursday
kin-yōbi	Friday
do-yōbi	Saturday

VOCABULARY

-nen	year (counter)
-yōbi	day (of the week)

MONTHS	
ichi-gatsu	January
ni-gatsu	February
san-gatsu	March
shi-gatsu	April
go-gatsu	May
roku-gatsu	June
shichi-gatsu	July
hachi-gatsu	August
ku-gatsu	September
jū-gatsu	October
jūichi-gatsu	November
jūni-gatsu	December

DAYS OF THE MONTH			
tsuitachi	1st	**jūshichi-nichi**	17th
futsuka	2nd	**jūhachi-nichi**	18th
mikka	3rd	**jūku-nichi**	19th
yokka	4th	**hatsuka**	20th
itsuka	5th	**nijuichi-nichi**	21st
muika	6th	**nijūni-nichi**	22nd
nanoka	7th	**nijusan-nichi**	23rd
yōka	8th	**nijuyokka**	24th
kokonoka	9th	**nijūgo-nichi**	25th
tōka	10th	**nijūroku-nichi**	26th
jūichi-nichi	11th	**nijūshichi-nichi**	27th
jūni-nichi	12th	**nijūhachi-nichi**	28th
jūsan-nichi	13th	**nijūku-nichi**	29th
jūyokka	14th	**sanjū-nichi**	30th
jūgo-nichi	15th	**sanjuichi-nichi**	31st
jūroku-nichi	16th		

NOTE: Months and dates are romanized here, but elsewhere in the book numerals are used to write them, e.g., **1-gatsu** for "January," **11-nichi** for "the eleventh," etc.

II. Means of transportation

1 **densha** 2 **chikatetsu** 3 **kuruma** 4 **takushi** 5 **shinkansen** 6 **hikōki**

KEY SENTENCES

1. **Kaigi wa sui-yōbi desu.**
2. **Buraun-san wa 3-gatsu 26-nichi ni Igirisu kara Nihon ni kimashita.**
3. **Jonson-san wa raishū no kin-yōbi ni Nihon ni kimasu.**
4. **Sumisu-san wa shinkansen de Ōsaka ni ikimasu.**

1. The meeting is Wednesday.
2. Ms. Brown came to Japan from the United Kingdom on March 26.
3. Mr. Johnson will come to Japan next Friday.
4. Mr. Smith is going to Osaka on the Shinkansen.

VOCABULARY

-gatsu	month	**takushi**	taxi
-nichi	day (of the month) (counter)	**shinkansen**	the Shinkansen (Japan's bullet train)
densha	train	**hikōki**	airplane
chikatetsu	subway	**kara**	from (particle indicating origin or point of departure)
kuruma	car	**Jonson**	Johnson (surname)

EXERCISES

I *State when a meeting will be held.* Make up sentences following the pattern of the example. Substitute the underlined word with the alternatives given.

ex. **Kaigi wa <u>sui-yōbi</u> desu.**

1 ..... (getsu-yōbi)

2 ..... (4-gatsu hatsuka)

Make up dialogues following the patterns of the examples. Substitute the underlined parts with the alternatives given.

A. ***Ask and answer when a festival will be held.***

A: O-matsuri wa <u>nan-gatsu</u> desu ka.
B: 9-<u>gatsu</u> desu.

1 A: ..... (nan-nichi)

B: ..... (17-nichi)

2 A: ..... (nan-yōbi)

B: ..... (ka-yōbi)

B. ***Ask and answer when an event will take place.***

ex. **A: Tanjōbi wa itsu desu ka.**
B: 8-<u>gatsu 19-nichi</u> desu.

1. A: ..... (kaigi)

B: ..... (7-gatsu tsuitachi)

2. A: ..... (pātī)

B: ..... (raishū no do-yōbi)

C. ***Ask and answer when an event will take place, from when and until when.***

ex. **A: Natsu-<u>yasumi</u> wa itsu kara itsu made desu ka.**
B: 8-<u>gatsu mikka</u> kara <u>28-nichi</u> made desu.

1. A: ..... (shutchō)

B: ..... (getsu-yōbi, moku-yōbi)

2. A: ..... (ryokō)

B: ..... (4-gatsu 29-nichi, 5-gatsu itsuka)

VOCABULARY

o-matsuri	festival	**nan-nichi**	what day (of the month)	**natsu-yasumi**	summer vacation
o-	(polite prefix)	**nan-yōbi**	what day (of the week)	**natsu**	summer
nan-gatsu	what month	**tanjōbi**	birthday	**ryokō**	trip, travel

III ***State when someone came to a place.*** Make up sentences following the pattern of the example. Substitute the underlined word with the alternatives given.

ex. **Buraun-san wa 4-gatsu ni Igirisu kara kimashita.**

1. ..... (11-gatsu)
2. ..... (3-gatsu 26-nichi)
3. ..... (2004-nen)

IV ***Ask and answer when someone will come to Japan.*** Make up dialogues following the pattern of the example. Substitute the underlined word with the alternatives given.

ex. **A: Jonson-san wa itsu Nihon ni kimasu ka.**
B: Sui-yōbi ni kimasu.

1. A: .....
   B: ..... (nichi-yōbi)
2. A: .....
   B: ..... (raishū no kin-yōbi)

V ***State how someone got home.*** Make up sentences following the pattern of the example. Substitute the underlined part with the alternatives given.

ex. **Sumisu-san wa chikatetsu de uchi ni kaerimashita.**

1. ..... (takushī de)
2. ..... (densha de)
3. ..... (aruite)

VI ***Ask and answer how someone will get to Osaka.*** Make up dialogues following the pattern of the example. Substitute the underlined word with the words in parentheses.

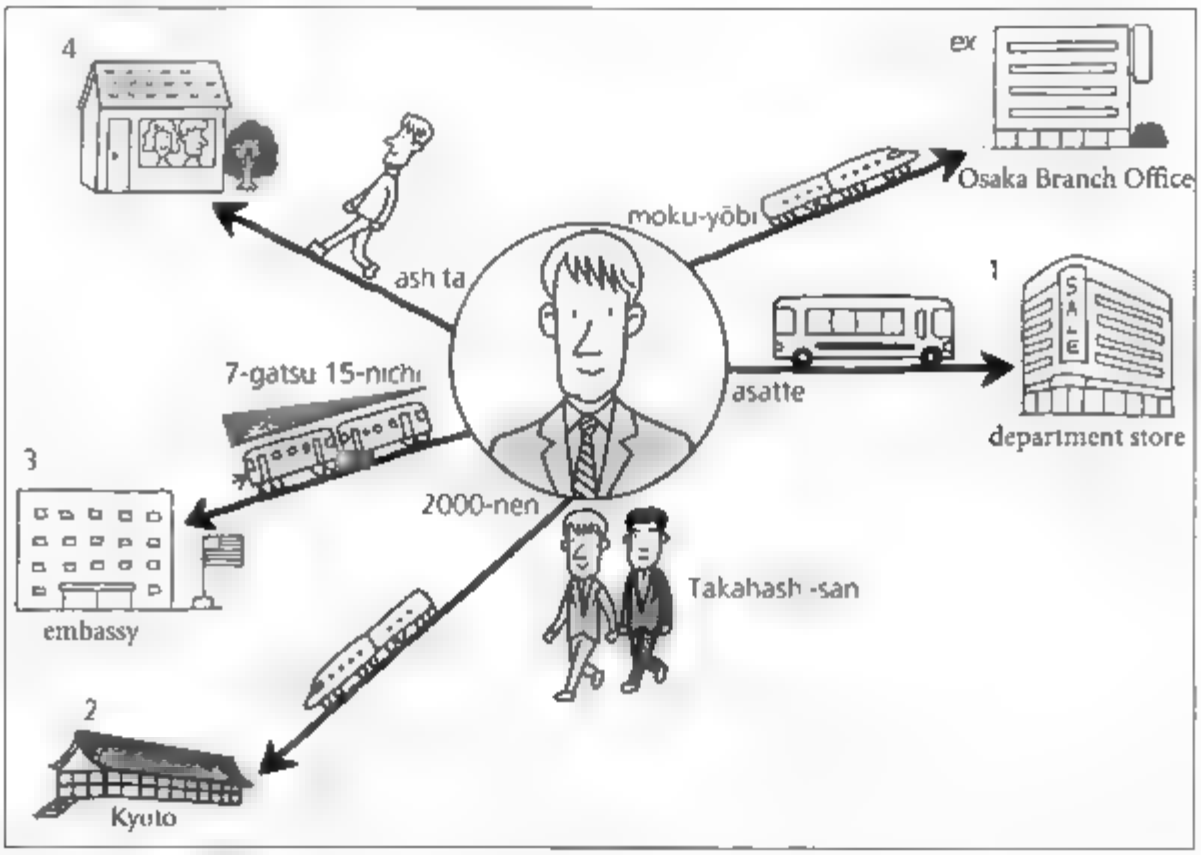
ex. **A: Sumisu-san wa nan de Ōsaka ni ikimasu ka.**
B: Kuruma de ikimasu.

1. A: .....
   B: ..... (shinkansen)
2. A: .....
   B: ..... (hikōki)

VOCABULARY

aruite	by foot, by walking
nan de	by what means

VII ***State when and how someone will reach his destination.*** Look at the illustration and make up sentences following the pattern of the example



ex **Sumisu-san wa moku-yōbi ni shinkansen de Ōsaka-shisha ni ikimasu.**

1

2

3

4

VII ***Describe a schedule.*** Look at the page from Mr. Smith's weekly planner and make up sentences following the pattern of the example and based on the information provided.

ex.	Mon.	12:00	Go to Tokyo Hotel (by taxi, with Mr. Suzuki)
	Tue.		
1.	Wed.		Go to Osaka branch office (by airplane, alone)
	Thu.		
2.	Fri.	12:00	Go to the restaurant (with my secretary)
		4:00	Go to Yokohama branch office (with Ms. Sasaki)
		6:00	Go to the American Embassy
	Sat.		
3.	Sun.	9:00 a.m.	Go to the park (with friends)
		7:00 p.m.	Go to a friend's house (with Mr. Suzuki)

ex. **Sumisu-san wa getsu-yōbi no 12-ji ni Suzuki-san to takushi de Tōkyō Hoteru ni iki-masu.**

1.

2.

3.

VIII ***Talk about a plan.*** Make up dialogues following the pattern of the example. Substitute the underlined words with the words in parentheses.

ex. **Ōsaka-shisha no hito: Raishū no getsu-yōbi ni sochira ni ikimasu.**
Sumisu: Nan-ji ni kimasu ka.
Ōsaka-shisha no hito: 10-ji ni ikimasu.
Sumisu: Nan de kimasu ka.
Ōsaka-shisha no hito: Shinkansen de ikimasu.
Sumisu: Sō desu ka.

1. Ōsaka-shisha no hito:

Sumisu:

Ōsaka-shisha no hito: ..... (9-ji)

Sumisu:

Ōsaka-shisha no hito: ..... (hikōki)

Sumisu:

VOCABULARY

Tōkyō Hoteru	Tokyo Hotel (fictitious hotel name)
hoteru	hotel

2 Ōsaka-shisha no hito:

Sumisu

Ōsaka-shisha no hito: ..... (11-ji)

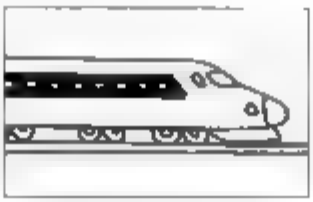
Sumisu

Ōsaka-shisha no hito: ..... (shinkansen)

Sumisu

X. Listen to the CD and choose the correct answers to the questions asked

1 a) getsu-yōbi b) moku-yōbi c) sui-yōbi

2 a) b)  c)

SHORT DIALOGUE

A conversation while drinking tea at Nozomi Department Store

Takahashi: Chan-san wa itsu Nihon ni kimashita ka.
Chan: Kyonen no 10-gatsu ni Honkon kara kimashita.
Takahashi. Sō desu ka. Natsu-yasumi ni Honkon ni kaerimasu ka.
Chan: Iie, kaerimasen. Tomodachi to Okinawa ni ikimasu.

Takahashi Ms Chan, when did you come to Japan?
Chan: I came in October of last year, from Hong Kong.
Takahashi Really? Will you go back to Hong Kong for summer vacation?
Chan: No, I won't. I'm going to Okinawa with a friend

VOCABULARY

Okinawa Okinawa (islands on the southwestern tip of Japan)

Active communication

1 Ask people when their birthdays are

2 Ask people when their summer vacations are

UNIT 4

A WEEKEND EXCURSION

In the vicinity of Tokyo lie a number of places to visit for pleasure. From the historical sites of Nikko in the north to the gorgeous lakes surrounding Mt. Fuji in the southwest, these locations are only about two hours away from the city. Other popular places include Kamakura, a historical town that dates back to the twelfth century; Okutama, a region abound with rivers, gorges, and mountains, and Hakone, an attractive place to enjoy *onsen*. *Onsen* are Japanese spas, and to visit one is a small luxury that the Japanese enjoy tremendously.

UNIT 4 GRAMMAR

Existence of People and Things

place **ni** noun **ga arimasu/imasu**

ex **1-kai ni resutoran ga arimasu.** "There is a restaurant on the first floor."
Uketsuke ni onna no hito ga imasu. "There's a woman at the reception desk."

■ The verbs **arimasu** and **imasu**

Both verbs express "being." **Arimasu** is used for inanimate things (books, buildings, trees), and **imasu** for animate things (people, animals, insects).

■ The particle **ni**

Existence in or at a place is indicated by the particle **ni**.

■ The subject marker **ga**

When a subject is introduced for the first time, or when the speaker believes the information to be new to the listener, the subject marker **ga** is used after the noun. **Ga** should be used, for instance, when stating that someone or something unknown to your listener is in or at a particular place.

noun **wa** place **ni arimasu/imasu**

ex **Resutoran wa 1-kai ni arimasu.** "The restaurant is on the first floor."

■ **Ga → wa**

To state that a thing or person exists in a particular location, use **ga arimasu/imasu**, as in **1-kai ni resutoran ga arimasu**. But if you want to comment about that thing or person—even to say where it or he/she exists—use **wa** instead of **ga**, as in **Resutoran wa 1-kai ni arimasu**, where "the restaurant" is the topic of the sentence. Note the difference in translation: "There's a restaurant on the first floor" for the first sentence, versus "The restaurant is on the first floor" for the second.

LESSON 8 GOING TO NIKKO

TARGET DIALOGUE

TRACK 29

Mr. Kato and Ms. Chan are talking about Nikko

かとう：どようびに　かぞくと　にっこうに　いきます。

チャン：そうですか。にっこうに　なにが　ありますか。

かとう：おおきい　おてらや　じんじゃが　あります。おんせんも
　　あります。

チャン：おんせんって　なんですか。

かとう：*(shows her a pamphlet and points)* これです。にほんの　スパですよ。

チャン：いいですね。

■ かとうさんは　どようびに　かぞくと　にっこうに　いきます。
にっこうに　おおきい　おてらや　じんじゃが　あります。

Katō: Do-yōbi ni kazoku to Nikkō ni ikimasu.
Chan: Sō desu ka. Nikkō ni nani ga arimasu ka.
Katō: Ōkii o-tera ya jinja ga arimasu. Onsen mo arimasu.
Chan: Onsen tte nan desu ka.
Katō: *(shows her a pamphlet and points)* **Kore desu. Nihon no supa desu yo.**
Chan: Ii desu ne.

The Toshogu Shrine (Nikko)

■ **Katō-san wa do-yōbi ni kazoku to Nikkō ni ikimasu.**
Nikkō ni ōkii o-tera ya jinja ga arimasu.

Kato: On Saturday I'm going to Nikko with my family.
Chan: Really? What is there in Nikko?
Kato: There are large temples and shrines. There are also *onsen*.
Chan: What are *onsen*?
Kato: These. Japanese spas.
Chan: That's nice.

■ Mr. Kato will go to Nikko with his family on Saturday. There are large temples and shrines (and other such things) in Nikko.

Nikko

VOCABULARY

かぞく	**kazoku**	family
にっこう	**Nikkō**	Nikko (scenic area north of Tokyo)
なに	**nani**	what
あります	**arimasu**	be, exist
おてら	**o-tera**	Buddhist temple

や	**ya**	and, and so on (particle; see Note 1 below)
じんじゃ	**jinja**	Shinto shrine
おんせん	**onsen**	hot spring (resort)
～って　なんですか	**-tte nan desu ka**	what is a/an ～?
スパ	**supa**	spa
よ	**yo**	(particle; see Note 2 below)
いいですね	**Ii desu ne**	that's nice

NOTES

1. (Nikkō ni) o-tera ya jinja ga arimasu.

The particle **ya** is used for "and" when listing two or more things or people and implying the existence of others. Another particle, **to**, also means "and," but it does not imply the existence of other people or things.

ex. **1-kai ni ginkō to kombini ga arimasu.**

"There is a bank and a convenience store on the first floor (and nothing else)."

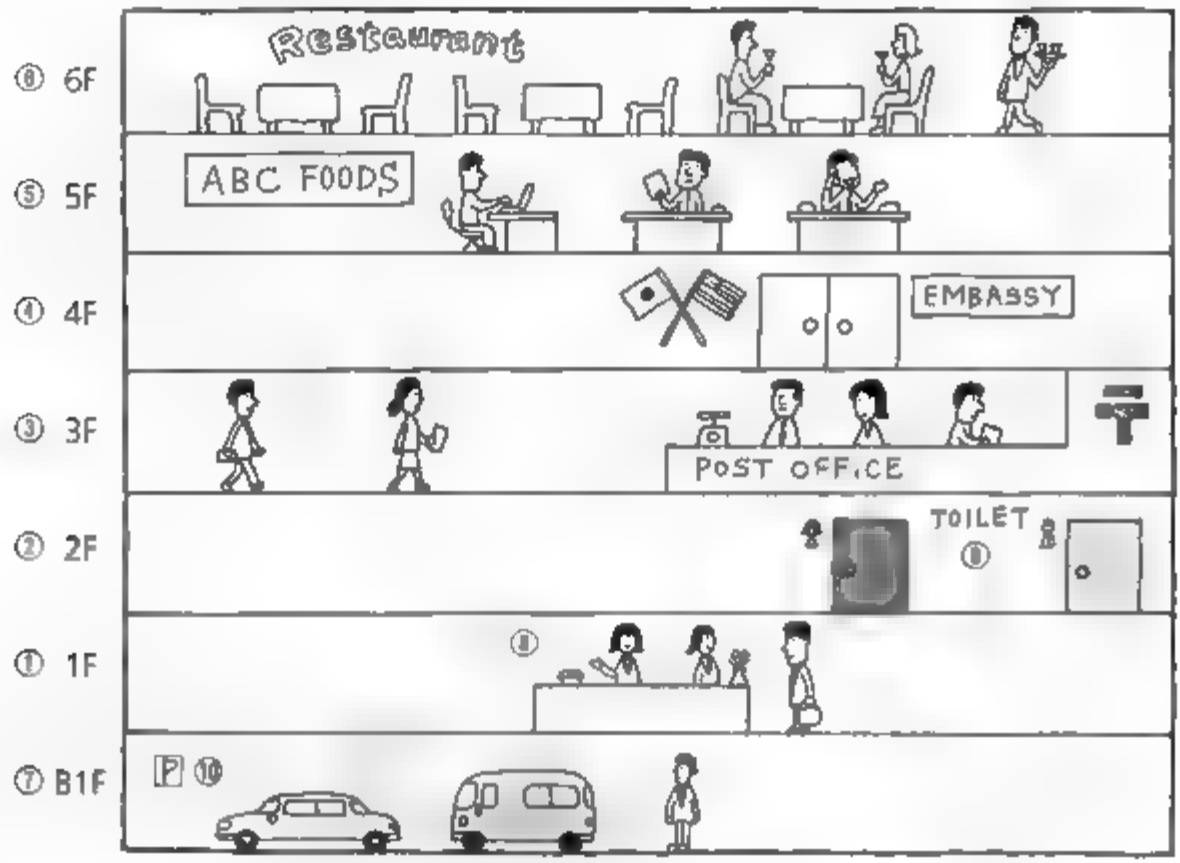
Note that unlike "and" in English, both **ya** and **to** are used only to connect nouns. They cannot be used to connect verbs or clauses.

2. Nihon no supa desu yo.

The particle **yo** is added to the end of a sentence to call attention to information the speaker thinks the other person does not know.

WORD POWER

I. Parts of a building



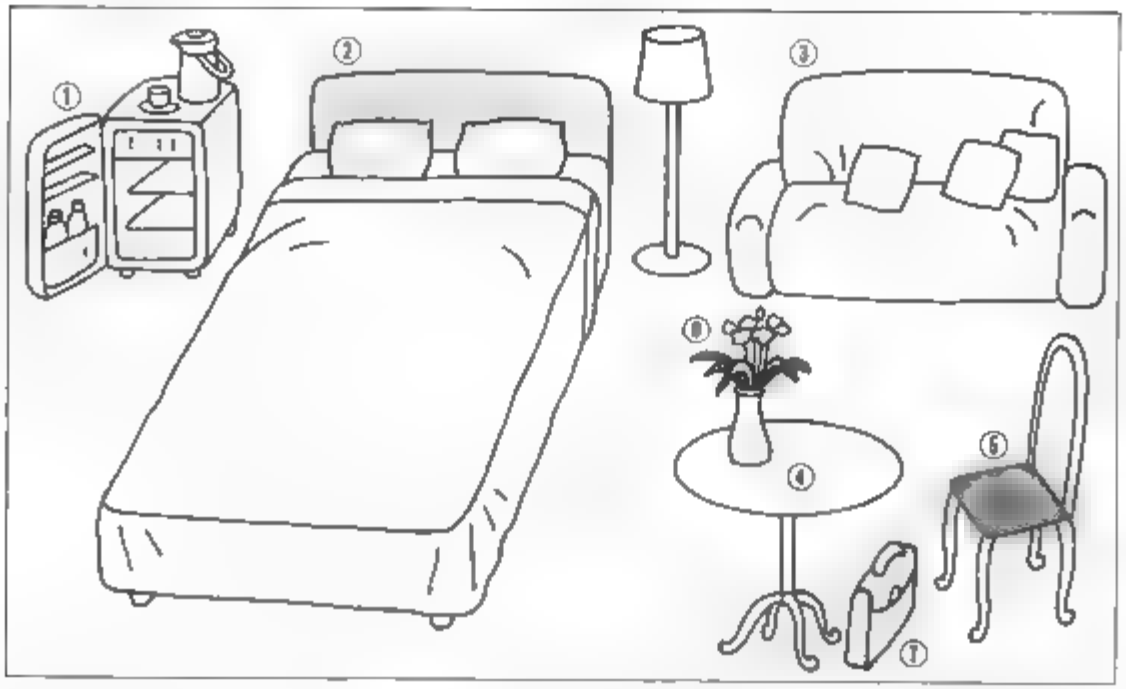
1. **ikkai**
2. **ni-kai**
3. **san-gai**
4. **yon-kai**
5. **go-kai**
6. **rokkai**
7. **chika ikkai**
8. **uketsuke**
9. **o-tearai**
10. **chūshajō**

NOTE: Floors are romanized here, but elsewhere in the book they are spelled with numerals, e.g., **1-kai** for "first floor," **3-gai** for "third floor," etc.

VOCABULARY

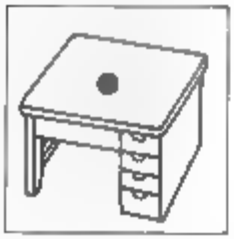
ikkai	first floor, ground floor	**uketsuke**	reception desk
-kai/-gai	floor, story (counter)	**o-tearai**	restroom, lavatory
chika ikkai	first basement floor (of several)	**chūshajō**	parking lot
chika	basement		

II Things in a hotel room:

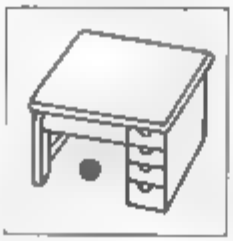


1 **reizōko** 2 **beddo** 3 **sofā** 4 **tēburu** 5 **isu** 6. **hana** 7 **kaban**

III Positions.



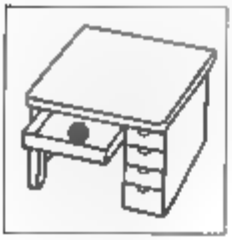
1 **ue**



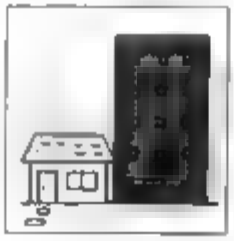
2 **shita**

3. **mae**

4 **ushiro**



5 **naka**



6 **tonari**

7. **chikaku**

reizōko	refrigerator	**hana**	flower	**ushiro**	back, behind
beddo	bed	**kaban**	briefcase, tote bag	**naka**	inside, middle
sofā	sofa	**ue**	top, above	**tonari**	next to
tēburu	table	**shita**	bottom, below, under	**chikaku**	vicinity, nearby
isu	chair	**mae**	front, before		

KEY SENTENCES

1. **1-kai ni ginkō ga arimasu.**
2. **Uketsuke ni onna no hito ga imasu.**
3. **Tēburu no ue ni shimbun to hana ga arimasu.**
4. **Kaban no naka ni kagi ya hon ga arimasu.**
5. **Tēburu no ue ni nani mo arimasen.**
6. **2-kai ni dare mo imasen.**

1 There is a bank on the first floor
2 There is a woman at the reception desk
3 There is a newspaper and some flowers on the table
4 Inside the briefcase there are keys and books and so on
5 There is nothing on the table
6 There is no one on the second floor

EXERCISES

I. ***Practice conjugating verbs.*** Repeat the verbs below and memorize their forms: present and past, affirmative and negative

	PRESENT FORM		PAST FORM	
	aff	*neg*	*aff*	*neg*
be	**arimasu**	**arimasen**	**arimashita**	**arimasendeshita**
be	**imasu**	**imasen**	**imashita**	**imasendeshita**

II Make up sentences following the patterns of the examples. Substitute the underlined words with the words in the parentheses.

A. ***State what is in or at a particular place.***

ex. **Nikkō ni o-tera ga arimasu.**

1 _____ (jinja)

2 _____ (mizuumi)

B. ***State who is at a particular place.***

ex. **Uketsuke ni onna no hito ga imasu.**

1 _____ (otoko no hito)

2 _____ (Takahashi-san)

VOCABULARY

imasu	be, exist (only of animate objects)	**mizuumi**	lake
to	and (particle; see Note 1, p. 70)	**otoko no hito**	man
nani mo . . . -masen	nothing	**otoko**	male, man
dare mo . . . -masen	no one		

III Make up dialogues following the patterns of the examples. Substitute the underlined words with the words in parentheses

A. ***Ask and answer what is at a particular place.***

ex **A: 1-kai ni nani ga arimasu ka.**
B: Ginkō ga arimasu.

1 A. ..... (2-kai)

B ..... (yubinkyoku)

2 A. ..... (3-gai)

B ..... (taishikan)

B ***Ask and answer who is at a particular place.***

ex. **A: Uketsuke ni dare ga imasu ka.**
B: Takahashi-san ga imasu.

1 A (chūshajō)

B (otoko no hito)

2 A ... (3-gai)

B (Sumisu-san)

IV ***State where a thing is located.*** Make up sentences following the pattern of the example. Substitute the underlined part with the alternatives given

ex. **Tēburu no ue ni saifu ga arimasu.**

1 (kaban no naka)

2 ..... (shimbun no shita)

V Make up dialogues following the patterns of the examples. Substitute the underlined part(s) with the alternatives given.

A. ***Ask and answer what is inside another thing.***

ex **A: Kaban no naka ni nani ga arimasu ka.**
B: Pen ga arimasu.

1 A.

B (kagi)

2 A.

B (keitai)

VOCABULARY

pen	pen
saifu	wallet

3 A

B ..... (sarfu)

4 A

B. ..... (N hon-go no hon)

B. *Ask and answer what is on, in, or nearby another thing.*

ex. **A: Tēburu no ue ni nani ga arimasu ka.**
B. Shimbun to hana ga arimasu.

1 A: ..... (sofā no ue)

B: ..... (hon to sētā)

2 A. ..... (reizōko no naka)

B: ..... (mizu ya bīru)

3 A. ..... (beddo no chikaku)

B ..... (denwa)

C *Ask and answer what is in or on another thing.*

ex **A: Hikidashi no naka ni nani ga arimasu ka.**
B: Nani mo arimasen.

1. A: ..... (isu no ue)

B:

2 A. ..... (poketto no naka)

B

D *Ask and answer who is at a particular place.*

ex **A: 2-kai ni dare ga imasu ka.**
B: Dare mo imasen.

1 A. (5-kai)

B

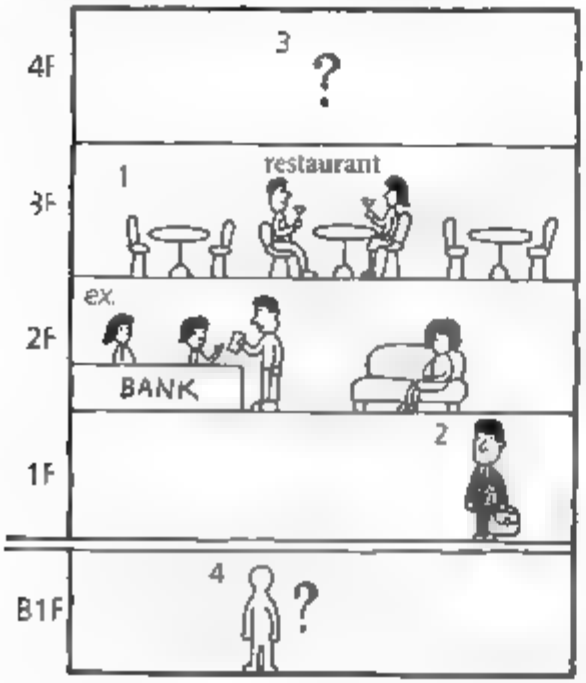
2 A (uketsuke)

B

VOCABULARY

Nihon-go	Japanese (language)	**hikidashi**	drawer
sētā	sweater	**poketto**	pocket
mizu	(cold) water		

VI ***State or ask where someone or something is located.*** Make up sentences following the pattern of the example and based on the information in the illustrations



ex. **2-kai ni ginkō ga arimasu.**

1. .....
2. .....
3. .....
4. .....
5. .....
6. .....
7. .....
8. .....

VII ***Talk about a tourist destination.*** Make up dialogues following the pattern of the example. Substitute the underlined parts with the alternatives given.

ex. **Katō: Nichi-yōbi ni kuruma de Hakone ni ikimasu.**
Sumisu: Sō desu ka. Hakone ni nani ga arimasu ka.
Katō: Mizuumi <u>ya onsen</u> ga arimasu.
Sumisu: Ii desu ne.

1. Katō: ..... (Kamakura)
   Sumisu: ..... (Kamakura)
   Katō: ..... (jinja ya o-tera)
   Sumisu: .....

VOCABULARY

Hakone Hakone (national park southwest of Tokyo)
Kamakura Kamakura (historic town southwest of Tokyo)
Odaiba Odaiba (new town with a shopping center built on reclaimed land in Tokyo Bay)

2 Katō: ..... (Odaiba)

Sumisu: ..... (Odaiba)

Katō: ..... (hoteru ya onsen)

Sumisu: .....

VII. Listen to the CD and fill in the blanks based on the information you hear

1. 1-kai ni ..... ga arimasu
2. 2-kai ni ..... ga arimasu
3. 3-gai ni ..... ga arimasu

SHORT READING

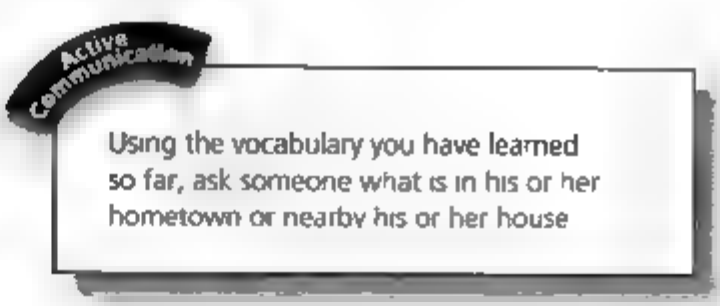
Mr. Kato stays at a famous inn in Nikko.

Ryokan no chikaku ni ōkii mizuumi ya taki ga arimasu.
Ryokan no tonari ni soba-ya ga arimasu. Ryokan no mae ni chiisai kōen ga arimasu.

Near the inn are things like a large lake and waterfalls. Next to the inn is a buckwheat noodle shop. In front of the inn is a small park.

VOCABULARY

ryokan	traditional Japanese inn
taki	waterfall
soba-ya	buckwheat noodle shop
-ya	shop (suffix)



LESSON 9 LOOKING FOR A PARKING LOT

TARGET DIALOGUE

TRACK 32

Mr. Kato has come to Nikko. He asks a salesperson at a store where to find a parking lot.

かとう：すみません。この　ちかくに　ちゅうしゃじょうが
　　ありますか。

みせの　ひと：ええ。ありますよ。

かとう　どこですか。

みせの　ひと：あそこに　コンビニが　ありますね。
　　ちゅうしゃじょうは　あの　コンビニの　となりです。

かとう：どうも　ありがとう。

■ちゅうしゃじょうは　コンビニの　となりに　あります。

Katō: Sumimasen. Kono chikaku ni chūshajō ga arimasu ka.
mise no hito: Ee. Arimasu yo.
Katō: Doko desu ka.
mise no hito: Asoko ni kombini ga arimasu ne. Chūshajō wa ano kombini no tonari desu.
Katō: Dōmo arigatō.

■Chūshajō wa kombini no tonari ni arimasu.

Kato: Excuse me. Is there a parking lot in the vicinity?
salesperson: Yes, there is.
Kato: Where is it?
salesperson: There's a convenience store over there, right? The parking lot is next to the convenience store.
Kato: Thank you.

■The parking lot is next to the convenience store.

VOCABULARY

あそこ	**asoko**	over there
コンビニ	**kombini**	convenience store

NOTES

1. Chūshajō wa kombini no tonari desu.

When the verb is understood, **desu** sometimes takes its place at the end of the sentence

ex. **Terebi wa doko ni arimasu ka.** "Where is the TV set?"

Tēburu no ue desu (instead of **Tēburu no ue ni arimasu**) "It's on the table."

If it is uncertain whether there is a TV set, **desu** cannot be substituted, and **arimasu** must be repeated to make the meaning clear.

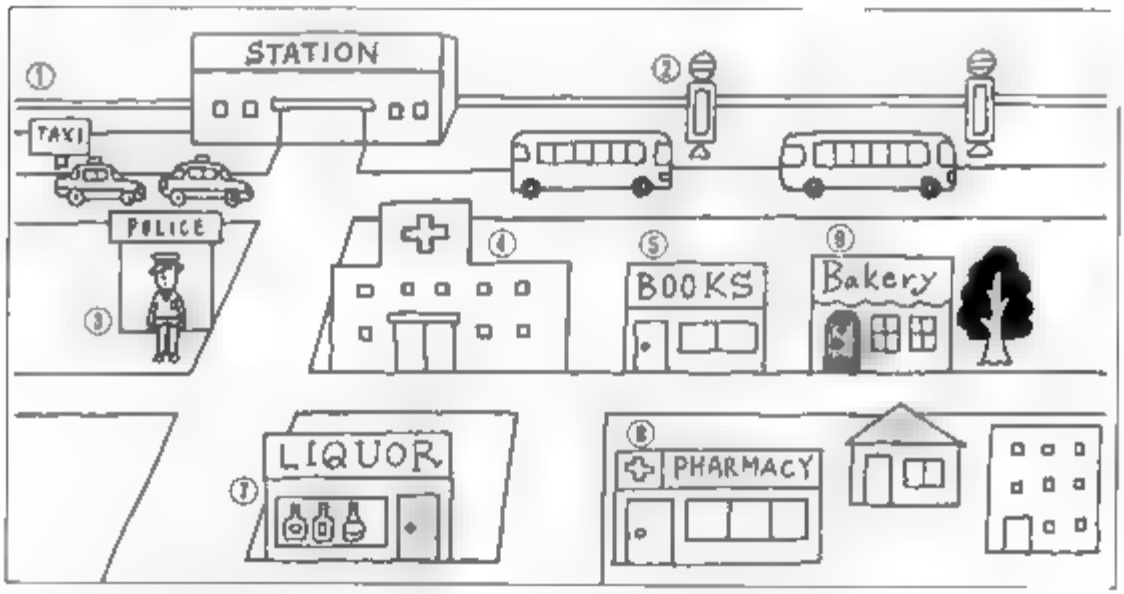
ex. **Tēburu no ue ni terebi ga arimasu ka.** "Is there a TV set on the table?"

Hai, arimasu./Hai, terebi ga arimasu. "Yes, there is./Yes, there is a TV set."

PRACTICE

WORD POWER

1. Things near a train station

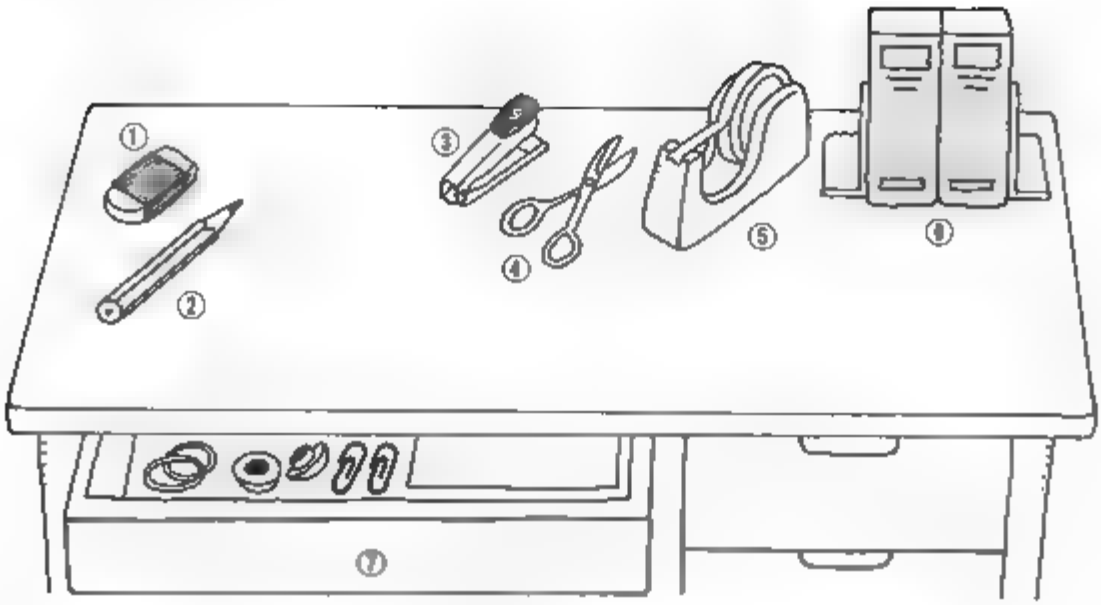


1. **takushi-noriba**	3. **kōban**	5. **hon-ya**	7. **saka-ya**
2. **basu-noriba**	4. **byōin**	6. **pan-ya**	8. **kusuri-ya**

VOCABULARY

takushi-noriba	taxi stand	**hon-ya**	bookstore	**kusuri-ya**	drugstore
basu-noriba	bus terminal	**pan-ya**	bakery	**kusuri**	medicine
kōban	police box	**pan**	bread		
byōin	hospital, clinic	**saka-ya**	liquor store		

II. Office supplies



1 **keshigomu** 3 **hotchikisu** 5 **sero-tēpu** 7 **hikidashi**
2 **empitsu** 4 **hasami** 6 **fairu**

III. Numbers of people

	hitori
	futari
	san-nin
	yo-nin
	go-nin
?	**nan-nin**

NOTE: Other than **hitori** and **futari**, numbers of people from now on will be expressed with numerals. **3-nin**, **4-nin**, etc.

VOCABULARY

keshigomu	eraser	**sero-tēpu**	Scotch tape	**san-nin**	three people
empitsu	pencil	**fairu**	file	**-nin**	person (counter)
hotchikisu	stapler	**hitori**	one person	**nan-nin**	how many people
hasami	scissors	**futari**	two people		

KEY SENTENCES

1. **Tēburu no ue ni bīru ga 2-hon arimasu.**
2. **Kombini no mae ni otoko no hito ga futari imasu.**
3. **Takushī-noriba wa eki no chikaku ni arimasu.**
4. **Yubinkyoku wa ano biru no naka desu.**

1 There are two bottles of beer on the table
2 There are two men in front of the convenience store
3 The taxi stand is in the vicinity of the station
4 The post office is inside that building over there

EXERCISES

Make up sentences following the patterns of the examples. Substitute the underlined words with the words in parentheses.

A. ***State how many of a certain object are in a drawer.***

ex. **Hikidashi no naka ni <u>pen</u> ga 5-hon arimasu.**

1. ..... (meishi, 3-mai)
2. ..... (keshigomu, futatsu)
3. ..... (fairu, takusan)

B. ***State how many people are in front of a building.***

ex. **Kombini no mae ni <u>otoko no hito</u> ga futari imasu.**

1. ..... (onna no hito, 3-nin)
2. ..... (otoko no ko, hitori)
3. ..... (onna no ko, takusan)

I. Make up dialogues following the patterns of the examples. Substitute the underlined words with the words in parentheses.

A. ***Ask and answer how many of a certain object are on a table.***

ex. **A. Tēburu no ue ni <u>ringo</u> ga <u>ikutsu</u> arimasu ka.**
B: Mittsu arimasu.

1. A. ..... (kitte, nan-mai)
   B. ..... (5-mai)
2. A. ..... (biru, nan-bon)
   B. ..... (2-hon)

VOCABULARY

takusan	a lot, many, much	**ikutsu**	how many (small objects)
otoko no ko	boy	**nan-mai**	how many (flat objects)
ko	child	**nan-bon**	how many (long, thin objects)
onna no ko	girl		

3 A. _____ (kōhī-kappu, ikutsu)

B. _____ (yottsu)

B *Ask and answer how many people are in front of a building.*

ex **A: Ginkō no mae ni otoko no hito ga nan-nin imasu ka.**
B: Hitori imasu.

1. A. _____ (onna no hito)

B _____ (4-nin)

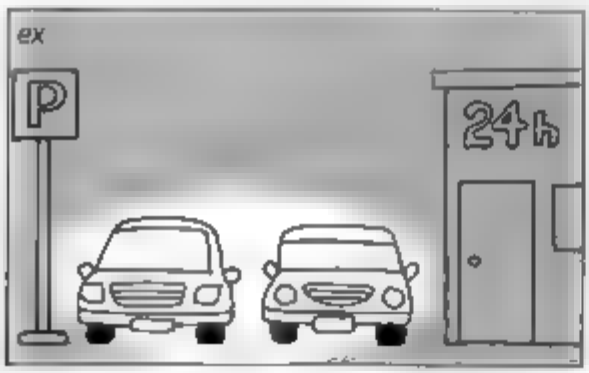
2. A. _____ (otoko no ko)

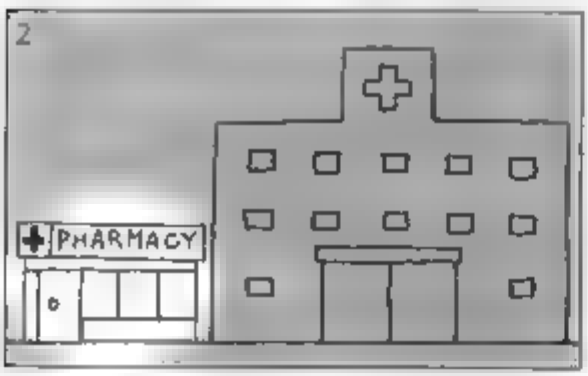
B _____ (futari)

3. A. _____ (gakusei)

B _____ (takusan)

II ***Indicate where a facility or store is located.*** Make up sentences following the pattern of the example and based on the information in the illustrations.





ex **Chūshajō wa kombini no tonari ni arimasu.**

1 _____ (takushi-nonba, eki no mae)

2 _____ (kusuri-ya, byōin no tonari)

3 _____ (kōban, asoko)

IV Make up dialogues following the patterns of the examples. Substitute the underlined parts with the alternatives given.

A. ***Ask and answer where something is.***

ex. **A: Chūshajō wa doko ni arimasu ka.**
B: Kombini no tonari ni arimasu.

1. A. ..... (takushī-noriba)
   B: ..... (eki no mae)
2. A. ..... (hon-ya)
   B: ..... (depāto no tonari)
3. A. ..... (kyō no shimbun)
   B: ..... (koko)
4. A. ..... (kuruma no kage)
   B: ..... (kaban no naka)

B. ***Ask and answer where someone is.***

ex. **A: Sumisu-san wa doko ni imasu ka.**
B: 2-kai ni imasu.

1. A: ..... (Takahashi-san)
   B: ..... (niwa)
2. A: ..... (Gurin-san)
   B: ..... (3-gai)
3. A: ..... (Sasaki-san)
   B: ..... (kaigishitsu)

C. ***Ask and answer where something or someone is.***

ex. **A: Kōban wa doko desu ka.**
B: Eki no mae desu.

1. A. ..... (o-teara)
   B: ..... (asoko)
2. A. ..... (hasami)
   B: ..... (tēburu no ue)

VOCABULARY

koko	here
niwa	garden
kaigishitsu	conference room

3 A. _____ (biru)

B _____ (reizōko no naka)

4 A. _____ (Sumisu-san)

B _____ (2-kai)

V ***Ask where a facility or store at an airport is located.*** Make up sentences following the pattern of the example and based on the information in the illustration

ex **Chan: Chekkuin-kauntā wa doko ni arimasu ka.**

1 Chan

2 Chan

3 Chan

4 Chan

5 Chan

6 Chan

BULARY

kāto	cart (for luggage)
chekkuin-kauntā	check-in counter

VI. ***Talk about where a facility is located.*** Make up dialogues following the pattern of the example. Substitute the underlined parts with the alternatives given

ex **otoko no hito: Sumimasen. Kono chikaku ni takushi-noriba ga arimasu ka.**
Chan: Ee, arimasu yo.
otoko no hito: Doko desu ka.
Chan: Takushi-noriba wa eki no mae desu.
otoko no hito: Dōmo arigatō gozaimasu.

1 otoko no hito: ..... (basutei)

Chan

otoko no hito

Chan: ..... (kombini no mae)

otoko no hito

2. otoko no hito: ..... (yūbinkyoku)

Chan

otoko no hito:

Chan: ..... (ano biru no naka)

otoko no hito:

3 otoko no hito: ..... (chikatetsu no iriguchi)

Chan.

otoko no hito:

Chan: ..... (asoko)

otoko no hito.

VII. Listen to the CD and fill in the blank based on the information you hear

TRACK 34

Chūshajō wa ..... desu

VOCABULARY

basutei	bus stop
iriguchi	entrance

SHORT DIALOGUES

I Mr. Kato is looking for today's newspaper.

Katō: Kyō no shimbun wa doko ni arimasu ka.
Chan: Koko ni arimasu. Hai, dōzo.

Kato: Where is today's paper?
Chan: It's here. Here you go.

II Mr. Kato calls Mr. Suzuki on his cell phone while Mr. Suzuki is out on a sales visit.

Katō: Suzuki-san. Ima doko desu ka.
Suzuki: Ima Nozomi Depāto ni imasu.
Katō: Nan-ji goro kaisha ni kaerimasu ka.
Suzuki: 3-ji ni kaerimasu.

Kato: Mr. Suzuki, where are you now?
Suzuki: I'm at Nozomi Department Store.
Kato: About what time are you coming back to the office?
Suzuki: I'll be back at 3:00.

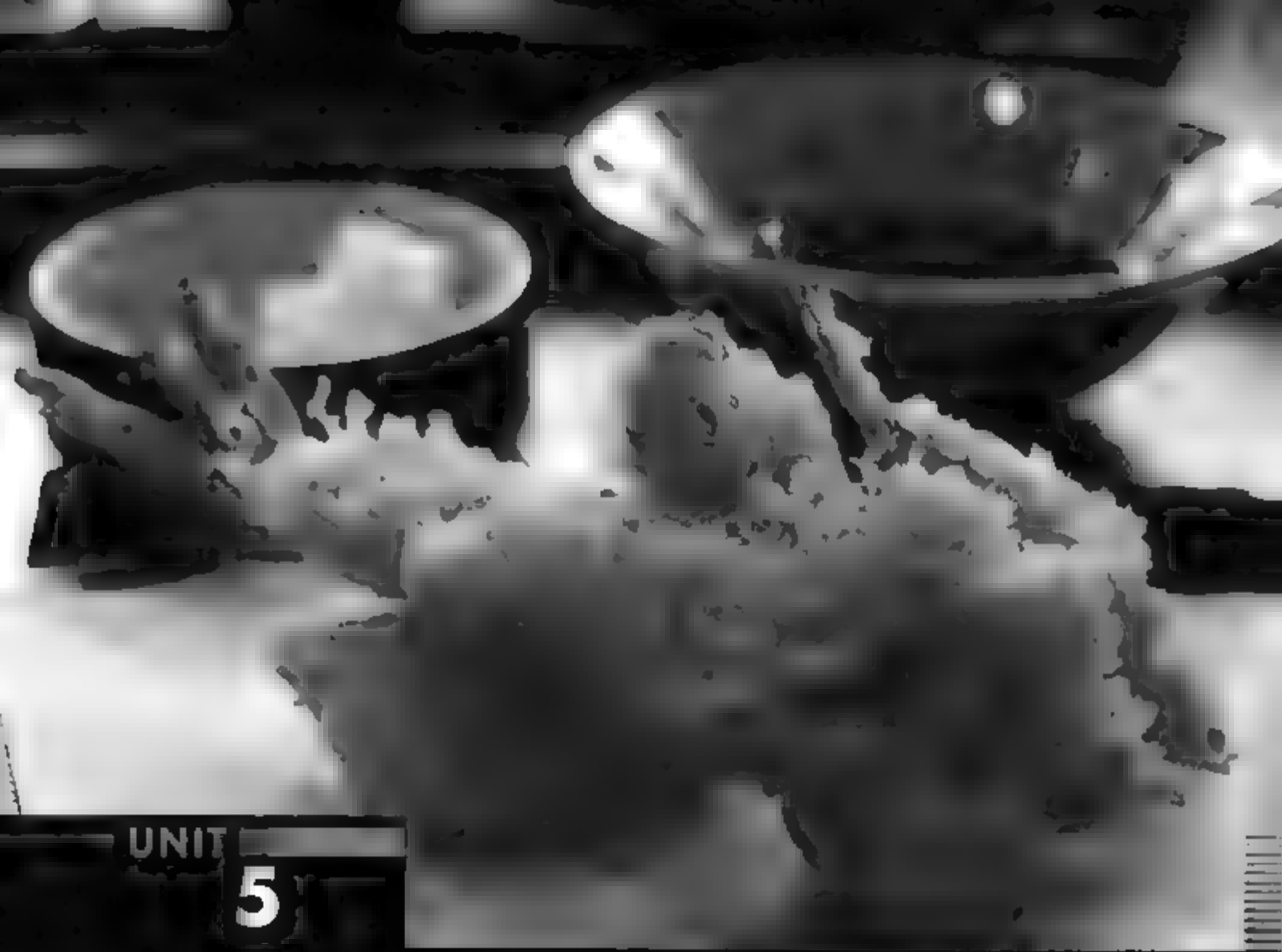
nan-ji goro	about/approximately what time
goro	about (used of time; see Note 1 below)

NOTES

1. Nan-ji goro . . .
The suffix **goro** is used to indicate an approximate point in time. Unlike "about" in English, however, it cannot be used to express an approximate period.

Active Communication

If you're in Japan, go out on the street and ask people if there is a station, department store, post office, etc. in the vicinity.



UNIT 5

DINING OUT

Japanese cuisine is not just sushi and tempura; in fact, most Japanese people only have these dishes occasionally. There are many different kinds of foods in Japan and, consequently, many specialty restaurants. The inexpensive restaurants typically showcase their dishes—sometimes the real thing, but more often than not plastic replicas—in their front windows. Among the most expensive establishments are sushi bars and tempura restaurants. Ginza, an upscale shopping district in Tokyo that features in this unit, is famous for its restaurants and bars.

UNIT 5 GRAMMAR

Verbs That Take a Grammatical Object

person **wa** noun **o** verb

ex **Gurei-san wa eiga o mimasu.** "Mr. Grey will see a movie."

■ The particle **o**

Placed after a noun, **o** indicates that the noun is the object of the sentence. **O** is used with verbs like **mimasu** ("see"), **yomimasu** ("read"), **nomimasu** ("drink"), **kaimasu** ("buy"), and a host of others.

person 1 **wa** person 2 **ni** verb

ex **Gurei-san wa Yoshida-san ni aimasu.** "Mr. Grey will meet Mr. Yoshida."

■ The particle **ni**

The particle **ni** can also serve as an object marker, as in the example here, where Mr. Yoshida is the object of the verb **aimasu** ("meet"). Essentially, **ni** indicates the person or thing an action is directed at.

person 1 **wa** person 2/place **ni** noun **o** verb

ex **Gurei-san wa Yoshida-san ni tegami o kakimashita.**
"Mr. Grey wrote a letter to Mr. Yoshida."
Gurei-san wa taishikan ni tegami o kakimashita.
"Mr. Grey wrote a letter to the embassy."

■ The particle **ni**

With verbs like **tegami o kakimasu** ("write a letter"), **nimotsu o okurimasu** ("send luggage"), and **denwa o shimasu** ("telephone"), **ni** indicates the receiver of the action. In English, the receiver corresponds to the indirect object.

MAKING PLANS FOR THE WEEKEND

TARGET DIALOGUE

TRACK 36

Ms. Sasaki and Mr. Smith are talking about their plans for the weekend

スミス：しゅうまつに　なにを　しますか。

ささき：どようびに　ともだちと　かぶきを　みます。

スミス：そうですか。

ささき：スミスさんは？

スミス　にちようびに　ぎんざで　すずきさんと　てんぷらを
　　たべます。

ささき：いいですね。

■ささきさんは　どようびに　ともだちと　かぶきを　みます。
スミスさんは　にちようびに　ぎんざで　すずきさんと　てんぷらを
たべます。

Sumisu. Shūmatsu ni nani o shimasu ka.
Sasaki. Do-yōbi ni tomodachi to Kabuki o mimasu.
Sumisu: Sō desu ka.
Sasaki: Sumisu-san wa?
Sumisu: Nichi-yōbi ni Ginza de Suzuki-san to tempura o tabemasu.
Sasaki: Ii desu ne.

■ Sasaki-san wa do-yōbi ni tomodachi to Kabuki o mimasu.
Sumisu-san wa nichi-yōbi ni Ginza de Suzuki-san to tempura o tabemasu.

Smith: What are you going to do during the weekend?
Sasaki: I'm going to see Kabuki with a friend on Saturday.
Smith: Oh, really.
Sasaki: What about you?
Smith: I'm going to eat tempura in Ginza with Mr. Suzuki on Sunday.
Sasaki: Sounds good.

■ Ms. Sasaki is going to see Kabuki with a friend on Saturday. Mr. Smith is going to eat tempura in Ginza with Mr. Suzuki on Sunday.

VOCABULARY

しゅうまつ	**shūmatsu**	weekend
します	**shimasu**	do
かぶき	**Kabuki**	Kabuki (a traditional form of theater)
みます	**mimasu**	see

で	**de**	(particle indicating the location where an action takes place)
てんぷら	**tempura**	tempura (deep-fried seafood/vegetables)
たべます	**tabemasu**	eat

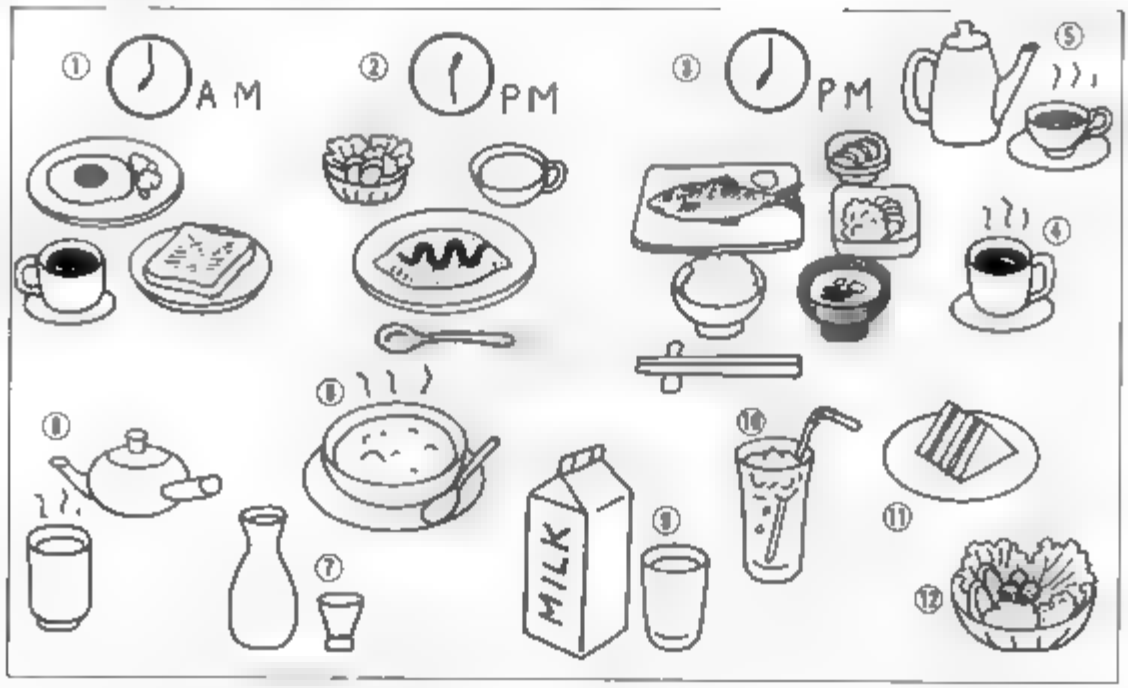
NOTES

1. **Ginza de Suzuki-san to tempura o tabemasu.**
   Nouns and place names concerned with actions such as where things are bought, seen, eaten, sold and so on take the particle **de**.

PRACTICE

WORD POWER

I. Food



1 **asa-gohan**	4. **kōhi**	7 **sake**	10 **jūsu**
2 **hiru-gohan**	5. **kōcha**	8 **sūpu**	11 **sandoitchi**
3 **ban-gohan**	6 **o-cha**	9 **miruku**	12 **sarada**

VOCABULARY

asa-gohan	breakfast	**kōcha**	tea	**miruku**	milk
hiru-gohan	lunch	**o-cha**	green tea	**jūsu**	juice
ban-gohan	dinner	**sake**	sake (Japanese rice wine)	**sandoitchi**	sandwich
kōhi	coffee	**sūpu**	soup	**sarada**	salad

II. Verbs

1 **tabemasu** 2 **nomimasu** 3 **kaimasu** 4 **yomimasu** 5 **kikimasu**

6 **mimasu** 7 **tenisu o shimasu** 8 **benkyō o shimasu** 9 **kaimono o shimasu** 10 **shigoto o shimasu**

NOTE: For more on the "noun **o shimasu**" verb type see p. 246

III. Time expressions

	DAY	MORNING	EVENING	WEEK
every	**mainichi**	**maiasa**	**maiban**	**maishū**

KEY SENTENCES

1. **Sumisu-san wa ashita eiga o mimasu.**
2. **Sumisu-san wa mainichi jogingu o shimasu.**
3. **Sumisu-san wa kinō resutoran de ban-gohan o tabemashita.**

1. Mr. Smith is going to see a movie tomorrow.
2. Mr. Smith jogs every day.
3. Mr. Smith ate dinner at a restaurant yesterday.

VOCABULARY

tabemasu	eat	**mimasu**	see	**mainichi**	every day
nomimasu	drink	**tenisu o shimasu**	play tennis	**maiasa**	every morning
kaimasu	buy	**benkyō o shimasu**	study	**maiban**	every evening
yomimasu	read	**kaimono o shimasu**	shop	**maishū**	every week
kikimasu	listen (to)	**shigoto o shimasu**	work	**jogingu o shimasu**	jog

EXERCISES

1 ***Practice conjugating verbs.*** Repeat the verbs below and memorize their forms—present and past, affirmative and negative

	PRESENT FORM		PAST FORM	
	aff	*neg*	*aff*	*neg.*
eat	**tabemasu**	**tabemasen**	**tabemashita**	**tabemasendeshita**
drink	**nomimasu**	**nomimasen**	**nomimashita**	**nomimasendeshita**
buy	**kaimasu**	**kaimasen**	**kaimashita**	**kaimasendeshita**
read	**yomimasu**	**yomimasen**	**yomimashita**	**yomimasendeshita**
listen (to)	**kikimasu**	**kikimasen**	**kikimashita**	**kikimasendeshita**
see	**mimasu**	**mimasen**	**mimashita**	**mimasendeshita**
do	**shimasu**	**shimasen**	**shimashita**	**shimasendeshita**

Make up sentences following the patterns of the examples. Substitute the underlined words with the words in parentheses.

A. ***State what someone will see***

ex. **Suzuki-san wa terebi o mimasu.**

1 _____ (eiga)

2 _____ (Kabuki)

B. ***State what someone will listen to.***

ex. **Suzuki-san wa ongaku o kikimasu.**

1 _____ (CD)

2 _____ (rajio)

VOCABULARY **ongaku** music

II Make up sentences or dialogues following the patterns of the examples and based on the information in the illustrations

A *State what someone will do.*

ex. **Sumisu-san wa sutēki o tabemasu.**

1

2

3

4

B *Ask and answer what someone will do.*

ex. **A: Sumisu-san wa nani o tabemasu ka.**
B: Sutēki o tabemasu.

1 A

B

2 A.

B

3 A.

B

4 A.

B

IV Make up sentences following the patterns of the examples. Substitute the underlined words with the alternatives given.

A *State where someone will drink beer.*

ex. **Suzuki-san wa uchi de biru o nomimasu.**

1 (resutoran)

2 (hoteru no bā)

VOCABULARY

sutēki	steak
bā	bar

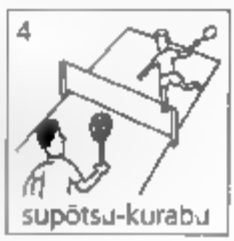
B *State where someone will buy a magazine.*

ex. **Suzuki-san wa hon-ya de zasshi o kaimasu.**

1 ..... (kombini)

2. ..... (kukō)

V Make up sentences following the patterns of the examples and based on the information in the illustrations.



A. *State where someone will do something.*

ex. **Sumisu-san wa resutoran de ban-gohan o tabemasu.**

1

2

3

B *Ask and answer where someone will do something.*

ex **A: Sumisu-san wa doko de ban-gohan o tabemasu ka.**
B: Resutoran de tabemasu.

1 A

B

2. A.

B

3 A

B

4 A

B

CABULARY

toshokan	library
supōtsu-kurabu	gym, exercise club
supōtsu	sport(s)
kurabu	club

VI ***State what someone does regularly.*** Make up sentences following the pattern of the example and based on the information in the illustrations

ex **Katō-san wa mainichi inu to sampo o shimasu.**

1

2

3

VII ***Talk about the events of a weekend.*** Make up dialogues following the pattern of the example Substitute the underlined words with the alternatives given

ex **Katō: Shūmatsu ni nani o shimashita ka.**
Sumisu: Tomodachi to gorufu o shimashita.
Katō: Doko de shimashita ka.
Sumisu: Hakone de shimashita.
Katō: Sō desu ka.

1. Katō

Sumisu (Gurin-san, tenisu)

Katō

Sumisu (hoteru no tenisu-kōto,

Katō

2 Katō

Sumisu (Suzuki-san, kaimono)

Katō

Sumisu (Ginza no depāto)

Katō

VOCABULARY

inu	dog	**sampo o shimasu**	go for a walk
yasai-jūsu	vegetable juice	**gorufu o shimasu**	play golf
yasai	vegetable	**tenisu-kōto**	tennis court
okusan	(another person's) wife		

VII Listen to the CD and fill in the blanks based on the information you hear

TRACK 38

1 Chan-san wa Kamakura de _____ o mimashita.

2 Chan-san wa _____ hiru-gohan o tabemashita.

SHORT DIALOGUE

TRACK 39

Mr. Suzuki phones the tempura specialty restaurant Tenmasa to make a reservation.

mise no hito:	**Temmasa de gozaimasu.**
Suzuki:	**Yoyaku o onegaishimasu.**
mise no hito:	**Hai, arigatō gozaimasu.**
Suzuki:	**Nichi-yōbi no 7-ji ni onegaishimasu. Futari desu.**
mise no hito:	**Hai, wakarimashita. Dewa, o-namae to o-denwa-bangō o onegaishimasu.**

restaurant employee:	This is Tenmasa.
Suzuki:	I'd like to make a reservation.
restaurant employee:	All right. Thank you.
Suzuki:	Sunday at seven o'clock, please, for two people.
restaurant employee:	Yes. Well, then, please give me your name and telephone number.

VOCABULARY

Temmasa de gozaimasu	this is Tenmasa (speaking on the phone)
Temmasa	Tenmasa (fictitious restaurant name)
de gozaimasu	(humble form of **desu**)
yoyaku	reservation
wakarimashita	understood; I see; I understand
wakarimasu	understand
o-namae	(another person's) name (polite word for **namae**)

NOTES

1. **Yoyaku o onegaishimasu.**
   This is the phrase to use when you want to make a reservation. **Onegaishimasu** can be used to order food or drink, too.
   ex. **Kōhi o onegaishimasu.** "I'll have (a cup of) coffee, please."

Active Communication

1. Talk to someone about your plans for the weekend.
2. Tell someone about what you did the previous weekend.

AT A TEMPURA RESTAURANT

TARGET DIALOGUE

TRACK 40

Mr. Smith and Mr. Suzuki have arrived at a tempura restaurant in Ginza.

みせの　ひと：いらっしゃいませ。

すずき：すずきです。

みせの　ひと：すずきさまですね。どうぞ　こちらへ。

スミス　*(a few moments later, at the table)* いい　みせですね。

すずきさんは　よく　この　みせに　きますか。

すずき：ええ、ときどき　きます。おいしいですから。

スミス：*(fifteen minutes later, after their dishes have arrived)* すずきさん、

この　さかなは　なんですか。

すずき：キスです。

スミス：おいしいですね。

■ スミスさんは　すずきさんと　ぎんざの　てんぷらやに　いきました。
スミスさんは　すずきさんに　さかなの　なまえを　ききました。

mise no hito: Irasshaimase.
Suzuki: Suzuki desu.
mise no hito: Suzuki-sama desu ne. Dōzo kochira e.
Sumisu: *(a few moments later, at the table)* **Ii mise desu ne. Suzuki-san wa yoku kono mise ni kimasu ka.**
Suzuki: Ee, tokidoki kimasu. Oishii desu kara.
Sumisu: *(fifteen minutes later, after their dishes have arrived)* **Suzuki-san, kono sakana wa nan desu ka.**
Suzuki: Kisu desu.
Sumisu: Oishii desu ne.

■ **Sumisu-san wa Suzuki-san to Ginza no tempura-ya ni ikimashita. Sumisu-san wa Suzuki-san ni sakana no namae o kikimashita.**

restaurant employee: Welcome.
Suzuki: I'm Suzuki.
restaurant employee: Oh, Mr. Suzuki. Right this way, please.
Smith: This is a nice restaurant, isn't it? Do you come to this restaurant often, Mr. Suzuki?
Suzuki: Yes, I come sometimes. Because (this restaurant's tempura) is so delicious.
Smith: Mr. Suzuki, what's this fish?

Suzuki. It's whiting.
Smith. It's delicious, isn't it?

■ Mr. Smith went to a tempura restaurant in Ginza with Mr. Suzuki. Mr. Smith asked Mr. Suzuki the name of the fish.

VOCABULARY

すずきさま	**Suzuki-sama**	Mr. Suzuki
～さま	**-sama**	Mr., Ms., Mrs., Miss (more polite than **-san**)
よく	**yoku**	often (see Appendix I, p. 248)
ときどき	**tokidoki**	sometimes (see Appendix I, p. 248)
おいしいです	**oishii desu**	be delicious, be tasty
から	**kara**	because (particle)
さかな	**sakana**	fish
キス	**kisu**	whiting (kind of fish) (note: Names of fish, fruits, vegetables, etc. are sometimes written in *katakana*.)
てんぷらや	**tempura-ya**	tempura restaurant
ききます	**kikimasu**	ask

NOTES

1. (Kono mise no tempura wa) oishii desu kara.
Kara follows a sentence or clause that explains the reason for something. Here, the topic phrase **kono mise no tempura wa** is being omitted. (For more on **kara**, see Note 3, p. 142.)

PRACTICE

WORD POWER

1. Verbs

1. **denwa o shimasu**

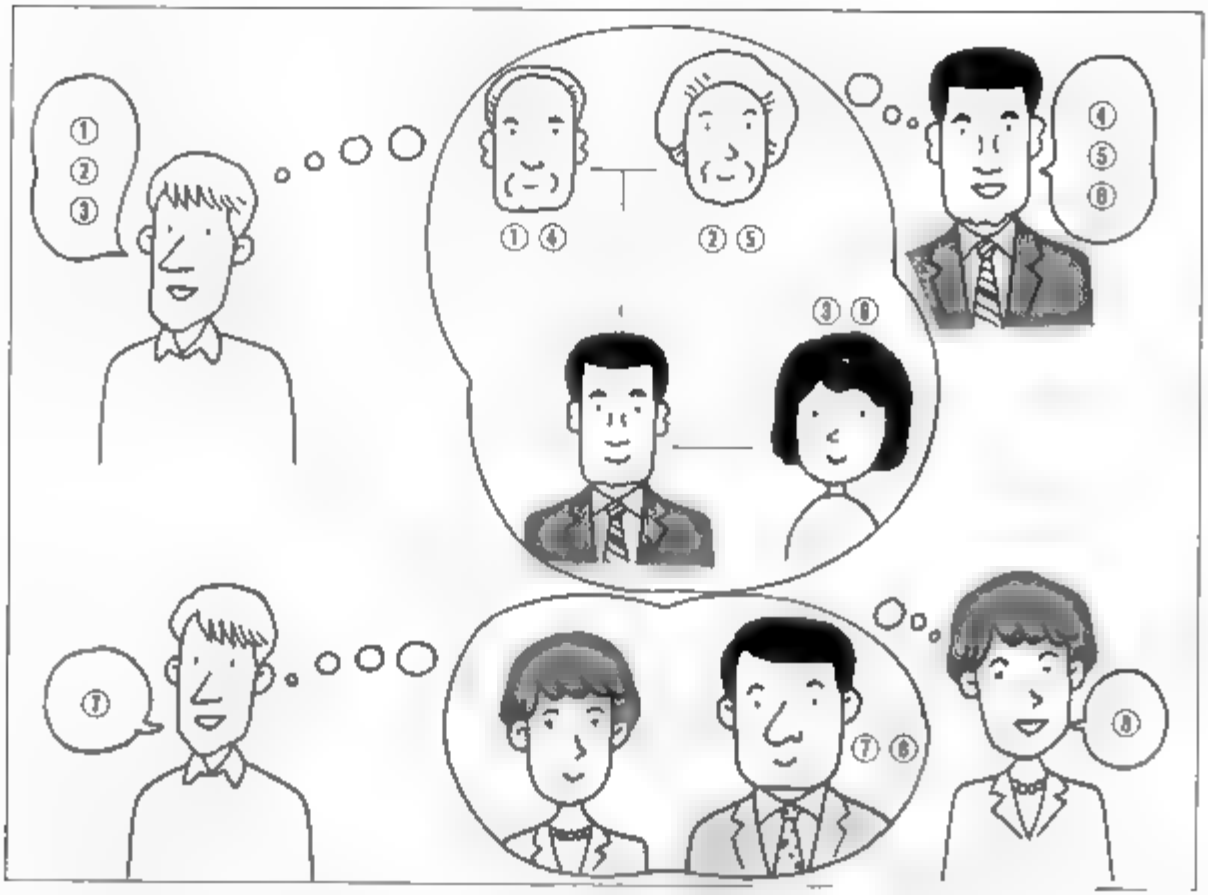
2. **kakimasu**

3. **okurimasu**

4. **aimasu**

VOCABULARY

denwa o shimasu	telephone
kakimasu	write
okurimasu	send
aimasu	meet



1 **Takahashi-san no otôsan**
2 **Takahashi-san no okâsan**
3 **Takahashi-san no okusan**
4 **chichi**
5 **haha**
6 **tsuma/kanai**
7 **Sasaki-san no go-shujin**
8 **otto/shujin**

KEY SENTENCES

1. **Sumisu-san wa tomodachi ni denwa o shimasu.**
2. **Sumisu-san wa ashita Takahashi-san ni aimasu**
3. **Chan-san wa yoku okâsan ni tegami o kakimasu.**
4. **Chan-san wa amari terebi o mimasen.**

1 Mr Smith is going to phone a friend
2 Mr Smith is going to see Mr Takahashi tomorrow
3 Ms Chan often writes letters to her mother
4 Ms Chan doesn't watch television very much

VOCABULARY

otôsan	(another person's) father	**haha**	(my) mother	**otto/shujin**	(my) husband
okâsan	(another person's) mother	**tsuma/kanai**	(my) wife	**tegami**	letter
okusan	(another person's) wife	**go-shujin**	(another person's) husband	**amari -masen**	not much (see Appendix I, p. 248)
chichi	(my) father	**go-**	(honorific prefix)		

EXERCISES

I ***Practice conjugating verbs.*** Repeat the verbs below and memorize their forms—present and past, affirmative and negative

	PRESENT FORM		PAST FORM	
	aff	*neg.*	*aff*	*neg*
telephone	**denwa o shimasu**	**denwa o shimasen**	**denwa o shimashita**	**denwa o shimasen-deshita**
write	**kakimasu**	**kakimasen**	**kakimashita**	**kakimasendeshita**
send	**okurimasu**	**okurimasen**	**okurimashita**	**okurimasendeshita**
meet	**aimasu**	**aimasen**	**aimashita**	**aimasendeshita**

Make up sentences following the patterns of the examples. Substitute the underlined words with the words in parentheses

A. ***State whom someone will write to.***

ex **Sumisu-san wa tomodachi ni tegami o kakimasu.**

1 (otōsan)

2 (Takahashi-san)

3 (taishikan)

B ***State whom someone will telephone.***

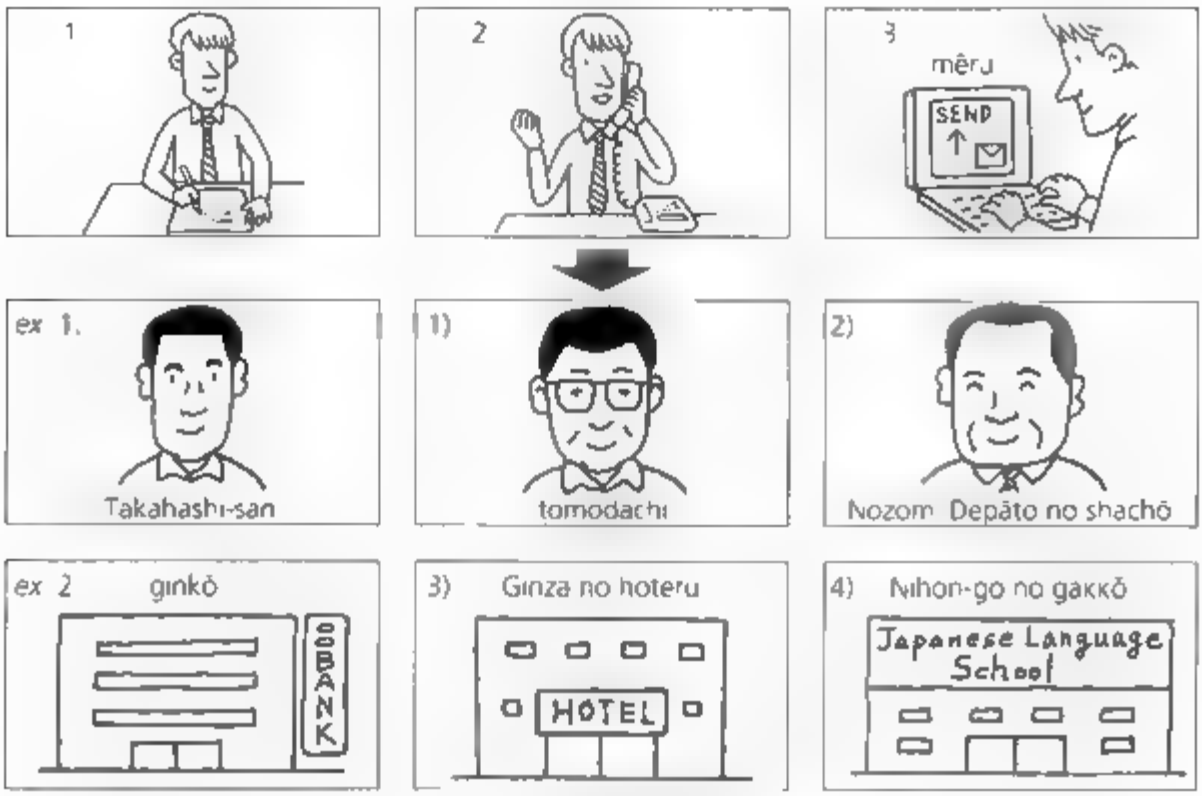
ex **Sumisu-san wa resutoran ni denwa o shimasu.**

1 (okāsan)

2 (kaisha no hito)

3 (Nozomi Depāto)

III Make up sentences or dialogues following the patterns of the examples and based on the information in the illustration



A. ***State who will write to, call, or e-mail whom.***

ex 1 **Sumisu-san wa Takahashi-san ni tegami o kakimasu.**
ex 2 **Sumisu-san wa ginkō ni tegami o kakimasu.**

1 1)

2)

3)

4)

2 1)

2)

3)

4)

3 1)

2)

3) _____

4)

VOCABULARY

gakkō	school
shachō	president (of a company)
mēru	e-mail

B. *Ask and answer who will write to, call, or e-mail whom.*

ex. 1 **A: Sumisu-san wa dare ni tegami o kakimasu ka.**
B: Takahashi-san ni kakimasu.

ex. 2 **A: Sumisu-san wa doko ni tegami o kakimasu ka.**
B: Ginkō ni kakimasu.

1. 1) A. _____

B _____

2) A _____

B _____

3) A _____

B. _____

4) A. _____

B _____

2 1) A. _____

B _____

2) A. _____

B _____

3) A _____

B. _____

4) A. _____

B _____

3 1) A. _____

B _____

2) A _____

B _____

3) A. _____

B _____

4) A. _____

B. _____

IV ***Describe a schedule.*** Make up sentences following the pattern of the example and based on the information in the planner

ex.	Mon.	4:00	Tōkyō Eki	Suzuki-san
1.	Tue.	10:00	Nozomi Depāto	Takahashi-san
2	Wed.	7:00	Resutoran Rōma	Sasaki-san no go-shujin
3	Thu.	11:00	Sapporo-shisha	shisha no hito
4	Fri.	6:30	hoteru no robi	Nakamura-san

ex. **Sumisu-san wa getsu-yōbi no 4-ji ni Tōkyō Eki de Suzuki-san ni aimasu.**

1

2

3

4

V ***Give a qualified answer in response to a question.*** Answer the questions below using the words in parentheses and the appropriate verb

ex. **A: Sumisu-san wa yoku biru o nomimasu ka.**
B: Hai, yoku nomimasu.

1. A. Takahashi-san wa yoku sushi o tabemasu ka

   B: ..... (hai, tokidoki)

2. A. Suzuki-san wa yoku tomodachi ni denwa o shimasu ka

   B: ..... (iie, amari -masen)

3. A. Chan-san wa yoku eiga o mimasu ka

   B: ..... (iie, zenzen . . . -masen)

VI. ***Give a reason for an answer.*** Answer the questions below using the example as a guide. Substitute the underlined word with the words in parentheses

ex. **A: Sumisu-san wa yoku tenisu o shimasu ka.**
B: Hai. Uchi no chikaku ni tenisu-kōto ga arimasu kara.

1. A. Sasaki-san wa yoku sampo o shimasu ka

   B. Hai ..... (kōen)

2. A. Chan-san wa yoku sushi o tabemasu ka.

   B. Hai. ..... (sushi-ya)

VOCABULARY

Resutoran Rōma	Restaurant Roma (fictitious restaurant name)	**sushi**	sushi
Rōma	Rome	**zenzen . . . -masen**	not at all (see Appendix I, p. 248.)
Sapporo-shisha	Sapporo (branch) office		
Sapporo	Sapporo (city on the island of Hokkaido)	**sushi-ya**	sushi restaurant
robi	lobby		

VII ***Order at a restaurant.*** Make up dialogues following the pattern of the example and based on the information in the illustration

ex. **Sumisu: Biru o 2-hon onegaishimasu.**
mise no hito: Hai.

1. Sumisu

   mise no hito

2. Sumisu

   mise no hito.

3. Sumisu

   mise no hito

VIII ***Talk about a weekend plan.*** Make up dialogues following the pattern of the example. Substitute the underlined parts with the alternatives given.

ex **Suzuki: Kondo no shūmatsu ni nani o shimasu ka.**
Chan: Shibuya Toshokan ni ikimasu.
Suzuki: Chan-san wa yoku Shibuya Toshokan ni ikimasu ka.
Chan: Ee, Eigo no bideo ga takusan arimasu kara.

1 Suzuki: .....

Chan: ..... (ABC Supōtsu-kurabu)

Suzuki: ..... (ABC Supōtsu-kurabu)

Chan: ..... (mashin)

2 Suzuki: .....

Chan: ..... (Resutoran Doragon)

Suzuki: ..... (Resutoran Doragon)

Chan: ..... (kuni no ryōri)

IX Listen to the CD and fill in the blank based on the information you hear.

Chan-san wa yoku okāsan ni ..... masu.

SHORT DIALOGUES

I Mr. Green comes to the restaurant Tenmasa with his wife.

Gurin: Sumimasen. Matsu-kōsu o futatsu onegaishimasu.
mise no hito: Hai. O-nomimono wa?
Gurin: Nama-biru o futatsu onegaishimasu.
mise no hito: Hai.

Green: Excuse me, two "pine" meals please.
restaurant employee: All right. What about a beverage?
Green: Two draft beers, please.
restaurant employee: All right.

VOCABULARY

matsu-kōsu	"pine" meal (the most expensive set meal at a traditional restaurant)
o-nomimono	beverage
nama-biru	draft beer

VOCABULARY

kondo	this coming	**kuni**	(my) country
mashin	machine	**ryōri**	cooking, cuisine
Resutoran Dōragon	Restaurant Dragon (fictitious restaurant name)		

II. Mr. Green pays for his meal at Tenmasa. He needs a receipt.

Gurin: Sumimasen. O-kanjō o onegaishimasu.
mise no hito: Hai.
Gurin: Sumimasen. Ryōshūsho o onegaishimasu.
mise no hito: Hai. O-namae wa?

Green: Excuse me, I'd like the check, please.
restaurant employee: All right.
Green: Excuse me. I'd like a receipt.
restaurant employee: All right. What is your name?

VOCABULARY

o-kanjō	bill, check
ryōshūsho	receipt (requiring signature from the restaurant or store where the purchase was made and usually necessary when applying for reimbursement of expenses incurred)

Active Communication

Go to a restaurant and try ordering food and a beverage in Japanese.

Quiz 2 (Units 1–5)

I Fill in the blank(s) in each sentence with the appropriate particle. Where a particle is not needed, write in an *X*.

1. Tēburu no ue ni hana ( ) shimbun ga arimasu. (Hint: There are other things in addition to these two.)
2. Yubinkyoku no mae ( ) onna no hito ( ) otoko no ko ga imasu. (Hint: No one else is there.)
3. 1-kai ni dare ( ) imasu ka.
   Sumisu-san ( ) imasu.
4. Basu-noriba ( ) doko ( ) arimasu ka.
   Depāto ( ) mae desu.
5. Takahashi-san wa ashita kaisha no hito ( ) Ōsaka ( ) ikimasu.
6. Sumisu-san wa Sasaki-san ( ) denwa o shimashita.
7. Takahashi-san wa kaisha no chikaku no resutoran ( ) hiru-gohan ( ) tabemashita.
8. Watashi wa basu ( ) uchi ( ) kaerimasu.
9. Watashi wa maiasa ( ) uchi ( ) shimbun ( ) yomimasu.
10. Sumisu-san wa itsu ( ) Nihon ni kimashita ka.
    5-gatsu 18-nichi ( ) kimashita.
11. Yoku terisu o shimasu ka.
    Ee, uchi no chikaku ni terisu-kōto ga arimasu ( ). (Hint: This sentence is giving the reason.)

II Complete each question by filling in the blank(s) with the appropriate word.

1. Hon-ya no mae ni ( ) ga imasu ka.
   Takahashi-san no okusan ga imasu.
2. Takushī-noriba wa ( ) desu ka.
   Asoko desu.
3. Eki no chikaku ni ( ) ga arimasu ka.
   Basu-noriba ya yūbinkyoku ya depāto ga arimasu.
4. Tēburu no ue ni ringo ga ( ) arimasu ka.
   Mittsu arimasu.
5. Eki no mae ni otoko no hito ga ( ) imasu ka.
   Futari imasu.
6. Chan-san no tanjōbi wa ( ) desu ka.
   1-gatsu 29-nichi desu.
7. ( ) ga Kyōto-shisha ni denwa o shimashita ka.
   Sumisu-san ga shimashita.
8. Takahashi-san wa kinō ( ) ni ikimashita ka.
   Kūkō ni ikimashita.
9. ( ) ni Buraun-san ni aimashita ka.
   3-ji ni aimashita.
10. Buraun-san wa ( ) Amerika ni kaerimashita ka.
    Senshū no do-yōbi ni kaerimashita.

11 Kinō ( ) o shimashita ka.
Tegami o kakimashita.
( ) ni kakimashita ka.
Haha ni kakimash ta.

III Choose one of the two words in parentheses to complete the sentence in a way that makes sense in the context

1 Tēburu no ue ni shashin ya hon ga (arimasu, imasu).
2. Isu no ue ni nani mo (arimasu, arimasen).
3 Yoku Resutoran Sakura ni ikimasu ka.
Iie, amari (ik masu, ikimasen)
4. Tokidoki tereb: o (mimasu, mimasen) ka.
Iie, zenzen (mimasu, mimasen).
5. Chan-san wa (yoku, amari) tomodachi ni denwa o shimasu

UNIT 6

VISITING A JAPANESE HOME

In Japan, it is usual to offer guests green tea and Japanese sweets, or *wagashi*. *Wagashi* convey a sense of the seasons. The soft, moist sweets given in spring, for example, are modeled on cherry blossom flowers, while summer *wagashi* take the form of refreshing jellies made from adzuki beans and agar. *Wagashi* are perfect for both entertaining guests and appreciating the seasons. They also make nice gifts. Throughout Japan there are confectionaries that specialize in these unique treats. Some of the oldest and most successful ones have been in business for centuries.

UNIT 6 GRAMMAR

Adjectives

adjective + noun

ex. **Sakura wa kireina hana desu.** "Cherry blossoms are pretty flowers."

noun **wa** adjective **desu**

ex. **Gurei-san no uchi wa ōkii desu.** "Mr. Grey's house is big."

Japanese adjectives can either modify nouns by directly preceding them, or act as predicates. In this they resemble English adjectives. There are two kinds of adjectives: **-i** adjectives and **-na** adjectives.

MODIFYING NOUN: ADJECTIVE + NOUN		
-I ADJ.	**ōkii kōen**	big park
-NA ADJ.	**kireina hana**	pretty flower

Unlike English adjectives, Japanese adjectives are inflected for tense and mood as shown below.

AS PREDICATE: ADJECTIVE + DESU				
	PRESENT FORM		PAST FORM	
	aff.	*neg.*	*aff.*	*neg.*
-I ADJ.	**ōkii desu**	**ōkikunai desu**	**ōkikatta desu**	**ōkikunakatta desu**
-NA ADJ.	**kirei desu**	**kirei dewa arimasen**	**kirei deshita**	**kirei dewa arimasen-deshita**

Giving and Receiving

person 1 **wa** person 2 **ni** noun **o agemasu**

ex. **Okada-san wa Gurei-san ni tokei o agemashita.** "Ms. Okada gave Mr. Grey a watch."

person 1 **wa** person 2 **ni** noun **o moraimasu**

ex. **Gurei-san wa Okada-san ni tokei o moraimashita.**
"Mr. Grey received a watch from Ms. Okada."

The sentence pattern used with the verbs **agemasu** ("give") and **moraimasu** ("receive") is the same as the one introduced in Unit 5: "person 1 **wa** person 2 **ni** noun **o** verb." With **agemasu**, the person who is given something is marked by the particle **ni**, and the thing he or she is given is marked by **o**. But with **moraimasu**, **ni** indicates the giver rather than the receiver. Here **ni** corresponds to "from."
NOTE. Agemasu cannot be used in the sense of "someone gives something to me (the speaker)." For this meaning, the verb **kuremasu** is used.

RECEIVING HOSPITALITY

TARGET DIALOGUE

TRACK 44

Mr. Smith has been invited to the home of his client Mr. Takahashi for the first time.

たかはし：おちゃを　どうぞ。

スミス：ありがとうございます。

たかはし：おかしは　いかがですか。

スミス：はい、　いただきます。　きれいな　おかしですね。
にほんの　おかしですか。

たかはし：ええ、そうです。

スミス：とても　おいしいです。

たかはし：おちゃを　もう　1ぱい　いかがですか。

スミス：いいえ、もう　けっこうです。

■ スミスさんは　たかはしさんの　うちで　きれいな　にほんの　おかしを　たべました。おちゃを　1ぱい　のみました。

Takahashi: O-cha o dōzo.
Sumisu: Arigatō gozaimasu.
Takahashi: O-kashi wa ikaga desu ka.
Sumisu: Hai, itadakimasu. Kireina o-kashi desu ne. Nihon no o-kashi desu ka.
Takahashi: Ee, sō desu.
Sumisu: Totemo oishii desu.
Takahashi: O-cha o mō 1-pai ikaga desu ka.
Sumisu: Iie, mō kekkō desu.

■ **Sumisu-san wa Takahashi-san no uchi de kireina Nihon no o-kashi o tabemashita. O-cha o 1-pai nomimashita.**

Takahashi: Have some tea.
Smith: Thank you.
Takahashi: How about some sweets?
Smith: Yes, I'll have some. These are pretty sweets. Are they Japanese sweets?
Takahashi: Yes, they are.
Smith: They're very tasty.
Takahashi: How about another cup of tea?
Smith: No thanks, I'm fine.

■ Mr. Smith ate some pretty Japanese sweets at Mr. Takahashi's home. He drank one cup of tea.

VOCABULARY

どうぞ	**dōzo**	please (see Note 1 below)
おかし	**o-kashi**	sweets
いかがですか	**ikaga desu ka**	how about ... ? (see Note 2 below)
いただきます	**itadakimasu**	(said before eating; see Note 3 below)
きれい（な）	**kireina**	pretty
とても	**totemo**	very
1ぱい	**1-pai (=ippai)**	one cup
～はい／ばい／ぱい	**-hai/-bai/-pai**	cupful, glassful (counter)
いいえ、もう　けっこうです	**iie, mō kekkō desu**	no thank you, I'm fine (see Note 4 below)
けっこうです	**kekkō desu**	no thank you

NOTES

1. **O-cha o dōzo.**
   "(Thing) **o dōzo**" ("please help yourself to ...") is used to offer something to someone.

2. **O-kashi wa ikaga desu ka.**
   Ikaga desu ka is often used when politely offering things like food or drink. It means "would you like one?" or "how about some?"

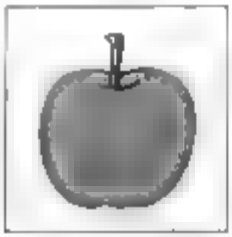
3. **Hai, itadakimasu.**
   This phrase is spoken when taking something that is offered. It implies both acceptance and gratitude.

4. **Iie, mō kekkō desu.**
   This is a polite way of refusing a second helping of food or drink. If you want to refuse the first time you are offered something, say **Iie, kekkō desu**.

PRACTICE

WORD POWER

1. -I adjectives



1 **ōkii desu**

2 **chiisai desu**

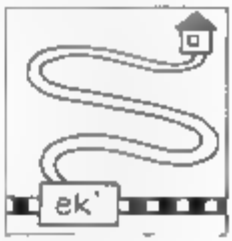
3 **takai desu**

4 **yasui desu**

5 **atarashii desu**

6 **furui desu**

7 **chikai desu**



8 **tōi desu**

9 **muzukashii desu**

10 **yasashii desu**

11 **amai desu**

12 **karai desu**

13 **atsui desu**

14 **samui desu**

15 **ii desu**

16 **omoshiroi desu**

17 **isogashii desu**

18 **oishii desu**

VOCABULARY

ōkii desu	big	**furui desu**	old (not used of people)	**muzukashii desu**	difficult	**samui desu**	cold
chiisai desu	small			**yasashii desu**	easy	**ii desu**	good, nice
takai desu	expensive	**chikai desu**	near	**amai desu**	sweet	**omoshiroi desu**	interesting
yasui desu	inexpensive	**tōi desu**	far	**karai desu**	hot, spicy	**isogashii desu**	busy
atarashii desu	new, fresh			**atsui desu**	hot	**oishii desu**	delicious

II. **-na** adjectives

1 **nigiyaka desu**

2 **shizuka desu**

3 **benri desu**

4 **yūmei desu**

5 **kirei desu**

6 **shinsetsu desu**

7 **hima desu**

KEY SENTENCES

1. **Takahashi-san no uchi wa atarashii desu.**
2. **Kore wa omoshiroi hon desu.**
3. **Tōkyō no chikatetsu wa benri desu.**
4. **Sumisu-san wa senshū yūmeina resutoran de shokuji o shimashita**

1. Mr. Takahashi's house is new
2. This is an interesting book
3. The Tokyo subway is convenient
4. Mr. Smith had a meal at a famous restaurant last week

EXERCISES

I. ***Practice conjugating -i adjectives.*** Repeat the adjectives below and memorize their forms.

	AS PREDICATE PRESENT FORM		MODIFYING NOUN
	aff	*neg*	
big	**ōkii desu**	**ōkikunai desu**	**ōkii**
small	**chiisai desu**	**chiisakunai desu**	**chiisai**
expensive	**takai desu**	**takakunai desu**	**takai**
inexpensive	**yasui desu**	**yasukunai desu**	**yasui**

VOCABULARY

nigiyaka desu	lively	**yūmei desu**	famous	**hima desu**	free, not busy
shizuka desu	quiet	**kirei desu**	pretty, clean	**shokuji o shimasu**	have a meal
benri desu	convenient	**shinsetsu desu**	kind, helpful		

	AS PREDICATE PRESENT FORM		MODIFYING NOUN
	aff	*neg*	
new fresh	**atarashii desu**	**atarashikunai desu**	**atarashii**
old	**furui desu**	**furukunai desu**	**furui**
near	**chikai desu**	**chikakunai desu**	**chikai**
far	**tōi desu**	**tōkunai desu**	**tōi**
difficult	**muzukashii desu**	**muzukashikunai desu**	**muzukashii**
easy	**yasashii desu**	**yasashikunai desu**	**yasashii**
sweet	**amai desu**	**amakunai desu**	**amai**
hot, spicy	**karai desu**	**karakunai desu**	**karai**
hot	**atsui desu**	**atsukunai desu**	**atsui**
cold	**samui desu**	**samukunai desu**	**samui**
good, nice	**ii desu**	**yokunai desu**	**ii**
interesting	**omoshiroi desu**	**omoshirokunai desu**	**omoshiroi**
busy	**isogashii desu**	**isogashikunai desu**	**isogashii**
delicious	**oishii desu**	**oishikunai desu**	**oishii**

II ***State a thing's characteristic.*** Make up sentences following the pattern of the example. Substitute the underlined parts with the alternatives given.

ex. **Kono kuruma wa ōkii desu.**

1. ..... (kono kamera, yasui desu)
2. ..... (Takahashi-san no uchi, atarashii desu)

I Make up dialogues following the patterns of the examples. Substitute the underlined parts with the alternatives given. Be sure to use the same grammatical forms as in the examples.

A. ***Ask and answer how something tastes.***

ex. **A: Sukiyaki wa oishii desu ka.**
B: Hai, oishii desu.

1. A. ..... (kono kēki, amai desu)
   B: ..... (amai desu)
2. A. ..... (kono karē, karai desu)
   B. ..... (karai desu)

VOCABULARY

sukiyaki	sukiyaki
kēki	cake
karē	curry

B *Ask and give one's opinion about something.*

ex **A: Nihon-go wa muzukashii desu ka.**
B: Iie, muzukashikunai desu.

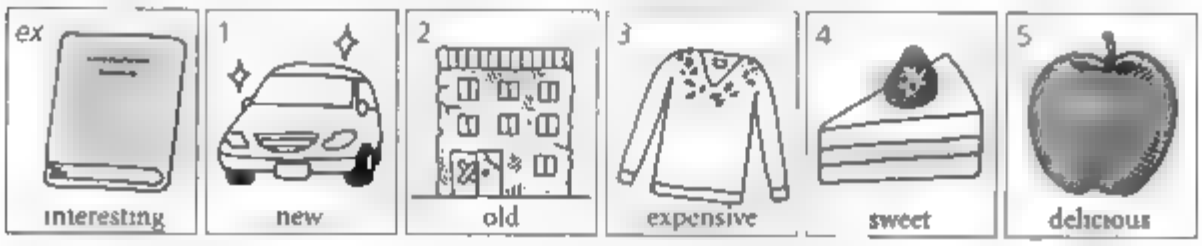
1 A (kono gēmu, omoshiroi desu)

B (omoshiroi desu)

2 A (ano jisho, ii desu)

B (ii desu)

V *Describe something.* Make up sentences following the pattern of the example and based on the information in the illustrations



ex **Kore wa omoshiroi hon desu.**

1

2

3

4

5

V *Practice conjugating -na adjectives.* Repeat the adjectives below and memorize their forms

	AS PREDICATE PRESENT FORM		MODIFYING NOUN
	aff.	*neg*	
vely	**nigiyaka desu**	**nigiyaka dewa arimasen**	**nigiyakana**
quiet	**shizuka desu**	**shizuka dewa arimasen**	**shizukana**
convenient	**benri desu**	**benri dewa arimasen**	**benrina**
famous	**yūmei desu**	**yumei dewa arimasen**	**yūmeina**
pretty, clean	**kirei desu**	**kirei dewa arimasen**	**kireina**
kind, helpful	**shinsetsu desu**	**shinsetsu dewa arimasen**	**shinsetsuna**
free, not busy	**hima desu**	**hima dewa arimasen**	**himana**

ABULARY **gēmu** game

V. ***Describe someone or something.*** Make up sentences following the pattern of the example. Substitute the underlined parts with the alternatives given.

ex. **Howaito-san wa shinsetsu desu.**

1. ..... (Gurin-san no okusan, kirei desu)
2. ..... (Tōkyō no chikatetsu, benri desu)

VII. Make up dialogues following the patterns of the examples. Substitute the underlined part(s) with the alternatives given.

A. ***Ask and give one's opinion about a place.***

ex. **A: Ano resutoran wa shizuka desu ka.**
B: Hai, shizuka desu.

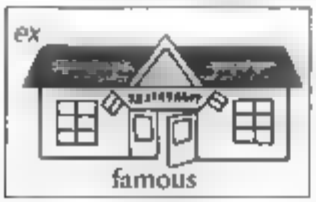
1. A. ..... (Roppongi, nigiyaka desu)
   B. ..... (nigiyaka desu)
2. A. ..... (ano kōen, kirei desu)
   B. ..... (kirei desu)

B. ***Ask and answer whether one is free.***

ex. **A: Ashita hima desu ka.**
B: Iie, hima dewa arimasen. Isogashii desu.

1. A. (ashita no gogo)
   B.
2. A. (asatte no ban)
   B.

VIII. ***Describe a restaurant where someone had a meal.*** Make up sentences following the pattern of the example and based on the information in the illustrations.



ex. **Sumisu-san wa senshū yūmeina resutoran de shokuji o shimashita.**

1.

2.

VOCABULARY

Howaito	White (surname)
Roppongi	Roppongi (district in Tokyo)

IX. Make up dialogues following the patterns of the examples. Substitute the underlined words with the words in parentheses.

A. ***Ask and give one's opinion about a hotel.***

ex. **A: Tôkyô Hoteru wa kireina hoteru desu ka.**
B: Hai, kireina hoteru desu.

1. A: _____ (atarashii)
   B: _____ (atarashii)
2. A: _____ (ôkii)
   B: _____ (ôkii)

B. ***Ask and give one's opinion about a restaurant.***

ex. **A: Resutoran Ginza wa yûmeina resutoran desu ka.**
B: Iie, yûmeina resutoran dewa arimasen.

1. A: _____ (shizukana)
   B: _____ (shizukana)
2. A: _____ (ii)
   B: _____ (ii)

C. ***Ask and give one's opinion about a place.***

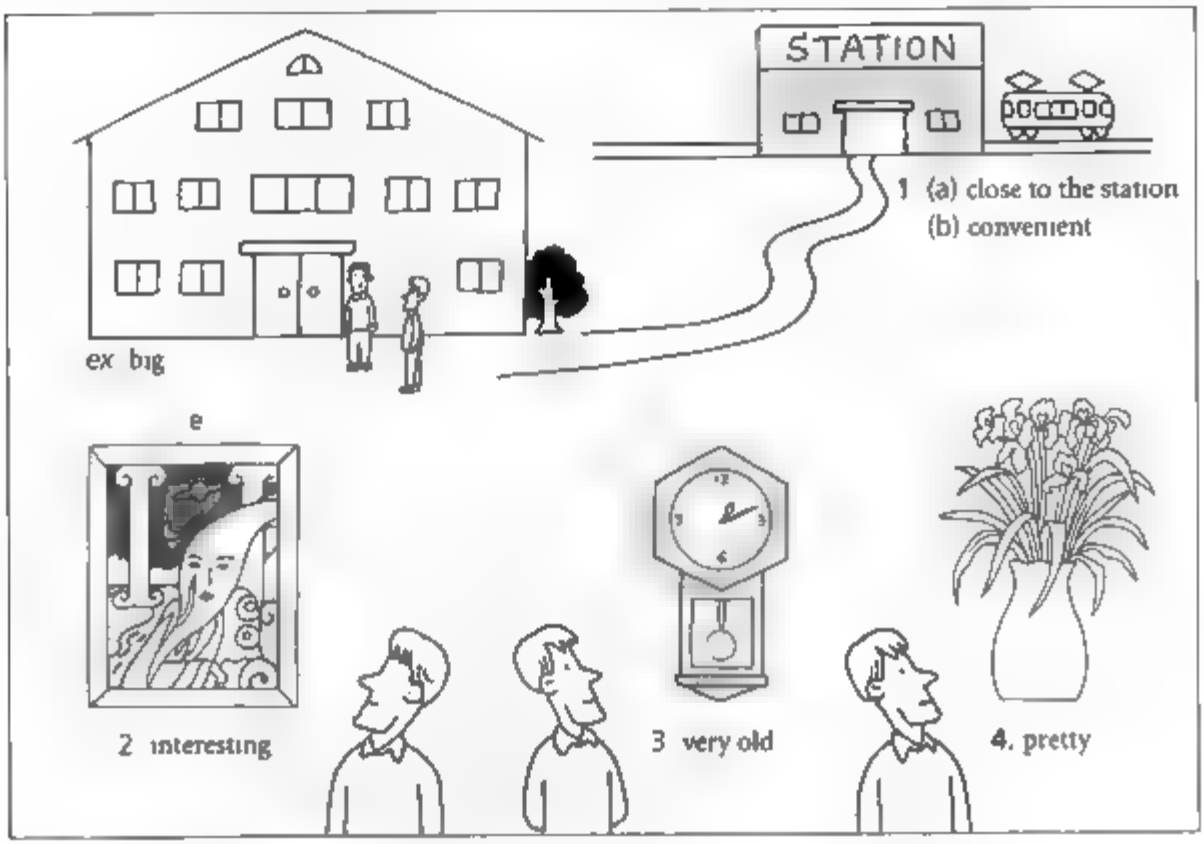
ex. **A: Shûmatsu ni Nikkô ni ikimasu.**
B: Nikkô wa donna tokoro desu ka.
A: Kireina tokoro desu yo.

1. A: _____ (Asakusa)
   B: _____ (Asakusa)
   A: _____ (nigiyakana)
2. A: _____ (Odaiba)
   B: _____ (Odaiba)
   A: _____ (omoshiroi)

VOCABULARY

donna	what kind of
tokoro	place
Asakusa	Asakusa (district in Tokyo)

X. ***Compliment someone's possessions.*** Mr Smith is visiting Mr Takahashi's house. Compliment Mr Takahashi's house and the things (numbered in the picture) he owns, assuming the role of Mr Smith. Make up sentences following the pattern of the example.



ex. **Sumisu: Ōkii uchi desu ne.**

1. Sumisu: (a)

   (b)

2. Sumisu

3. Sumisu

4. Sumisu

VOCABULARY • painting, picture

XI. Make up dialogues following the patterns of the examples. Substitute the underlined parts with the a ternatives given.

A. ***Talk about the weather.***

ex. **Sumisu: Kyō wa ii tenki desu ne.**
Takahashi: Ee, hontō ni ii tenki desu ne.

1. Sumisu: ..... (atsui)

   Takahashi: ..... (atsui)

2. Sumisu ..... (samui)

   Takahashi: ..... (samui)

B. ***Ask and answer whether a facility is far from where one is.***

ex. **Chan: Sumimasen. Chikatetsu no eki wa koko kara tōi desu ka.**
otoko no hito: Iie, tōkunai desu. Aruite 5-fun gurai desu yo.
Chan: Sō desu ka. Arigatō gozaimasu.

1. Chan: ..... (basutei)

   otoko no hito

   Chan

2. Chan: ..... (kōen)

   otoko no hito

   Chan

XII. Listen to the CD and fill in the blank based on the information you hear.

Hakone wa ..... tokoro desu.

VOCABULARY			
tenki	weather	**5-fun gurai**	about five minutes
hontō ni	really	**5-fun**	for five minutes
		gurai	about, approximately (particle used of a period, price, amount, etc., but not of a specific point in time)

SHORT DIALOGUES

I. Mr. Smith visits Mr. Takahashi's home. He rings the security system intercom.

Takahashi: Hai.
Sumisu: Sumisu desu.
Takahashi: A, chotto matte kudasai. *(Takahashi goes to answer the door.)*
Takahashi: Yoku irasshaimashita.
Sumisu: Ojamashimasu.

Takahashi: Yes?
Mr. Smith: It's me, Smith.
Takahashi: Oh, please wait a minute. *(Takahashi goes to answer the door.)*
Takahashi: Welcome!
Mr. Smith: May I come in? *(lit., "I'm going to disturb you.")*

chotto matte kudasai	please wait a minute
chotto	a little bit
yoku irasshaimashita	welcome
ojamashimasu	may I come in? (said when entering someone's home)

II. Mr. Smith is at an antique shop in Tokyo.

Sumisu: Kore wa ikura desu ka.
mise no hito: 8,000-en desu.
Sumisu: Chotto takai desu ne.
mise no hito: Kore wa 6,500-en desu.
Sumisu: Ja, sore o kudasai.

Smith: How much is this?
salesperson: It's 8,000 yen.
Smith: It's a little bit expensive.
salesperson: This is 6,500 yen.
Smith: Well then, I'll have that one.

Active Communication

Start a conversation with someone by talking about the weather. Say whether it is a nice day, a cold day, or a hot day. Refer to Exercise XI-A as necessary.

LESSON 13 GIVING COMPLIMENTS

TARGET DIALOGUE

TRACK 48

Mr. Takahashi and Mr. Smith are talking about the flower vase that Mr. Takahashi received from Ms. Hoffman.

スミス：きれいな　かびんですね。

たかはし　ええ、たんじょうびに　ともだちの　ホフマンさんに
もらいました。

スミス：いい　いろですね。

たかはし：ええ、わたしの　すきな　いろです。

■ たかはしさんは　たんじょうびに　ホフマンさんに　かびんを
もらいました。

Sumisu: Kireina kabin desu ne.
Takahashi: Ee, tanjōbi ni tomodachi no Hofuman-san ni moraimashita.
Sumisu: Ii iro desu ne.
Takahashi: Ee, watashi no sukina iro desu.

■ **Takahashi-san wa tanjōbi ni Hofuman-san ni kabin o moraimashita.**

Smith: That's a pretty vase, isn't it?
Takahashi: Yes, I received it from my friend Ms. Hoffman for my birthday.
Smith: That's a nice color, isn't it?
Takahashi: Yes, it's my favorite color.

■ Mr. Takahashi received a vase for his birthday from Ms. Hoffman.

VOCABULARY

かびん	**kabin**	vase
もらいました	**moraimashita**	received
もらいます	**moraimasu**	receive
いろ	**iro**	color
すきな	**sukina**	favorite (-na adj.)

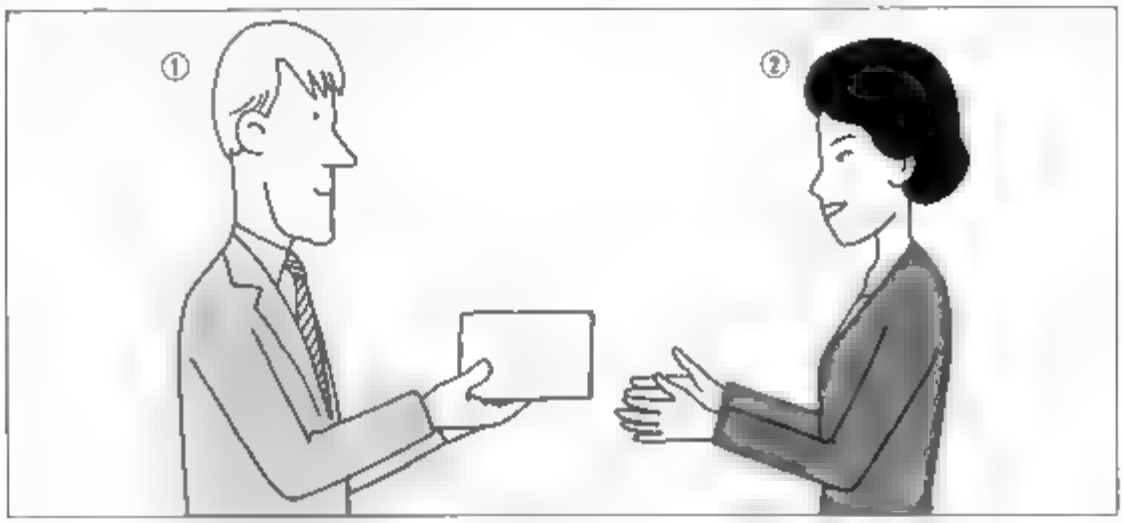
NOTES

1. Tomodachi no Hofuman-san

This **no** is not possessive but appositive: "my friend Ms. Hoffman."

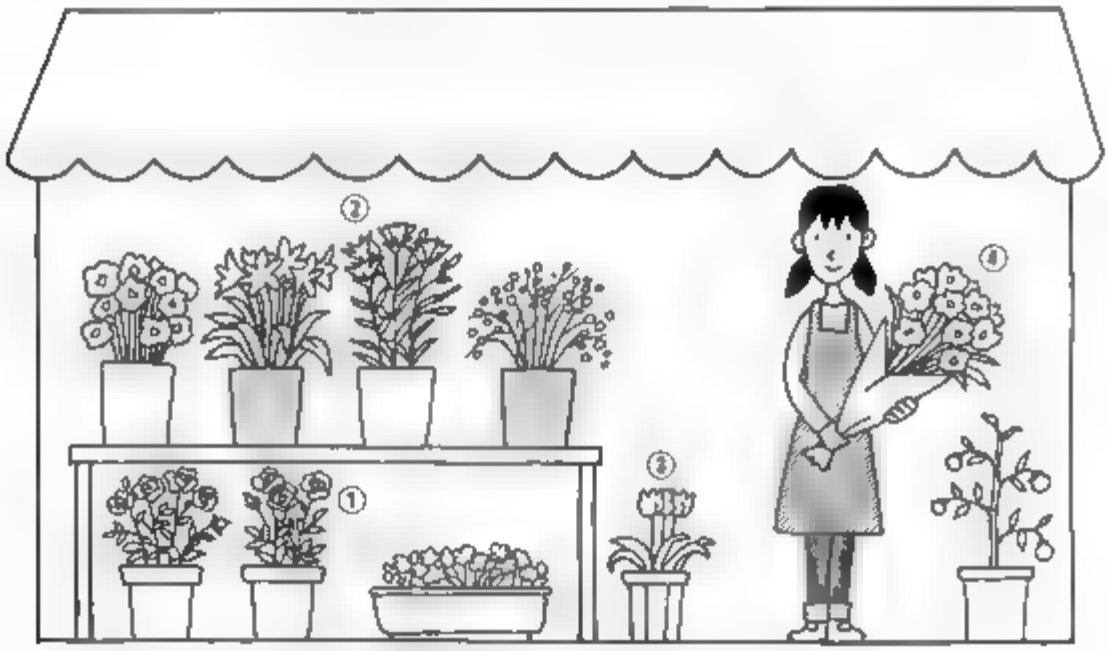
WORD POWER

I. Verbs



1 **agemasu** 2 **moraimasu**

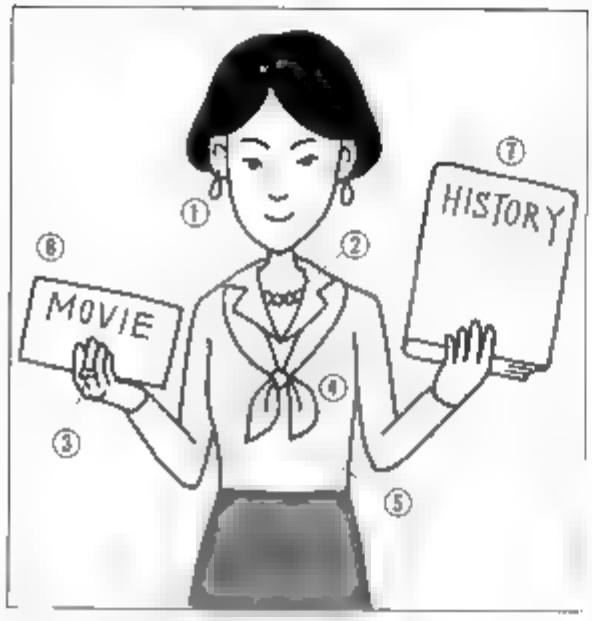
II. Flower vocabulary



1 **bara** 2 **kānēshon** 3 **chūrippu** 4 **hanataba**

VOCABULARY

agemasu	give	**chūrippu**	tulip
moraimasu	receive	**hanataba**	bouquet
bara	rose		
kānēshon	carnation		



1 **iyaringu**
2 **nekkuresu**
3 **yubiwa**
4. **sukāfu**
5 **burausu**
6 **eiga no kippu**
7. **rekishi no hon**
8 **bōshi**
9. **nekutai**
10 **kōto**
11 **Kyōto no o-miyage**

KEY SENTENCES

1. **Sumisu-san wa Chan-san ni hana o agemashita.**
2. **Chan-san wa Sumisu-san ni hana o moraimashita.**

1 Mr. Smith gave Ms. Chan some flowers
2 Ms. Chan received some flowers from Mr. Smith

EXERCISES

Practice conjugating verbs. Repeat the verbs below and memorize their forms—present and past, affirmative and negative

	PRESENT FORM		PAST FORM	
	aff	*neg.*	*aff*	*neg*
give	**agemasu**	**agemasen**	**agemashita**	**agemasendeshita**
receive	**moraimasu**	**moraimasen**	**moraimashita**	**moraimasendeshita**

VOCABULARY

iyaringu	earring	**burausu**	blouse	**nekutai**	necktie
nekkuresu	necklace	**kippu**	ticket	**kōto**	coat
yubiwa	ring	**rekishi**	history	**o-miyage**	gift, souvenir
sukāfu	scarf	**bōshi**	hat, cap		

II. ***State what someone will give to, or receive from, another*** Make up sentences following the pattern of the example. Substitute the underlined words with the alternatives given.

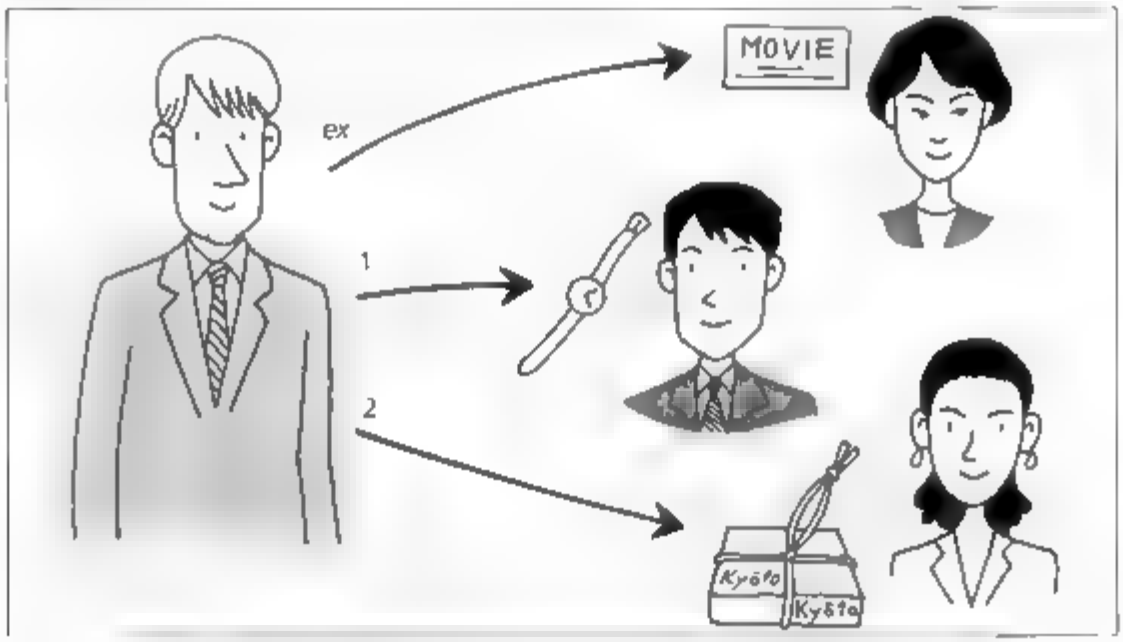
ex. **Sumisu-san wa Chan-san ni hana o agemasu.**
Chan-san wa Sumisu-san ni hana o moraimasu.

1 ..... (kirei na hana)

2 ..... (eiga no kippu)

3 ..... (rekishi no hon)

I. Make up dialogues following the patterns of the examples and based on the information in the illustration.



A. ***Ask and answer whom someone gave something to.***

ex. **A. Sumisu-san wa dare ni eiga no kippu o agemashita ka.**
B: Chan-san ni agemashita.

1 A.

B

2 A.

B

B. ***Ask and answer whom someone received something from.***

ex. **A: Chan-san wa dare ni eiga no kippu o moraimashita ka**
B: Sumisu-san ni moraimashita.

1 A.

B

2 A.

B

C *Ask and answer what someone gave to another.*

ex **A. Sumisu-san wa Chan-san ni nani o agemashita ka.**
B: Eiga no kippu o agemashita.

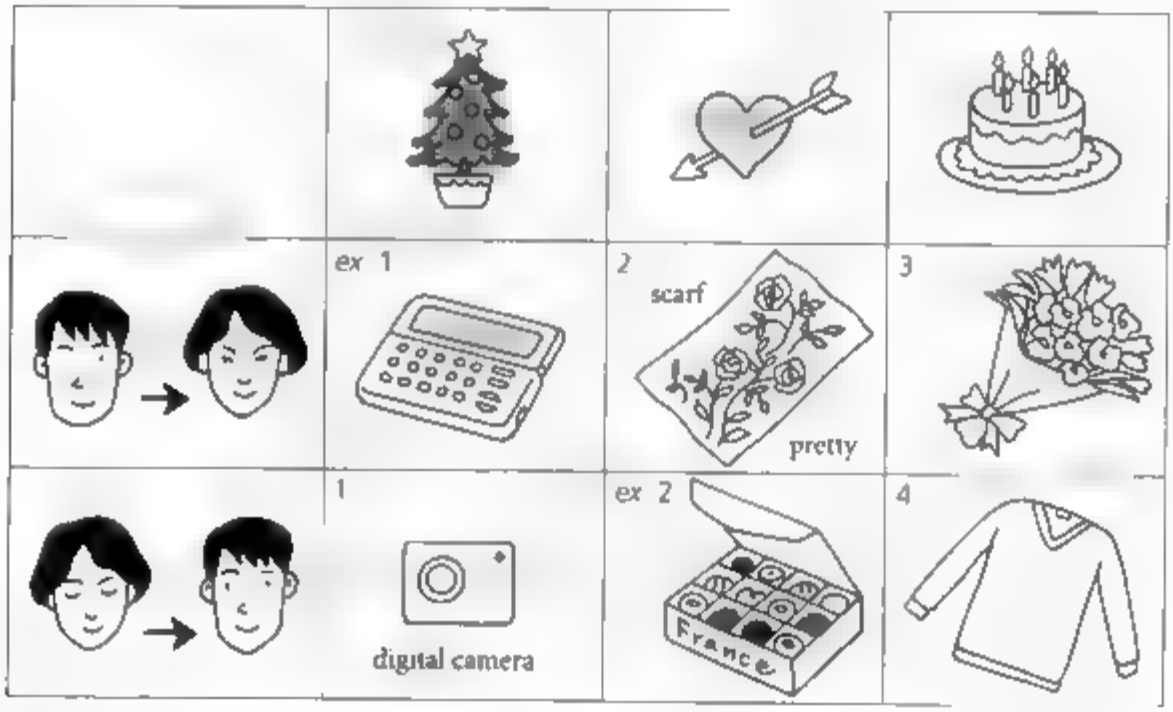
1 A.

B

2 A.

B

IV Make up sentences or dialogues following the patterns of the examples and based on the information in the illustration



A *State who gave what to whom, and who received what from whom, on a specific day.*

ex 1 **Suzuki-san wa Kurisumasu ni Chan-san ni denshi-jisho o agemashita.**
Chan-san wa Kurisumasu ni Suzuki-san ni denshi-jisho o moraimashita.

1

2

VOCABULARY

denshi-jisho	electronic dictionary
Kurisumasu	Christmas
Barentaindē	Valentine's Day
chokorēto	chocolate

B *Ask and answer what someone gave to another on a specific day.*

ex. 1 **A: Suzuki-san wa Kurisumasu ni Chan-san ni nani o agemashita ka.**
B: Denshi-jisho o agemashita.

1 A

B

2 A

B

C *Ask and answer whom someone gave something to on a specific day.*

ex. 1 **A: Suzuki-san wa Kurisumasu ni dare ni denshi-jisho o agemashita ka.**
B: Chan-san ni agemashita.

1 A

B

2 A

B

D *Ask and answer when someone gave something to another*

ex. 1 **A: Suzuki-san wa itsu Chan-san ni denshi-jisho o agemashita ka.**
B: Kurisumasu ni agemashita.

1 A

B

2 A

B

E *Ask and answer what someone received on a specific day.*

ex. 2 **A. Suzuki-san wa Barentaindē ni Chan-san ni nani o moraimashita ka**
B: Furansu no chokorēto o moraimashita.

3 A

B

4 A

B

F *Ask and answer whom someone received something from on a specific day.*

ex. 2 **A. Suzuki-san wa Barentaindē ni dare ni Furansu no chokorēto o moraimashita ka.**
B: Chan-san ni moraimashita.

3 A

B

4 A

B

G *Ask and answer when someone received something from another.*

ex. 2 **A. Suzuki-san wa itsu Chan-san ni Furansu no chokorēto o moraimashita ka.**
B: Barentaindē ni moraimashita.

3 A

B

4 A

B

V Make up dialogues following the patterns of the examples. Substitute the underlined parts with the alternatives given.

A. *Ask someone whether he or she will give a birthday present to another.*

ex. **Chan: Katō-san, ashita wa Sumisu-san no tanjōbi desu ne. Sumisu-san ni purezento o agemasu ka.**
Katō: Ee, nekutai o agemasu.
Chan. Sō desu ka.

1 Chan: ..... (Gurin-san)

Katō: ..... (rekishi no hon)

Chan

2 Chan ..... (okusan)

Katō: ..... (atarashii kaban)

Chan

B. *Talk about presents to be given on special occasions.*

ex. **Sumisu: Katō-san, Haha no hi ni okāsan ni nani o agemasu ka.**
Katō: Akai kānēshon o agemasu.
Sumisu: Sō desu ka.

1 Sumisu: ..... (Chichi no hi, otōsan)

Katō: ..... (dejikame)

Sumisu

2 Sumisu: ..... (kekkon-kinembi, okusan)

Katō: ..... (bara no hanataba)

Sumisu

VOCABULARY

purezento	present	**kekkon-kinembi**	wedding anniversary
Haha no hi	Mother's Day	**kekkon**	marriage
Chichi no hi	Father's Day	**kinembi**	anniversary

C. ***Talk about an article someone is wearing.***

ex. Ms. Chan has a new necklace

Suzuki: Kireina nekkuresu desu ne.
Chan: Ee, tanjobi ni tomodachi ni moraimashita.
Suzuki: Yoku niaimasu ne.
Chan: Arigatō gozaimasu.

1 Suzuki: _____ (ii tokei)

Chan: _____ (Kurisumasu)

Suzuki: _____

Chan: _____

2 Suzuki: _____ (kireina sukâfu)

Chan: _____ (tanjōbi)

Suzuki: _____

Chan: _____

VI. Listen to the CD and answer the question based on the information you hear.

SHORT DIALOGUES

1. Mr. Smith is visiting Mr. Takahashi's house today. He glances at his watch.

Sumisu: Ja, sorosoro shitsureishimasu.
Kyō wa dōmo arigatō gozaimashita.
Takahashi: Dō itashimashite.

Smith: Well, I'll have to be leaving soon.
Thank you for (inviting me) today.
Takahashi: You're welcome.

sorosoro shitsureishimasu	it's time to be going, I'd better get going
sorosoro	in just a short while
dōmo arigatō gozaimashita	thank you very much (used to thank someone who has done you a favor or shown you kindness)

VOCABULARY

yoku	well
niaimasu	suit, look good on

Mrs. Matsui, who lives next door to the Greens, has received a bunch of peaches from a friend, so she brings some to Mrs. Green.

Matsui: Tomodachi ni momo o takusan moraimashita. Kore, dōzo.
Gurin: Dōmo arigatō gozaimasu.

Matsui received a lot of peaches from a friend. Please take some
Green: Thank you very much.

VOCABULARY

momo peach

Active Communication

Notice an item of clothing or an accessory that someone else is wearing and compliment him or her on it. Refer to Exercise V-C as necessary.

EXPRESSING GRATITUDE

TARGET DIALOGUE

TRACK 52

Mr. Smith, who visited Mr. Takahashi's house yesterday, phones Mr. Takahashi. Before getting to the point of the call, Mr. Smith thanks Mr. Takahashi for his hospitality.

スミス：もしもし、たかはしさんの　おたくですか。

たかはし：はい、そうです。

スミス：スミスです。

たかはし：あ、スミスさん。

スミス：きのうは　どうも　ありがとうございました。とても　たのしかったです。

たかはし　いいえ、どういたしまして。わたしたちも　たのしかったです。どうぞ　また　きてください。

スミス：どうも　ありがとうございます。

■ スミスさんは　たかはしさんの　うちに　でんわを　しました。

Sumisu: Moshimoshi, Takahashi-san no o-taku desu ka.
Takahashi: Hai, sō desu.
Sumisu: Sumisu desu.
Takahashi: A, Sumisu-san.
Sumisu: Kinō wa dōmo arigatō gozaimashita. Totemo tanoshikatta desu.
Takahashi: Iie, dō itashimashite. Watashitachi mo tanoshikatta desu. Dōzo mata kite kudasai.
Sumisu: Dōmo arigatō gozaimasu.

■ Sumisu-san wa Takahashi-san no uchi ni denwa o shimashita.

Smith: Hello, is this the Takahashi residence?
Takahashi: Yes, it is.
Smith: This is Smith.
Takahashi: Oh, Mr. Smith.
Smith: Thank you very much for yesterday. It was a lot of fun.
Takahashi: Oh, you're welcome. We had a lot of fun, too. Please come again.
Smith: Thank you very much.

■ Mr. Smith phoned Mr. Takahashi's home.

VOCABULARY

おたく	**o-taku**	(another person's) house

たのしかったです	**tanoshikatta desu**	was fun
たのしいです	**tanoshii desu**	be fun
わたしたち	**watashitachi**	we
また	**mata**	again
きてください	**kite kudasai**	please come

NOTES

1. Takahashi-san no o-taku

When speaking politely about your listener's house, use **o-taku** instead of **uchi**

PRACTICE

WORD POWER

CD TRACK 53

I. -I adjectives

1 **tanoshii desu**

2 **tsumaranai desu**

3 **warui desu**

II. Events

1 **o-matsuri**

2 **konsāto**

3 **bāgen-sēru**

4 **shō**

VOCABULARY

tanoshii desu	fun, enjoyable	**konsāto**	concert
tsumaranai desu	boring, tedious	**bāgen-sēru**	clearance sale
warui desu	bad	**shō**	show
o-matsuri	festival		

KEY SENTENCES

1. **Kinō wa samukatta desu.**
2. **Kinō no o-matsuri wa nigiyaka deshita.**

1 It was cold yesterday
2 Yesterday's festival was lively

EXERCISES

I Repeat the adjectives below and memorize their forms—present and past, affirmative and negative.

A. ***Practice conjugating -i adjectives.***

	PRESENT FORM		PAST FORM	
	aff	*neg*	*aff*	*neg*
cold	**samui desu**	**samukunai desu**	**samukatta desu**	**samukunakatta desu**
hot	**atsui desu**	**atsukunai desu**	**atsukatta desu**	**atsukunakatta desu**
fun	**tanoshii desu**	**tanoshikunai desu**	**tanoshikatta desu**	**tanoshikunakatta desu**
good	**ii desu**	**yokunai desu**	**yokatta desu**	**yokunakatta desu**
bad	**warui desu**	**warukunai desu**	**warukatta desu**	**warukunakatta desu**
interesting	**omoshiroi desu**	**omoshirokunai desu**	**omoshirokatta desu**	**omoshiroku-nakatta desu**
tasty	**oishii desu**	**oishikunai desu**	**oishikatta desu**	**oishikunakatta desu**
boring	**tsumaranai desu**	**tsumaranakunai desu**	**tsumaranakatta desu**	**tsumaranaku-nakatta desu**

B ***Practice conjugating -na adjectives.***

	PRESENT FORM		PAST FORM	
	aff	*neg*	*aff*	*neg*
pretty	**kirei desu**	**kirei dewa arimasen**	**kirei deshita**	**kirei dewa arimasendeshita**
quiet	**shizuka desu**	**shizuka dewa arimasen**	**shizuka deshita**	**shizuka dewa arimasendeshita**
lively	**nigiyaka desu**	**nigiyaka dewa arimasen**	**nigiyaka deshita**	**nigiyaka dewa arimasendeshita**

1 Make up sentences following the patterns of the examples. Substitute the underlined parts with the alternatives given, using the same grammatical forms as in the examples.

A. *Give one's opinion about a movie.*

ex. **Kinō no eiga wa omoshirokatta desu.**

1 _____ (ii desu)

2 _____ (tanoshii desu)

B. *Give one's opinion about a party.*

ex. **Kinō no pātī wa tanoshikunakatta desu.**

1 _____ (omoshiroi desu)

2 _____ (ii desu)

C. *Give one's opinion about a show.*

ex. **Kinō no shō wa kirei deshita.**

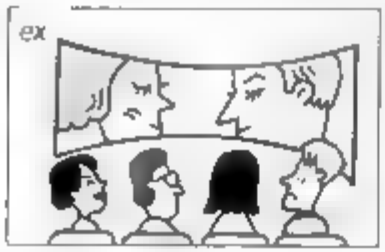
(nigiyaka desu)

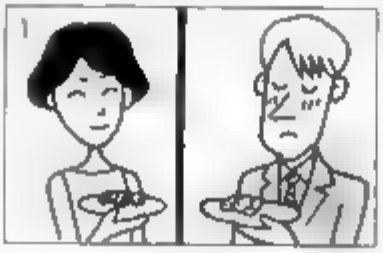
D. *Give one's opinion about a festival.*

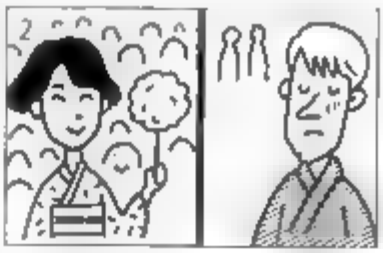
ex. **Kinō no o-matsuri wa nigiyaka dewa arimasendeshita.**

(kirei desu)

2 Make up sentences following the patterns of the examples and based on the information in the illustrations. Use the words in parentheses as a guide.







A. *Ask someone's opinion about an experience.*

ex. **Nakamura: Kinō no eiga wa omoshirokatta desu ka.**
Chan: Hai, omoshirokatta desu.
Sumisu: Iie, omoshirokunakatta desu.

1 Nakamura: _____ (pātī no ryōri, oishii desu)

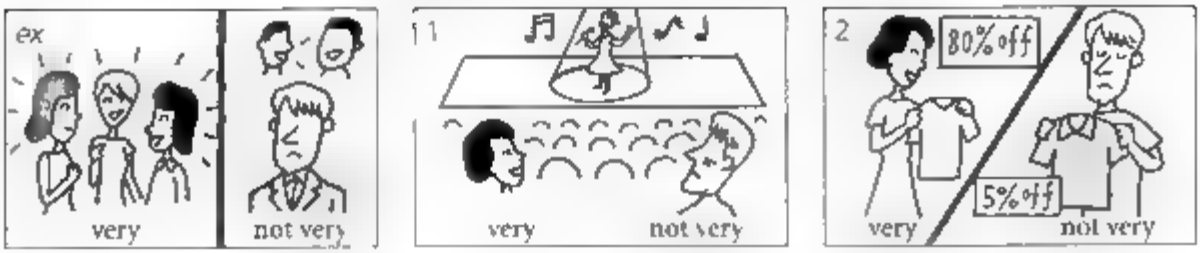
Chan

Sumisu

2 Nakamura: _____ (o-matsuri, nigiyaka desu)

Chan

Sumisu



B *Ask and give one's opinion about an experience.*

ex **Katō: Kinō no pāti wa dō deshita ka.**
Chan: Totemo tanoshikatta desu.
Sumisu: Amari tanoshikunakatta desu.

1 Katō: ..... (konsāto)

Chan: ..... (ii desu)

Sumisu: ..... (ii desu)

2 Katō: ..... (bāgen-sēru)

Chan: ..... (yasui desu)

Sumisu: ..... (yasui desu)

IV Make up dialogues following the patterns of the examples. Substitute the underlined parts with the alternatives given, using the same grammatical forms as in the examples.

A. *Use appropriate expressions when giving or receiving gifts.*

ex. **Chan: Shūmatsu ni Kyōto ni ikimashita. Kore, Kyōto no o-miyage desu. Dōzo.**
Suzuki: Arigatō gozaimasu. Kyōto wa dō deshita ka.
Chan: Totemo kirei deshita.

1. Chan: ..... (Sapporo)

Suzuki: ..... (Sapporo)

Chan: ..... (samui desu)

2 Chan: ..... (Hakone no onsen)

Suzuki: ..... (onsen)

Chan: ..... (tanoshii desu)

VOCABULARY

dō deshita ka	how was ?
dō	how

B *Thank someone for a gift one received.*

ex Ms Chan received a box of chocolates from Ms Nakamura on her birthday

Chan: Nakamura-san, chokorēto o arigatō gozaimashita. Totemo oishikatta desu.
Nakamura: Sō desu ka. Yokatta desu.

1 Chan

(konsāto no kippu, tanoshi desu)

Nakamura

2 Chan

(kabuki no hon, omoshiroi desu)

Nakamura

C *Make a telephone call.*

ex **Suzuki: Moshimoshi, Nakamura-san no o-taku desu ka.**
Nakamura-san no kazoku: Hai, sō desu.
Suzuki: Suzuki desu. Mayumi-san wa irasshaimasu ka.
Nakamura-san no kazoku: Hai Chotto o-machi kudasai.

1 Suzuki: (Sasaki-san)

Sasaki-san no kazoku

Suzuki: (okusan)

Sasaki-san no kazoku

2 Suzuki: (Katō-san)

Katō-san no kazoku

Suzuki: (go-shujin)

Katō-san no kazoku

V Listen to the CD and fill in the blanks based on the information you hear

Chan-san wa ni o-matsuri o mimashita O-matsuri wa totemo

ABULARY

yokatta desu	that s good	**irasshaimasu**	be (honorific word for **imasu**)
Mayumi	Mayumi (female first name)	**chotto o-machi kudasai**	please wait a minute (polite way of saying **chotto matte kudasai**)

SHORT DIALOGUE

The morning after receiving some peaches from Mrs. Matsui, Mrs. Green happens to run into Mrs. Matsui. She thanks her for the peaches.

Gurīn: Ohayō gozaimasu.
Matsui: Ohayō gozaimasu.
Gurīn: Kinō wa momo o arigatō gozaimashita. Totemo oishikatta desu.
Matsui: Sō desu ka. Yokatta desu.

Green: Good morning.
Matsui: Good morning.
Green: Thank you for the peaches you gave us yesterday. They were very tasty.
Matsui: Were they? That's good.

Active Communication

Ask people for their impressions of places, movies, or other things or events. Refer to Exercise III.

UNIT 7

GOING TO A FESTIVAL

The Japanese calendar is lined with seasonal festivals and events. Seasonal festivals such as cherry blossom viewing in spring and firework displays in the heat of summer are held to appreciate nature at its best. Festivals to celebrate a good harvest are held mainly in autumn, whereas those meant to invoke one are held in spring. At these fêtes, people carry around portable shrines, or *o-mikoshi*, and the men often wear *happi* coats designating neighborhood associations. Many festivals attract large crowds, and famous ones such as the Sapporo Snow Festival or the Gion Festival in Kyoto are always packed with people.

UNIT 7 GRAMMAR

Inviting Someone to Do Something and Making Suggestions

verb-masen ka

verb-mashō

ex. **Issho ni Asakusa ni ikimasen ka.**
"Won't you go to Asakusa with (me)?/What do you say to going to Asakusa together?"
Ee/Hai, ikimashō. "Yes, let's go."

The verb-**masen ka** pattern is used to invite someone to do something. Appropriate replies are as follows

1 Acceptance
   a **Ee/Hai,** verb-**mashō.** "Yes, let's [verb]."
   b **Ee/Hai, zehi.** "Yes, I'd love to."
2 Refusal **Zannen desu ga, tsugō ga warui desu.**
   "I'm sorry, but it wouldn't be convenient (for me)."

The verb-**mashō** pattern is generally translatable as "let's."

verb-mashō ka

ex. **Doko de aimashō ka.** "Where should we meet?"

The verb-**mashō ka** pattern is used to invite someone to decide a time, place, etc. for something

Offering to Do Something

verb-mashō ka

ex. **Nimotsu o mochimashō ka.** "Shall I carry your luggage?"

The verb-**mashō ka** pattern is also used when offering to do something for someone. Appropriate replies are as follows

1. Acceptance **Ee/Hai, onegaishimasu.** "Yes, please."
2 Refusal **Iie, kekkō desu.** "No, thank you."

LESSON 15 INVITATIONS

TARGET DIALOGUE

TRACK 56

Mr. Kato invites Mr. Smith to a festival in Asakusa

かとう　スミスさん、こんしゅうの　どようびに　あさくさで　おまつりが　あります。いっしょに　いきませんか。

スミス：いいですね。いきましょう。なんで　いきましょうか。

かとう：ちかてつで　いきませんか。

スミス：そう　しましょう。どこで　あいましょうか。

かとう：あさくさえきの　かいさつぐちで　あいませんか。

スミス：はい。なんじに　あいましょうか。

かとう：10じは　どうですか。

スミス：10じですね。じゃ、どようびに。

■ こんしゅうの　どようびに　あさくさで　おまつりが　ありますから、スミスさんは　かとうさんと　あさくさに　いきます。

Katō: Sumisu-san, konshū no do-yōbi ni Asakusa de o-matsuri ga arimasu. Issho ni ikimasen ka.
Sumisu: Ii desu ne. Ikimashō. Nan de ikimashō ka.
Katō: Chikatetsu de ikimasen ka.
Sumisu: Sō shimashō. Doko de aimashō ka.
Katō: Asakusa Eki no kaisatsuguchi de aimasen ka.
Sumisu: Hai. Nan-ji ni aimashō ka.
Katō: 10-ji wa dō desu ka.
Sumisu: 10-ji desu ne. Ja, do-yōbi ni.

■ **Konshū no do-yōbi ni Asakusa de o-matsuri ga arimasu kara, Sumisu-san wa Katō-san to Asakusa ni ikimasu.**

Kato: Mr. Smith, there is a festival in Asakusa this Saturday. Won't you go with me?
Smith: That would be nice. Let's go. How should we go?
Kato: Would you like to go by subway?
Smith: Let's do that. Where should we meet?
Kato: Would you like to meet at the ticket gate at Asakusa Station?
Smith: All right. What time should we meet?
Kato: How about 10:00?
Smith: 10:00, then. Well, I'll see you on Saturday.

■ On Saturday there is a festival in Asakusa, so Mr. Smith is going to Asakusa with Mr. Kato.

VOCABULARY

あります	**arimasu**	there is/are going to be (see Note 1 below)
いっしょに	**issho ni**	together
いきませんか	**ikimasen ka**	won't you go (with me)?
いきましょう	**ikimashō**	let's go
いきましょうか	**ikimashō ka**	shall we go?
あさくさえき	**Asakusa Eki**	Asakusa Station
かいさつぐち	**kaisatsuguchi**	ticket gate
どうですか	**dō desu ka**	how is ?
から	**kara**	because (particle; see Note 3 below)

NOTES

1. **Asakusa de o-matsuri ga arimasu.**
   Arimasu can also be used in the sense of "take place" or "happen." The place where the event happens is followed by the particle **de**.

2. **Ja, do-yōbi ni**
   Do-yōbi ni is short for **do-yōbi ni aimashō**, "let's meet on Saturday." Japanese people often refer to the next meeting rather than saying good-bye.
   ex. **Ja, mata ashita.** "Well then, (see you) again tomorrow."

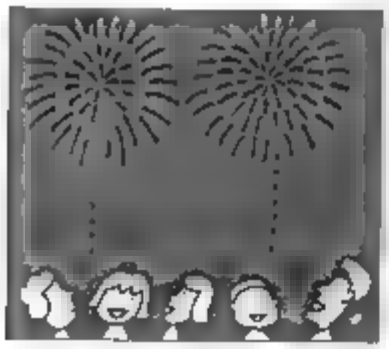
3. **Konshū no do-yōbi ni Asakusa de o-matsuri ga arimasu kara, Sumisu-san wa Katō-san to Asakusa ni ikimasu.**
   This complex sentence consists of two clauses. The first clause, ending with the particle **kara**, expresses a reason for what is stated in the second clause.

PRACTICE

WORD POWER

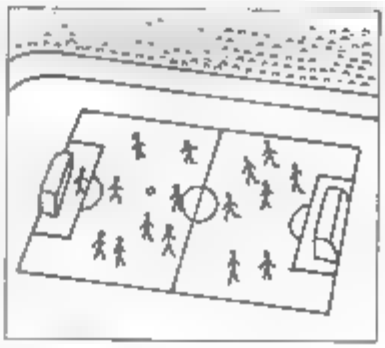
TRACK 57

I. Events.



1 **hanabi-taikai**

2 **yuki-matsuri**

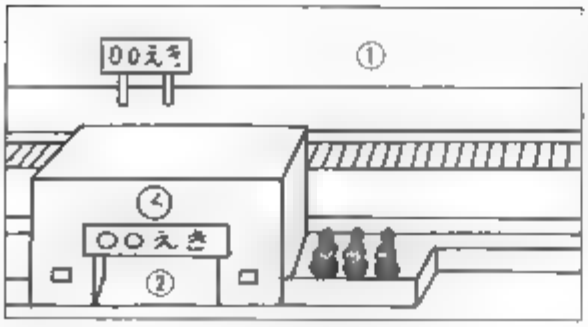


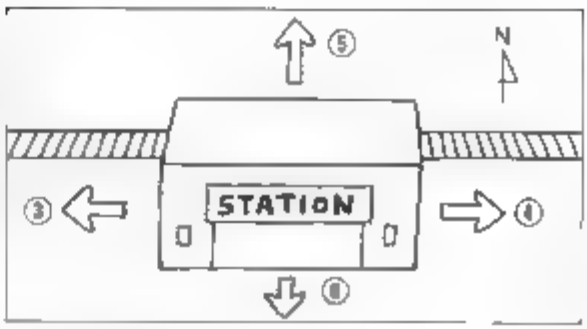
3 **sakkā no shiai**

VOCABULARY

hanabi-taikai	fireworks display	**yuki-matsuri**	snow festival	**sakkā**	soccer
hanabi	fireworks	**yuki**	snow	**shiai**	game, match
taikai	large gathering				

II Parts of a station





1 **hōmu**
2 **iriguchi**
3 **nishiguchi**
4 **higashiguchi**
5 **kitaguchi**
6 **minamiguchi**

III Variations on the **-masu** form

	go	see	do	meet
V-**masu**	**ikimasu**	**mimasu**	**shimasu**	**aimasu**
V-**mashō**	**ikimashō**	**mimashō**	**shimashō**	**aimashō**
V-**mashō ka**	**ikimashō ka**	**mimashō ka**	**shimashō ka**	**aimashō ka**
V-**masen ka**	**ikimasen ka**	**mimasen ka**	**shimasen ka**	**aimasen ka**

KEY SENTENCES

1. **Shūmatsu ni issho ni eiga o mimasen ka.**
2. **Eiga o mimashō.**
3. **Nani o tabemashō ka.**
4. **Do-yōbi ni Asakusa de o-matsuri ga arimasu.**
5. **2-kai ni resutoran ga arimasu kara, resutoran de shokuji o shimasen ka.**

1 Would you like to see a movie with me over the weekend?
2 Let's see a movie
3 What should we eat?
4 There's a festival in Asakusa on Saturday
5 There's a restaurant on the second floor, so won't you have a meal with me there?

VOCABULARY

hōmu	platform	**kitaguchi**	north exit
iriguchi	entrance	**minamiguchi**	south exit
nishiguchi	west exit		
higashiguchi	east exit		

EXERCISES

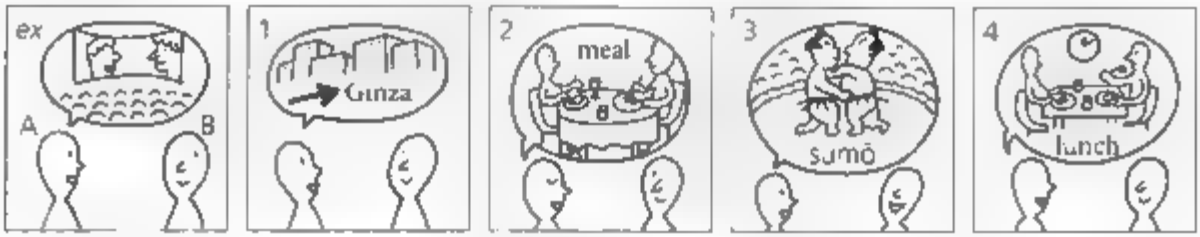
I ***Invite someone to do something.*** Make up sentences as in the example

ex **hiru-gohan o tabemasu → Hiru-gohan o tabemasen ka.**

1 kōhī o nomimasu →

2 gorufu o shimasu →

II Make up dialogues following the patterns of the examples and based on the information in the illustrations



A ***Invite someone to do something and accept one's invitation.***

ex. **A: Shūmatsu ni issho ni eiga o mimasen ka.**
B: Ee, mimashō.

1 A

B

2. A

B

3. A

B

4. A

B

B ***Invite someone to do something and refuse one's invitation.***

ex **A: Shūmatsu ni issho ni eiga o mimasen ka.**
B: Zannen desu ga, tsugō ga warui desu.

1 A

B

VOCABULARY

sumō	sumo wrestling
zannen desu ga, tsugō ga warui desu	I'm sorry, but it wouldn't be convenient (for me)

2 A

B

3 A.

B:

4. A.

B

II. Make up dialogues following the patterns of the examples. Substitute the underlined parts with the alternatives given, using the same grammatical forms as in the examples.

A. ***Decide what to do.***

ex. **A. Nani o tabemashō ka.**
B: Tempura o tabemasen ka.
A: Ee, sō shimashō.

1 A (nomimasu)

B (wain, nomimasu)

A.

2 A. (kaimasu)

B: (kabin, kaimasu)

A

B. ***Decide when to do something.***

ex. **A: Itsu aimashō ka.**
B: Ashita no 3-ji wa dō desu ka.
A: Ee, sō shimashō.

1 A (purezento o ka masu)

B (do-yōbi)

A.

2 A. (gorufu o shimasu)

B (raigetsu)

A.

C *Decide where to do something.*

ex. **A: Doko de aimashō ka.**
B. Eki no mae ni kōban ga arimasu kara, kōban no mae de aimasen ka.
A: Ee, sō shimashō.

1 A ..... (tabemasu)

B
(ABC biru ni resutoran ga takusan arimasu, ABC biru de tabemasu)

A

2 A. ..... (hanashi o shimasu)

B
(kono chikaku ni kōen ga arimasu, kōen de hanashi o shimasu)

A

IV Make up sentences following the patterns of the examples and based on the information in the illustrations.

A *State when and where an event will take place.*

ex. **Do-yōbi ni Asakusa de o-matsuri ga arimasu.**

1

2

3

CABULARY **hanashi o shimasu** talk

B *Invite someone to an event and accept one's invitation.*

ex **A: Do-yōbi ni Asakusa de o-matsuri ga arimasu. Issho ni ikimasen ka.**
B: Ii desu ne. Ikimashō.

1 A

B

2 A

B

3 A

B

V *Invite someone to an event and decide on a meeting place.* Make up dialogues following the pattern of the example. Substitute the underlined parts with the alternatives given.

ex **Sumisu: Asatte Odaiba de hanabi-taikai ga arimasu. Issho ni ikimasen ka.**
Nakamura: Ii desu ne. Ikimashō.
Sumisu: Doko de aimashō ka.
Nakamura: Shimbashi Eki no kitaguchi de aimasen ka.
Sumisu: Ee, sō shimashō.

1. Sumisu: ..... (taishikan, pātī)

Nakamura

Sumisu

Nakamura: ..... (Shinjuku Eki no nishiguchi)

Sumisu

2. Sumisu: ..... (Tōkyō Hōru, konsāto)

Nakamura

Sumisu:

Nakamura: ..... (Tōkyō Eki no minamiguchi)

Sumisu

VOCABULARY

Ii desu ne	that sounds good	**Shinjuku Eki**	Shinjuku Station
Shimbashi Eki	Shimbashi Station	**Shinjuku**	Shinjuku (district in Tokyo)
Shimbashi	Shimbashi (district in Tokyo)	**Tōkyō Hōru**	Tokyo Hall (fictitious building name)
		hōru	(concert) hall

VI ***Invite someone out to eat.*** Make up a dialogue based on the information in the illustrations

1 Suzuk

2 Chan

3 Suzuki

4. Chan

5. Suzuki

6. Suzuk

7. Chan

8. Suzuki

9. Suzuki. Ja, do-yōbi ni

10. Chan. Ja, mata.

VII. Listen to the CD and fill in the blanks based on the information you hear.

Sumisu-san wa [illegible] de [illegible] ni Nikkō ni kimasu.

SHORT DIALOGUES

Nakamura: Raishū Sumisu-san to tenisu o shimasu. Chan-san mo issho ni shimasen ka.
Chan: Arigatō gozaimasu. Zehi.

Nakamura: I'm going to be playing tennis with Mr. Smith next week. Won't you join us, Ms. Chan?
Chan: Thank you, I'd love to.

VOCABULARY

zehi by all means, certainly

II. **Takahashi: Sumisu-san, konshū no nichi-yōbi ni uchi de pāti o shimasu. Kimasen ka.**
Sumisu: Arigatō gozaimasu. Zehi.

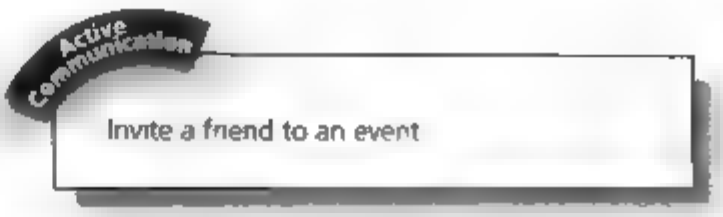
Takahashi: Mr. Smith, I'm having a party at my house this Sunday. Won't you come?
Smith: Thank you. I certainly will.

VOCABULARY

pāti o shimasu have a party

NOTES

1. **(Nichi-yōbi ni uchi ni) kimasen ka.**
When inviting someone to your own home, use the phrase **kimasen ka**. Appropriate replies are **ee/hai, arigatō gozaimasu** ("yes, thank you") or, to decline the offer, **zannen desu ga, tsugō ga warui desu** ("I'm sorry, I'm afraid it wouldn't be convenient [for me]").



PARTICIPATING IN A FESTIVAL

TARGET DIALOGUE

TRACK 60

Mr. Smith meets Mr. Suzuki, who is wearing a *happi* coat, and calls out to him.

かとう　あ、スミスさん、あそこに　すずきさんが　いますよ。

スミス：ほんとうですね。すずきさん。

すずき　あ、スミスさん。スミスさんも　いっしょに　おみこしを　かつぎませんか。

スミス：でも、はっぴが　ありません。

すずき：わたしのを　かしましょうか。

スミス：いいんですか。

すずき：ええ、わたしは　２まい　ありますから。

スミス：ありがとうございます。じゃ、おねがいします。

■スミスさんは　あさくさで　すずきさんに　あいました。いっしょに　おみこしを　かつぎます。

Katō: A, Sumisu-san, asoko ni Suzuki-san ga imasu yo.
Sumisu: Hontō desu ne. Suzuki-san.
Suzuki: A, Sumisu-san. Sumisu-san mo issho ni o-mikoshi o katsugimasen ka.
Sumisu: Demo, happi ga arimasen.
Suzuki: Watashi no o kashimashō ka.
Sumisu: Ii n desu ka.
Suzuki: Ee, watashi wa 2-mai arimasu kara.
Sumisu: Arigatō gozaimasu. Ja, onegaishimasu.

■ Sumisu-san wa Asakusa de Suzuki-san ni aimashita. Issho ni o-mikoshi o katsugimasu.

Kato: Oh, Mr. Smith, there's Mr. Suzuki over there.
Smith: You're right. Mr. Suzuki!
Suzuki: Oh, Mr. Smith. Would you like to carry the *o-mikoshi* with us?
Smith: But I don't have a *happi* coat.
Suzuki: Shall I lend you mine?
Smith: Is it all right with you?
Suzuki: Yes, I have two.
Smith: Thank you. I'll ask you to do that, then.

■ Mr. Smith has met Mr. Suzuki in Asakusa. They will carry the *o-mikoshi* together.

VOCABULARY

ほんとう	**honto**	true
おみこし	**o-mikoshi**	portable shrine (carried during festivals)
かつぎます	**katsugimasu**	carry (on one's shoulders)
でも	**demo**	but
はっぴ	**happi**	happi coat
わたしの	**watashi no**	mine
かしましょうか	**kashimashō ka**	shall I lend you?
かします	**kashimasu**	lend
いいんですか	**ii n desu ka**	is it all right? (expressing reserve)
あります	**arimasu**	have (see Note 1 below)

NOTES

1. **(Watashi wa) happi ga arimasen.**
   Arimasu can also be used in the sense of "have" or "own."

PRACTICE

WORD POWER

I. Verbs

1 **kashimasu**

2 **tsukemasu**

3 **keshimasu**

4. **mochimasu**

5. **akemasu**

6. **shimemasu**

7 **(shashin o) torimasu**

VOCABULARY

kashimasu	lend	**akemasu**	open
tsukemasu	turn on	**shimemasu**	close, shut
keshimasu	turn off	**(shashin o) torimasu**	take (a photograph)
mochimasu	carry, hold	**shashin**	photograph

II. Words that can be used with **arimasu** ("to have"):

1 **jikan**

2 **kuruma**

3 **yasumi**

4 **Nihon-go no jugyō**

KEY SENTENCES

1. **Chizu o kakimashō ka.**
2. **Sumisu-san wa eiga no kippu ga 2-mai arimasu.**

1 Shall I draw a map?
2 Mr. Smith has two movie tickets

EXERCISES

I *Offer to do something.* Make up sentences as in the example

ex. **shashin o torimasu → Shashin o torimashō ka.**

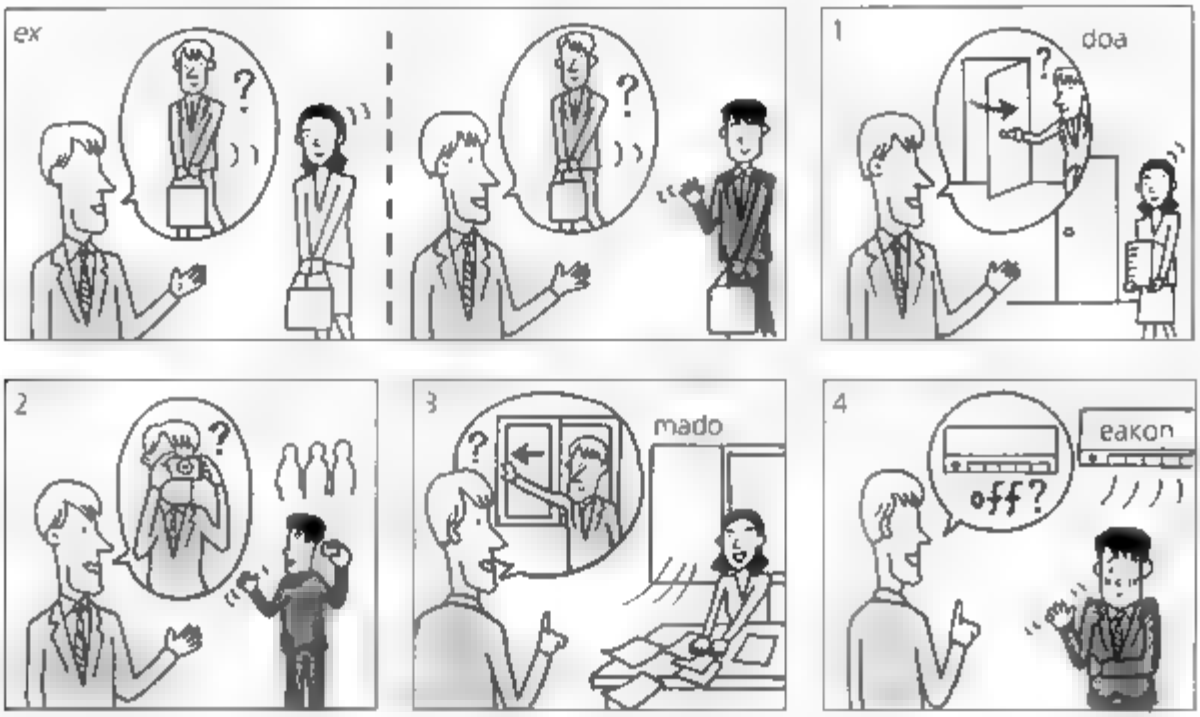
1. chizu o kakimasu →

2. kono hon o kashimasu →

VOCABULARY

jikan	time
jugyō	class
chizu	map

II. ***Offer to do something and accept or reject one's offer.*** Make up dialogues following the pattern of the example and based on the information in the illustrations



ex. **Sumisu:** **Nimotsu o mochimashô ka.**
Nakamura: **Ee, onegaishimasu.**
Suzuki: **Iie, kekkô desu**

1. Sumisu:

   Nakamura:

2. Sumisu:

   Suzuki:

3. Sumisu:

   Nakamura:

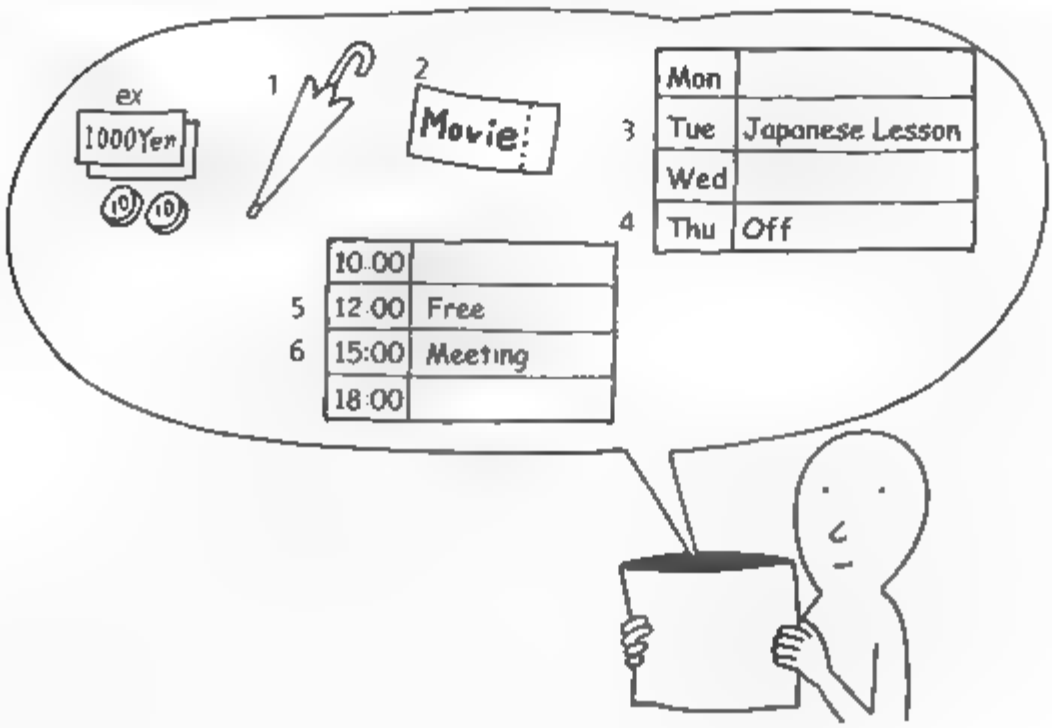
4. Sumisu:

   Suzuki:

VOCABULARY

nimotsu	luggage, baggage
doa	door
mado	window
eakon	air conditioner

II ***State what one has.*** Make up sentences following the pattern of the example. Substitute the underlined word with the words suggested by the illustration.



ex. **Watashi wa o-kane ga arimasu.**

1

2

3

4

5

6

IV Make up dialogues following the patterns of the examples. Substitute the underlined parts with the alternatives given, using the same grammatical forms as in the examples.

A. ***Offer to lend someone something, giving a reason for doing so, and accept one's offer.***

ex **A. (Watashi wa) kasa ga 2-hon arimasu kara, kashimashō ka.**
B: Hai, onegaishimasu.

1 A. ..... (pen, 2-hon)

B

2 A. ..... (happi, 2-mai)

B

VOCABULARY **o-kane** money

B. ***Invite someone to do something, giving a reason for doing so, and accept one's invitation.***

ex **A: (Watashi wa) kuruma ga arimasu kara, issho ni Nikkō ni ikimasen ka.**
B: Ee, zehi.

1 A: ..... (omoshiroi DVD, mimasu)

B

2 A: ..... (eiga no kippu, ikimasu)

B

V Make up dialogues following the patterns of the examples. Substitute the underlined parts with the alternatives given, using the same grammatical forms as in the examples.

A. ***Refuse an invitation by stating one's situation.***

ex **Suzuki: Eiga no kippu ga 2-mai arimasu. Chan-san, komban issho ni ikimasen ka.**
Chan: Sumimasen, komban jikan ga arimasen.
Suzuki: Sō desu ka. Ja, mata kondo.

1 Suzuki

Chan: ..... (kaigi ga arimasu)

Suzuki

2 Suzuki

Chan: ..... (Nihon-go no jugyō ga arimasu)

Suzuki

B. ***Invite someone to do something.***

Sumisu: Suzuki-san, raishū issho ni gorufu o shimasen ka.
Suzuki: Demo, kurabu ga arimasen.
Sumisu: Watashi no o kashimashō ka.
Suzuki: Arigatō gozaimasu. Onegaishimasu.

1 Sumisu: ..... (suki)

Suzuki: ..... (dōgu)

Sumisu

Suzuki

2 Sumisu: ..... (tenisu)

Suzuki: ..... (raketto)

Sumisu

Suzuki

VOCABULARY

komban	this evening	**raketto**	racket
mata kondo	next time		
kurabu	golf club		
dōgu	tool, equipment		

VI *Offer to help someone.* Make up a dialogue based on the information in the illustrations

1 Suzuki

2 Sumisu

3 Suzuki

4 Sumisu

VII Listen to the CD and answer the question based on the information you hear

TRACK 62

I At the festival site, Mr Smith accidentally steps on someone's foot

onna no hito: A, itai.
Sumisu: A, sumimasen. Daijōbu desu ka.
onna no hito: Ee, daijōbu desu.
Sumisu: Dōmo sumimasendeshita.

woman: Oh, ouch!
Smith: Oh, I'm sorry Are you all right?
woman: Yes, I'm fine
Smith: I'm really sorry

VOCABULARY

itai	painful, ouch!
daijōbu desu ka	are you all right?
sumimasendeshita	I'm sorry (for what I did a while ago)

II Mr Kato calls out to Mr Smith, who appears to be ill

Katō: Daijōbu desu ka.
Sumisu: Chotto kibun ga warui n desu.
Katō: Asoko ni benchi ga arimasu kara, chotto yasumimashō.
Sumisu: Hai.

Kato: Are you all right?
Smith: I'm feeling a bit out of sorts.
Kato: There's a bench over there, so let's take a little break
Smith All right

VOCABULARY

kibun ga warui n desu	I feel out of sorts, I don't feel well
benchi	bench
yasumimasu	rest, relax, take time off

Active Communication

You have two tickets for an event. Invite someone to that event

Quiz 3 (Units 6–7)

I Fill in the blank(s) in each sentence with the appropriate particle. Where a particle is not needed, write in an *X*.

1. Chan-san wa Takahashi-san ( ) hana o moraimashita.
2. Watashi wa tanjōbi ni haha ni sukāfu ( ) agemashita.
3. Do-yōbi ni Asakusa de o-matsuri ( ) arimasu.
4. Watashi wa kuruma ( ) arimasu.
5. Watashi wa eiga no kippu ( ) 2-mai ( ) arimasu.

II Complete each question by filling in the blank with the appropriate word.

1. Tōkyō Resutoran wa ( ) resutoran desu ka.
   Kireina resutoran desu.
2. Sumisu-san wa ( ) ni eiga no kippu o moraimashita ka.
   Tomodachi ni moraimashita.
3. Kinō no konsāto wa ( ) deshita ka.
   Totemo yokatta desu.
4. Nichi-yōbi ni ( ) de bāgen-sēru ga arimasu ka.
   Tōkyō Depāto de arimasu.

III Change the word in parentheses to the form that is appropriate in the context of the sentence.

1. Tōkyō Hoteru wa ( ) hoteru desu. (kirei desu)
2. Kore wa ( ) kēki desu. (oishii desu)
3. Ano resutoran wa amari ( ). (shizuka desu)
4. Kinō no pātī wa totemo ( ). (nigiyaka desu)
5. Kinō no eiga wa amari ( ). (omoshiroi desu)

IV Change the words in parentheses to the forms that are appropriate in the context of the dialogue.

1. A. Shūmatsu ni issho ni eiga o ( ). (mimasu)
   B. Ee, mimashō.
   A. Doko de ( ). (aimasu)
   B. Tōkyō Eki wa dō desu ka.
2. A. Eakon o ( ). (tsukemasu)
   B. Iie, kekkō desu.
   A. Dewa, mado o ( ). (akemasu)
   B. Hai, onegaishimasu.

UNIT

8

ON BUSINESS OUTSIDE TOKYO

Looking at Japan from a satellite, one would be surprised to see how mountainous the country is. In fact, about 73 percent of the land is mountain terrain. Another notable point is that because the country stretches more than 3,000 kilometers from northeast to southwest, its climate varies considerably according to latitude, and this in turn has given rise to differences in ways of life and a variety of local dialects. The city of Sapporo on the island of Hokkaido in northern Japan (see photo above) is both a tourist and a business destination. Other such cities include Osaka, Niigata, Nagoya, and Fukuoka. (See map on front end paper.)

UNIT 8 GRAMMAR

The -Te Form

■ Japanese verbs have several forms

Japanese verbs have several conjugated forms. All the verbs presented so far have been in, or derived from, the **-masu** form. Now we'll look at a new form, the **-te** form.

■ How to form the **-te** form

Japanese verbs are divided into three classes according to their conjugations: Regular I, Regular II and Irregular. The **-te** forms of Regular II and Irregular verbs always end with **-te**: the **-masu** comes off and **-te** is added to the stem. The **-te** forms of Regular I verbs vary, as shown in the following chart.

REGULAR I			REGULAR II		
buy	**kai-masu**	**katte**	eat	**tabe-masu**	**tabete**
wait	**machi-masu**	**matte**	open	**ake-masu**	**akete**
return, go home	**kaeri-masu**	**kaette**	see	**mi-masu**	**mite**
listen	**kiki-masu**	**kiite**	IRREGULAR		
write	**kaki-masu**	**kaite**	come	**ki-masu**	**kite**
read	**yomi-masu**	**yonde**	do	**shi-masu**	**shite**
drink	**nomi-masu**	**nonde**			
turn off	**keshi-masu**	**keshite**			

NOTE. A more detailed explanation of the grouping of Japanese verbs is given in Unit 9 Grammar, p. 178.

■ How the **-te** form is used

The **-te** form occurs in the middle of a sentence.

ex. **Gurei-san wa Sapporo-shisha ni itte, Satō-san ni aimasu.**
"Mr. Grey will go to the Sapporo branch office and meet Mr. Sato."

or is combined with **kudasai** to form a polite imperative.

ex. **Katarogu o okutte kudasai.** "Please send a catalog."

When one action is followed by another, the first clause is terminated by a verb in the **-te** form. In this type of sentence, the subject of the first and second clause must be the same. The **-te** form can be used to link up to three clauses, in which case the verbs of the first two end in the **-te** form. The **-te** form cannot be used if the moods and tenses of the clauses it combines are not the same. For example, the following two sentences cannot be connected using the **-te** form.

1. Statement. **Watashi wa kippu ga 2-mai arimasu.** "I have two tickets."
2. Suggestion. **Ashita issho ni eiga o mimasen ka.**
"What do you say to seeing a movie together tomorrow?"

Furthermore, if the first clause contains a motion verb like **ikimasu, kimasu**, or **kaerimasu**, the verb in the second clause must express an action that occurs in the location to which the subject went in the first clause. For example, **Kinō Ginza ni itte, hiru-gohan o tabemashita** ("Yesterday I went to Ginza and ate lunch [there]") is correct, but **Kinō Ginza ni itte, Shibuya de hiru-gohan o tabemashita** ("Yesterday I went to Ginza and ate lunch in Shibuya") is incorrect, since the act of eating took place in Shibuya, not Ginza.

TALKING ABOUT PLANS

TARGET DIALOGUE

TRACK 64

Ms. Chan is talking with Ms. Sasaki about her sudden business trip.

チャン：ささきさん、ちょっと　よろしいですか。

ささき：はい。

チャン　あした　ほっかいどうで　はんばいかいぎが　ありますから、
さっぽろに　いきます。

ささき：かいぎは　なんじからですか。

チャン　ごぜん　１０じから　ごご　３じまでです。かいぎの　あと
で　さっぽろししゃに　いって、さとうさんに　あいます。
あさって　はこだての　チョコレートこうじょうを　みて、
１じの　ひこうきで　とうきょうに　かえります。

ささき：わかりました。では、きを　つけて。

■チャンさんは　あした　さっぽろに　いきます。あさって　チョコレートこうじょうを　みて、とうきょうに　かえります。

Chan: Sasaki-san, chotto yoroshii desu ka.
Sasaki: Hai.
Chan: Ashita Hokkaidō de hambai-kaigi ga arimasu kara, Sapporo ni ikimasu.
Sasaki: Kaigi wa nan-ji kara desu ka.
Chan: Gozen 10-ji kara gogo 3-ji made desu. Kaigi no ato de Sapporo-shisha ni itte, Satō-san ni aimasu. Asatte Hakodate no chokorēto-kōjō o mite, 1-ji no hikōki de Tōkyō ni kaerimasu.
Sasaki: Wakarimashita. Dewa, ki o tsukete.

■ Chan-san wa ashita Sapporo ni ikimasu. Asatte chokorēto kōjō o mite, Tōkyō ni kaerimasu.

Chan: Ms. Sasaki, do you have a moment?
Sasaki: Yes, please (tell me what you want to talk about).
Chan: There's a sales meeting in Hokkaido tomorrow, so I'm going to Sapporo.
Sasaki: What time does the meeting start?
Chan: It's from 10:00 a.m. to 3:00 p.m. After the meeting, I'll go to the Sapporo branch office and meet Mr. Sato. The day after tomorrow, I'll see the chocolate factory in Hakodate and fly back to Tokyo on a 1:00 (p.m.) flight.
Sasaki: I see. Well then, take care.

■ Ms. Chan is going to Sapporo tomorrow. The day after tomorrow she will see a chocolate factory and return to Tokyo.

VOCABULARY

ちょっと　よろしいですか	**chotto yoroshii desu ka**	do you have a moment?
よろしい	**yoroshii**	good, all right (polite form of 良い, used in interrogative sentences)
ほっかいどう	**Hokkaidō**	Hokkaido (the northernmost of the main islands of Japan)
はんばい	**hambai**	sales, marketing
～の　あとで	**no ato de**	after
さとう	**Satō**	Sato (surname)
はこだて	**Hakodate**	Hakodate (city in southern Hokkaido)
こうじょう	**kōjō**	factory, manufacturing plant
きを　つけて	**ki o tsukete**	take care

NOTES

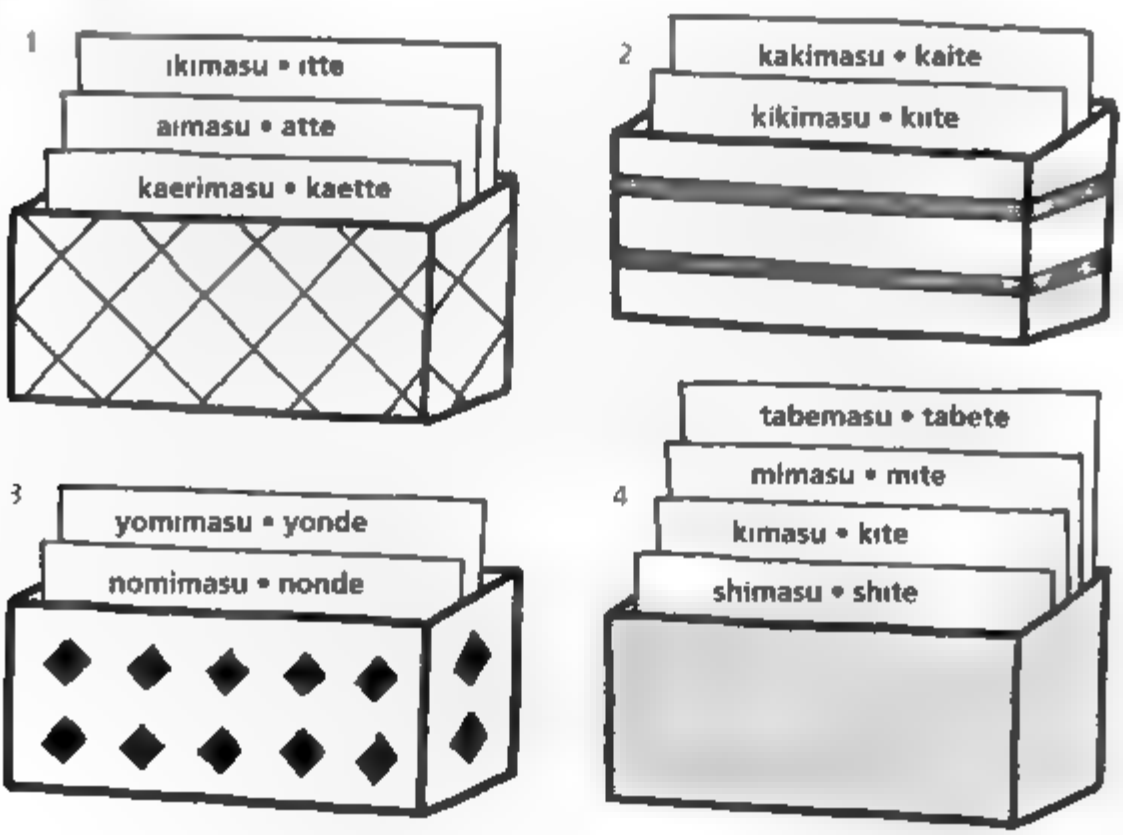
1. Chotto yoroshii desu ka.
This expression is used to get the attention of someone who's in the midst of something.

PRACTICE

WORD POWER

TRACK 65

The **-te** form



KEY SENTENCES

1. **Sumisu-san wa kinō hon-ya ni itte, jisho o kaimashita.**
2. **Sumisu-san wa kaigi no mae ni kopi o shimasu.**
3. **Sumisu-san wa kinō pāti no ato de takushi de uchi ni kaerimashita.**

1 Mr. Smith went to a bookstore yesterday and bought a dictionary.
2 Mr. Smith will make copies before the meeting.
3 Mr. Smith went home by taxi after yesterday's party.

EXERCISES

Practice conjugating verbs. Repeat the verbs below and memorize the **-te** forms.

	-MASU FORM	-TE FORM		-MASU FORM	-TE FORM
buy	**kaimasu**	**katte**	turn off	**keshimasu**	**keshite**
meet	**aimasu**	**atte**	eat	**tabemasu**	**tabete**
return, go home	**kaerimasu**	**kaette**	open	**akemasu**	**akete**
go	**ikimasu**	***itte**	close	**shimemasu**	**shimete**
write	**kakimasu**	**kaite**	turn on	**tsukemasu**	**tsukete**
listen (to), ask	**kikimasu**	**kite**	see	**mimasu**	**mite**
drink	**nomimasu**	**nonde**	come	**kimasu**	**kite**
read	**yomimasu**	**yonde**	do	**shimasu**	**shite**

*irregular inflection

Practice the -te form. Change the following verbs to their **-te** forms.

ex. **tabemasu → tabete**

1 kimasu →
2 nomimasu →
3 kakimasu →
4 aimasu →
5 kaerimasu →
6 yomimasu →
7 mimasu →
8 kikimasu →
9 shimasu →
10 ikimasu →

VOCABULARY **no mae ni** before

III ***Express a sequence of actions.*** Combine the sentences below as in the example

ex **Mēru o kakimasu. Okurimasu.**
→ **Mēru o kaite, okurimasu.**

1 Denki o tsukemasu. Doa o shimemasu

→

2 Denwa-bangō o kikimasu. Denwa o shimasu

→

3 Uchi de hon o yomimasu. Repōto o kakimasu

→

IV ***Ask and answer what one will do. In answering, express a sequence of actions.*** Make up dialogues following the pattern of the example. Substitute the underlined parts with the appropriate forms of the alternatives given.

ex **A: Ashita nani o shimasu ka.**
B: <u>Hon-ya ni itte</u>, <u>jisho o kaimasu</u>.

1. A.

B.
(Ginza de kaimono o shimasu, eiga o mimasu)

2 A.

B.
(resutoran de hiru-gohan o tabemasu, bijutsukan ni ikimasu)

V ***Express a sequence of actions.*** Combine the sentences below as in the example

ex **Uchi ni kimasen ka. Hiru-gohan o tabemasen ka.**
→ **Uchi ni kite, hiru-gohan o tabemasen ka.**

1 Sumisu-san ni aimashita. Issho ni tenisu o shimashita.

→

2 Doa o akemashō ka. Denki o tsukemashō ka.

→ _____

CABULARY

denki	(electric) light
repōto	report
bijutsukan	art museum

VI ***Ask and answer what one did. In answering, express a sequence of actions.*** Make up dialogues following the pattern of the example. Substitute the underlined parts with the appropriate forms of the alternatives given.

ex. **A: Kinō nani o shimashita ka.**
B: Depāto de kēki o katte, tomodachi no uchi ni ikimashita.

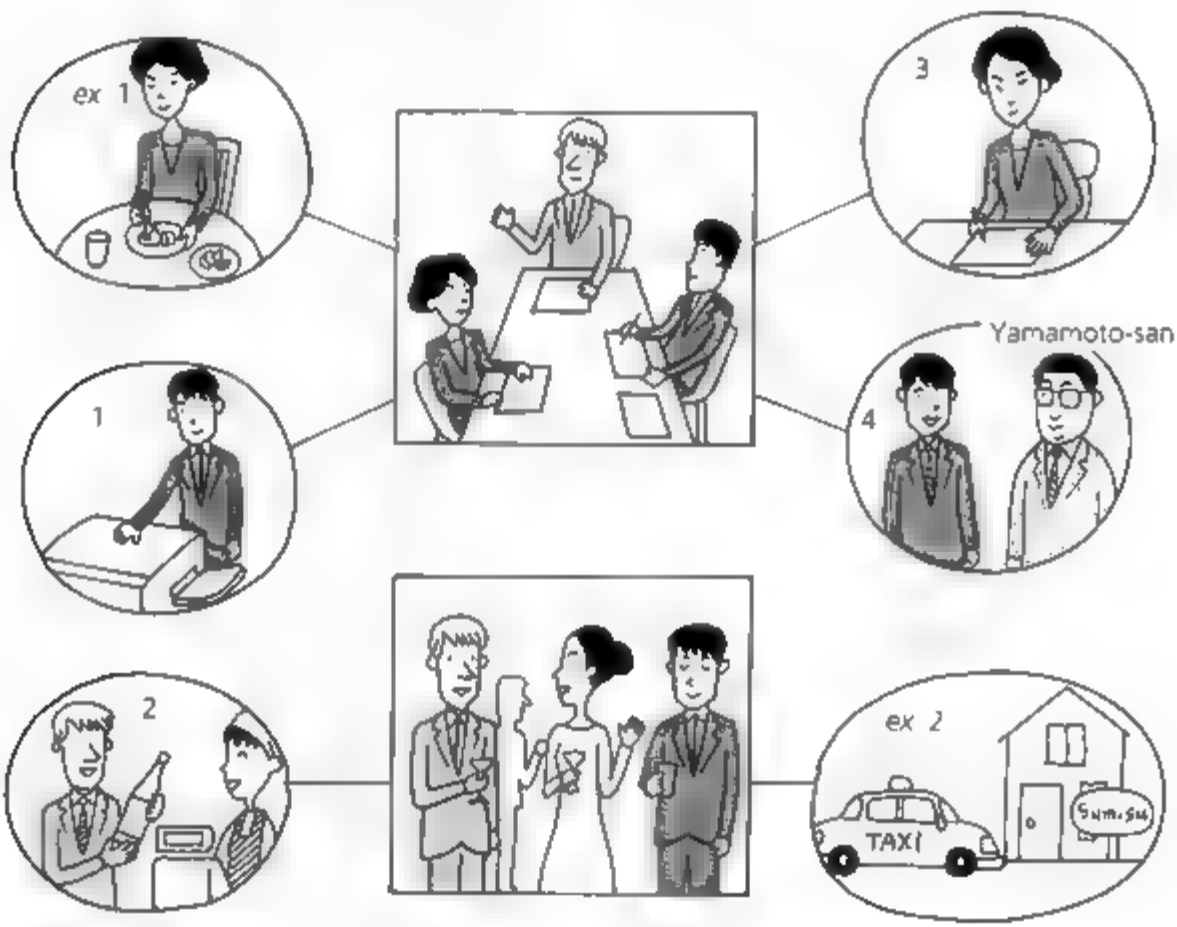
1 A: .....

B: ..... (Roppongi ni ikimasu, shokuji o shimasu)

2 A: .....

B: ..... (Tomodachi ni aimasu, issho ni sumō o mimasu)

VII ***State what someone will do before or after a given event.*** Make up sentences following the patterns of the examples. Use the information in the illustration as a guide and substitute the underlined parts in each example with the alternatives given.



ex. 1 **Gogo 7-ji kara kaigi ga arimasu. Kaigi no mae ni shokuji o shimasu.**

1 ..... (kaigi, kopī o shimasu)

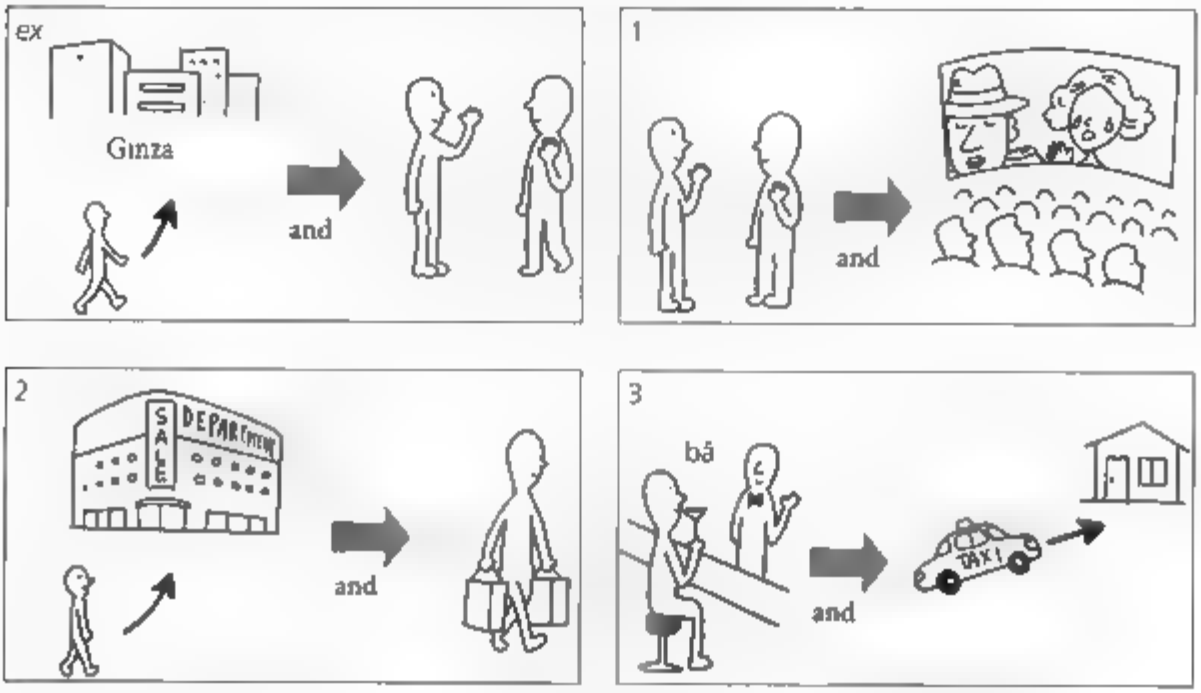
2 ..... (pātī, wain o kaimasu)

ex. 2 **Gogo 7-ji kara pāti ga arimasu. Pāti no ato de takushī de uchi ni kaerimasu.**

3 ..... (kaigi, repōto o kakimasu)

4 ..... (kaigi, Yamamoto-san ni aimasu,

V.I. ***Ask and answer what one did after work. In answering, express a sequence of actions*** Make up dialogues following the pattern of the example and based on the information in the illustrations



ex **A: Kinō shigoto no ato de nani o shimashita ka.**
B: Ginza ni itte, tomodachi ni aimashita.

1 A.

B.

2 A.

B.

3 A.

B.

IX ***Describe a schedule.*** Look at the schedule of Mr. Smith's business trip and make up sentences following the pattern of the example.

ex.	Thursday	Osaka	Meeting	→ Call Mr. Green
1.	Friday	Kobe	Golf	→ Go to a friend's house
2.	Saturday	Kyoto	Have a meal with Mr. Yamamoto	→ See old temples and gardens

ex. **Sumisu-san wa moku-yôbi ni Ôsaka ni itte, kaigi o shimasu. Kaigi no ato de Gurin-san ni denwa o shimasu.**

1.

2.

X ***Talk about a plan.*** Make up dialogues on the pattern of the example. Substitute the underlined parts with the alternatives given.

ex. **Sasaki: Chan-san, kaigi no ato de doko ni ikimasu ka.**
Chan: Hakodate ni itte, chokorêto-kôjô o mimasu.
Sasaki: Sô desu ka.

1. Sasaki:

   Chan: ..... **(Otaru, sushi o tabemasu)**

   Sasaki:

2. Sasaki:

   Chan: (depâto, Hokkaidô no o-miyage o kaimasu)

   Sasaki:

XI Listen to the CD and choose the correct answer to the question asked.

TRACK 66

a)

b)

c)

VOCABULARY

Kôbe	Kobe (city near Osaka)
kaigi o shimasu	hold a meeting
Otaru	Otaru (city in Hokkaido)

I Mrs. Green is planning a party. She calls up Mrs. Matsui to invite her.

Gurin: Nihon-jin no tomodachi ni Kyōto no yūmeina o-sake o moraimashita. Nichi-yōbi ni tomodachi o yonde, pāti o shimasu. Matsui-san mo kimasen ka.
Matsui: Arigatō gozaimasu. Zehi.

Green: I've received some famous sake from Kyoto from a Japanese friend. On Sunday I'm getting some friends together to have a party. Won't you come, Mrs. Matsui?
Matsui: Thank you. I'll be there.

yonde (-te form of **yobimasu**)
yobimasu call, invite

II Ms. Nakamura asks Ms. Chan if she plans to attend Mrs. Green's party.

Nakamura: Ashita no pāti ni ikimasu ka.
Chan: Iie, ikimasen.
Nakamura: Dōshite desu ka.
Chan: Honkon kara haha ga kimasu kara.

Nakamura: Will you go to the party tomorrow?
Chan: No, I will not.
Nakamura: Why (not)?
Chan: Because my mother is visiting (*lit.*, "will come") from Hong Kong.

VOCABULARY

dōshite why

Active Communication

Tell someone what you did yesterday. Then talk about your plans for the coming weekend.

MAKING A REQUEST

TARGET DIALOGUE

TRACK 68

Ms. Chan has come to Sapporo to attend a sales meeting

チャン：もしもし、チャンですが、おはようございます。

すずき　あ　チャンさん、おはようございます。すずきです。

チャン　いま　さっぽろに　います。すみませんが、メールで　あたらしい　しょうひんの　カタログを　すぐ　おくってください。かいぎで　つかいますから。

すずき：はい、わかりました。

チャン　それから、サンプルの　しゃしんも　おくってください。

すずき：はい、すぐ　おくります。

チャン：じゃ、おねがいします。

■ チャンさんは　さっぽろから　ほんしゃの　すずきさんに　でんわを　しました。すずきさんは　チャンさんに　メールで　あたらしい　しょうひんの　カタログと　サンプルの　しゃしんを　おくります。

Chan: Moshimoshi, Chan desu ga, ohayō gozaimasu.
Suzuki: A, Chan-san, ohayō gozaimasu. Suzuki desu.
Chan: Ima Sapporo ni imasu. Sumimasen ga, mēru de atarashii shōhin no katarogu o sugu okutte kudasai. Kaigi de tsukaimasu kara.
Suzuki: Hai, wakarimashita.
Chan: Sorekara, sampuru no shashin mo okutte kudasai.
Suzuki: Hai, sugu okurimasu.
Chan: Ja, onegaishimasu.

■ **Chan-san wa Sapporo kara honsha no Suzuki-san ni denwa o shimashita. Suzuki-san wa Chan-san ni mēru de atarashii shōhin no katarogu to sampuru no shashin o okurimasu.**

Chan: Hello, this is Chan. Good morning.
Suzuki: Oh, Ms. Chan. Good morning. This is Suzuki.
Chan: I'm in Sapporo. I'm sorry to bother you, but could you please send me the new product catalog by e-mail right away, because I'm going to use it during the meeting.
Suzuki: Yes, all right.
Chan: Also, please send photographs of the samples.
Suzuki: Yes, I'll send them right away.
Chan: Thank you. Bye now.

■ Ms. Chan made a phone call from Sapporo to Mr. Suzuki at the main office. Mr. Suzuki sends Ms. Chan the new product catalog and sample photographs by e-mail.

VOCABULARY

が	**ga**	(particle; see Note 1 below)
しょうひん	**shōhin**	product, merchandise
カタログ	**katarogu**	catalog
すぐ	**sugu**	soon, right away
おくって　ください	**okutte kudasai**	please send
つかいます	**tsukaimasu**	use
それから	**sorekara**	also, in addition
サンプル	**sampuru**	sample
ほんしゃ	**honsha**	main/central/head office

NOTES

1. Chan desu ga . . .

This **ga** is a conjunction that joins two clauses. It expresses a kind of courteous hesitation and indicates that the phrase before it is merely a preliminary to the principal matter.

2. Mēru de

This **de** indicates a means of telecommunication or post.

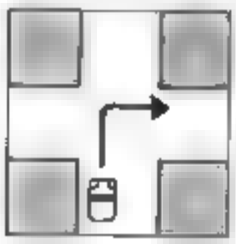
ex. **Mēru de shiryō o okurimasu.** "I'll send the materials by e-mail."
Takuhaibin de nimotsu o okurimasu. "I'll send the luggage by courier."

PRACTICE

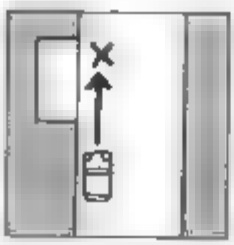
WORD POWER

TRACK 69

I. Verbs



1 **magarimasu**



2 **tomemasu**

3 **iimasu**

4 **oshiemasu**

VOCABULARY

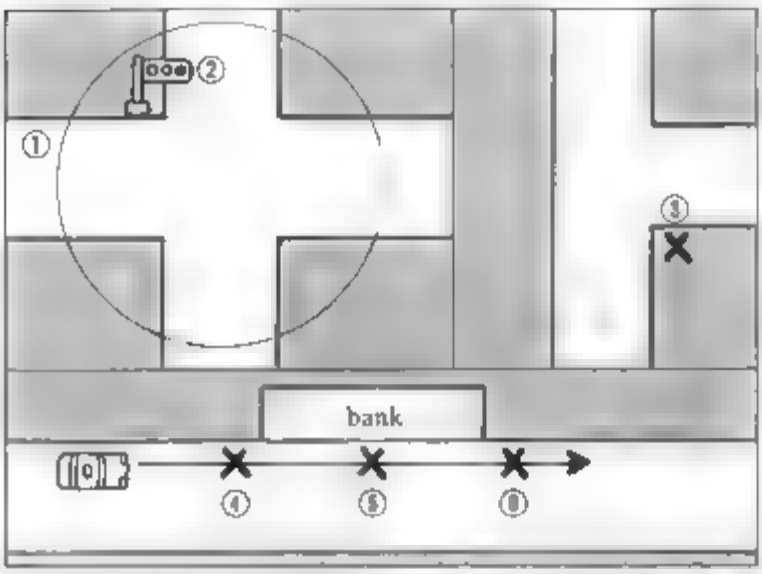
magarimasu	turn
tomemasu	stop, park
iimasu	say
oshiemasu	teach, show, tell

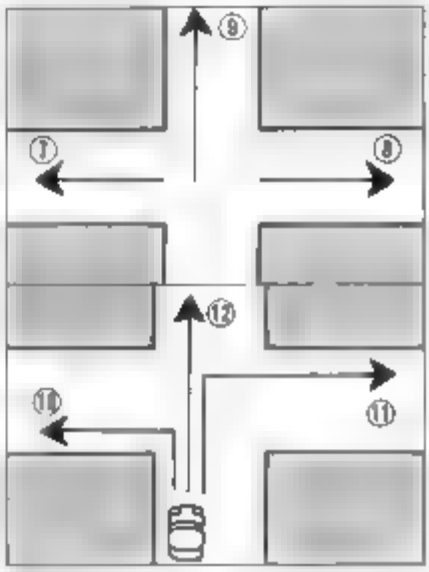
5 **mottekimasu**

6 **todokemasu**

7 **machimasu**

Positions and directions





1 **kōsaten**
2 **shingō**
3 **kado**
4 **ginkō no temae**
5 **ginkō no mae**
6 **ginkō no saki**
7 **hidari**
8 **migi**
9 **massugu**
10 **kōsaten o hidari ni magarimasu**
11 **kōsaten o migi ni magarimasu**
12 **massugu ikimasu**

III Means of communication or delivery

1 **fakkusu**

2 **kōkūbin**

3 **funabin**

4 **takuhaibin**

VOCABULARY

mottekimasu	bring	**kado**	corner	**migi**	right	**kōkūbin**	airmail
todokemasu	deliver	**temae**	just before	**massugu**	straight ahead	**funabin**	surface mail
machimasu	wait	**mae**	before	**o**	(particle indicating a point of passage)	**takuhaibin**	courier service
kōsaten	intersection	**saki**	ahead				
shingō	traffic signal	**hidari**	left	**fakkusu**	fax		

KEY SENTENCES

1. **Mō ichi-do itte kudasai.**
2. **Kono nimotsu o takuhaibin de okutte kudasai.**
3. **Tsugi no shingō o migi ni magatte kudasai.**

1 Please say it again.
2 Please send this luggage by courier.
3 Turn right at the next traffic signal.

EXERCISES

Practice conjugating verbs. Repeat the verbs below and memorize their **-masu** and **-te** forms.

	-MASU FORM	-TE FORM
say	**iimasu**	**itte**
wait	**machimasu**	**matte**
turn	**magarimasu**	**magatte**
take	**torimasu**	**totte**
lend	**kashimasu**	**kashite**
show	**misemasu**	**misete**
stop	**tomemasu**	**tomete**
tell	**oshiemasu**	**oshiete**
deliver	**todokemasu**	**todokete**
bring	**mottekimasu**	**mottekite**

I ***Make a request.*** Make up sentences as in the example.

ex. **namae o kakimasu → Namae o kaite kudasai.**

1 chotto machimasu →

2 shashin o torimasu →

3 mō ichi-do iimasu →

4 pen o kashimasu →

5. piza o todokemasu →

VOCABULARY

tsugi	next
misemasu	show
piza	pizza

II. Make up dialogues following the patterns of the examples. Substitute the underlined parts with the alternatives given, changing their forms as necessary

A. ***Make and accept a request.***

ex. **A: Sumimasen. Ano resutoran no namae o oshiete kudasai.**
B: Hai.

1. A. ..... (mēru-adoresu, kakimasu)

   B

2. A. ..... (menyū, misemasu)

   B

3. A. ..... (kaigi no shiryō, mottek masu)

   B

B. ***Make and accept a request to send something by a certain means.***

ex. **A: Sumisu-san ni mēru de shiryō o okutte kudasai.**
B: Hai, wakarimashita.

1. A.
   (Nozomi Depāto, fakkusu, shiryō)

   B

2. A.
   (Rondon-shisha no Jonson-san, kōkūbin, katarogu)

   B

3. A.
   (Yokohama-shisha no hito, yūbin, kono nimotsu)

   B

IV. ***Give directions to a taxi driver.*** Make up sentences following the patterns of the examples. Substitute the underlined parts with the alternatives given

A. ex. **Tsugi no shingō o migi ni magatte kudasai.**

1. ..... (tsugi no kōsaten, hidari)

2. ..... (futatsu-me no kado, migi)

B. ex. **Ginkō no mae de tomete kudasai.**

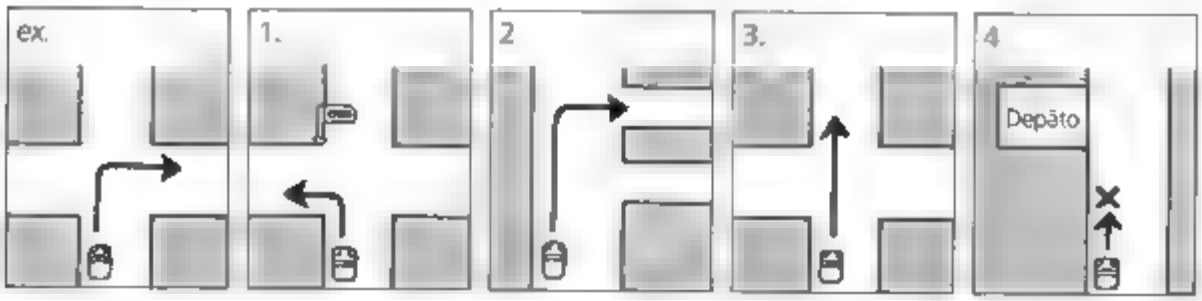
1. ..... (byōin no temae)

2. ..... (yubinkyoku no saki)

VOCABULARY

menyū	menu	**futatsu-me**	second
shiryō	data, information, material, documents, literature	**-me**	(suffix that attaches to a number and turns it into an ordinal number)
yūbin	mail, post		

V *Give directions to a taxi driver.* Tell the driver to follow the route indicated by the arrows and to stop at the point indicated by the *X*.



ex. **Tsugi no kōsaten o migi ni magatte kudasai.**

1

2

3

4.

VI Make up dialogues following the patterns of the examples. Substitute the underlined parts with the alternatives given.

A. ***Request that a purchase be delivered.***

ex **Sumisu:** **Sumimasen. Uchi ni kono terebi o todokete kudasai.**
mise no hito: **Hai.**
Sumisu: **Ashita no gogo todokete kudasai.**
mise no hito: **Hai, wakarimashita. Dewa, o-namae to go-jūsho o onegaishimasu.**

1 Sumisu: ..... (pasokon)

mise no hito

Sumisu: ..... (kin-yōbi no 2-ji made ni)

mise no hito:

2 Sumisu: ..... (sofā)

mise no hito

Sumisu (nichi-yōbi ni)

mise no hito.

VOCABULARY

go-jūsho (another person's) address
made ni by (the time)

B *Give directions to a taxi driver*

ex **Chan:** **Tōkyō Tawā no chikaku made onegaishimasu.**
untenshu: **Hai**
Chan: (*after a while*) **Tsugi no shingō o hidari ni magatte kudasai.**
untenshu. **Hai.**
Chan: **Ano shiroi biru no mae de tomete kudasai.**
untenshu: **Hai, wakarimashita.**
untenshu. (*after a while*) **4,000-en desu.**
Chan: **Hai.**
untenshu **Arigatō gozaimashita.**
Chan: **Dōmo.**

1 Chan ..... (Roppongi Kōsaten)

untenshu

Chan: ..... (migi)

untenshu

Chan. ..... (kombini no temae)

untenshu.

untenshu.

Chan

untenshu

Chan

2 Chan: ..... (Shibuya Eki)

untenshu.

Chan: ..... (hidari)

untenshu

Chan: ..... (manshon no mae)

untenshu

untenshu

Chan

untenshu:

Chan

VOCABULARY

Tōkyō Tawā	Tokyo Tower	**Roppongi Kōsaten**	Roppongi Crossing
made	to, as far as (particle)	**Shibuya Eki**	Shibuya Station
shiroi	white	**manshon**	apartment (in a high-rise building), condominium
dōmo	thanks (colloquial shortening of **dōmo arigatō**)		

VII. Listen to the CD and fill in the blanks based on the information you hear

Chan-san wa ..... ni ..... de kaigi no shiryō o okurimasu

SHORT DIALOGUES

I. Ms. Chan phones room service because her room is cold.

hoteru no hito: Hai, rūmu-sābisu desu.
Chan: Sumimasen, 201 no Chan desu ga, mōfu o mottekite kudasai
hoteru no hito: Hai, wakarimashita.

hotel employee: Yes, this is room service
Chan: This is Ms. Chan in room 201. Please bring me a blanket
hotel employee: Yes, will do

VOCABULARY

rūmu-sābisu	room service
mōfu	blanket

II. Ms. Chan is checking out of the hotel

Chan: Sumimasen.
furonto no hito: Hai, nan deshō ka.
Chan: Kono nimotsu o 5-ji made azukatte kudasai.
furonto no hito: Hai, wakarimashita.

Chan: Excuse me
front desk clerk: Yes, how may I help you?
Chan: Please take care of this luggage for me till 5:00 (p.m.)
front desk clerk: Yes, will do

VOCABULARY

nan deshō ka	how may I help you? (softer way of saying **nan desu ka**)
azukatte kudasai	please take care of
azukarimasu	take care of, be in charge of

Active Communication

If you're in Japan, try giving a taxi driver instructions in Japanese. Or, alternatively, next time you purchase a large item, ask to have it delivered to your home.

UNIT 9

SEEING A MUSEUM

From Western art to ukiyoe, and from cutting-edge technology to ghosts and goblins, Japan is abundant in museums of all sorts. Among the many museums in the Tokyo area are the Edo-Tokyo Museum, which showcases architecture and culture from an older Japan, the Ghibli Museum, which was designed and is under the supervision of the anime genius Hayao Miyazaki, and the National Museum of Emerging Science and Innovation, where visitors can play with robots or take a ride in a spaceship module. Pictured here is the Tokyo National Museum, which houses paintings, sculptures, and other pieces from all regions of Asia.

UNIT 9 GRAMMAR

The -Nai Form

■ Classifications of Japanese verbs

As discussed briefly in Unit 8 Grammar (p. 160), Japanese verbs are divided into three classes based on their conjugations: Regular I, Regular II, and Irregular. The stems of Regular I verbs (the part just before the **-masu** ending) end with **-i**, and they change as the verbs are conjugated. The stems of Regular II verbs, on the other hand, end with either **-e** or **-i** but remain the same even as the verbs are conjugated. There are only two Irregular verbs: **shimasu** and **kimasu**. For more on verb conjugation, see Appendix E, pp. 244–46.

■ How to form the **-nai** form

For Regular I verbs, the sound before **-masu** changes as shown in the chart below, and **-nai** is added to obtain the **-nai** form. For Regular II verbs, the rule is simpler: **-masu** comes off and **-nai** is added. The Irregular verbs have irregular conjugations.

REGULAR I					
buy	**kai-masu**	**kawa-nai**	write	**kaki-masu**	**kaka-nai**
return, go home	**kaeri-masu**	**kaera-nai**	go	**iki-masu**	**ika-nai**
wait	**machi-masu**	**mata-nai**	read	**yomi-masu**	**yoma-nai**
play	**asobi-masu**	**asoba-nai**	turn off	**keshi-masu**	**kesa-nai**
REGULAR II					
eat	**tabe-masu**	**tabe-nai**	see	**mi-masu**	**mi-nai**
show	**mise-masu**	**mise-nai**	be	**i-masu**	**i-nai**
IRREGULAR					
come	**ki-masu**	**ko-nai**	do	**shi-masu**	**shi-nai**

■ How the **-nai** form is used

ex. **Koko ni kuruma o tomenaide kudasai.** "Please do not park your car here."

A negative verb used in mid-sentence usually takes the **-nai** form rather than the **-masen** form it has at the end of a sentence. For now, however, just remember the following use of the **-nai** form: verb-**naide kudasai** ("please do not ___").

GOING TO AN ART MUSEUM

TARGET DIALOGUE

TRACK 77

Ms. Nakamura recently heard that the Sakura Art Museum is open till 8 p.m. on Fridays

なかむら　チャンさん、あした　しごとの　あとで　さくらびじゅつかんに　いきませんか。

チャン：いいですね。いきましょう。

なかむら：なんじに　かいしゃを　でましょうか。

チャン　ここから　さくらびじゅつかんまで　どのぐらい　かかりますか。

なかむら：４０ぷんぐらい　かかります。

チャン：じゃ、６じに　かいしゃを　でませんか。

なかむら：ええ。じゃ、あした　６じに。

■なかむらさんと　チャンさんは　あした　しごとの　あとで　さくらびじゅつかんに　いきます。６じに　かいしゃを　でます。かいしゃから　さくらびじゅつかんまで　40ぷんぐらい　かかります。

Nakamura: Chan-san, ashita shigoto no ato de Sakura Bijutsukan ni ikimasen ka.
Chan: Ii desu ne. Ikimashō.
Nakamura: Nan-ji ni kaisha o demashō ka.
Chan: Koko kara Sakura Bijutsukan made donogurai kakarimasu ka.
Nakamura: 40-pun gurai kakarimasu.
Chan: Ja, 6-ji ni kaisha o demasen ka.
Nakamura: Ee. Ja, ashita 6-ji ni.

■ Nakamura-san to Chan-san wa ashita shigoto no ato de Sakura Bijutsukan ni ikimasu. 6-ji ni kaisha o demasu. Kaisha kara Sakura Bijutsukan made 40-pun gurai kakarimasu.

Nakamura: Ms. Chan, how about going to the Sakura Art Museum tomorrow after work?
Chan: That would be nice. Let's go.
Nakamura: At what time should we leave the office?
Chan: How long does it take to get from here to the Sakura Art Museum?
Nakamura: It takes about forty minutes.
Chan: Well, how about leaving the office at 6:00?
Nakamura: OK. Tomorrow at 6:00, then.

■ Ms. Nakamura and Ms. Chan are going to the Sakura Art Museum tomorrow after work. They will leave the office at 6:00. It takes about forty minutes to get from the company to the Sakura Art Museum.

VOCABULARY

さくらびじゅつかん	**Sakura Bijutsukan**	Sakura Art Museum (fictitious museum name)
を	**o**	(particle, see Note 1 below)
でましょうか	**demashō ka**	shall we leave?
でます	**demasu**	leave
どのぐらい	**donogurai**	how long
かかります	**kakarimasu**	take (time)

NOTES

1. **Nan-ji ni kaisha o demashō ka**
   The particle **o** here indicates a point of departure
   ex **6-ji ni kaisha o demasu.** "I'll leave the office at 6:00."
   Shinjuku Eki de densha o orimasu. "I'll get off the train at Shinjuku Station."
   The particle **ni**, on the other hand, indicates a point of arrival or a location toward which an action such as going, coming, entering, or boarding is directed
   ex **7-ji ni bijutsukan ni tsukimasu.** "I'll arrive at the art museum at 7:00."
   Tōkyō Eki de densha ni norimasu. "I'll board the train at Tokyo Station."

PRACTICE

WORD POWER

I. Verbs

1 **norimasu**

2 **orimasu**

3 **demasu**

4 **tsukimasu**

5 **kakarimasu**

VOCABULARY

norimasu	get on (a vehicle), take	**kakarimasu**	take (time)
orimasu	get off (a vehicle)		
demasu	go out, leave		
tsukimasu	arrive		

II. Periods

	MINUTES		HOURS	DAYS
5	**go-fun (kan)**	1	**ichi-jikan**	**ichi-nichi**
10	**juppun (kan)**	2	**ni-jikan**	**futsuka (kan)**
15	**jūgo-fun (kan)**	3	**san-jikan**	**mikka (kan)**
20	**nijuppun (kan)**	4	**yo-jikan**	**yokka (kan)**
25	**nijugo-fun (kan)**	5	**go-jikan**	**itsuka (kan)**
30	**sanjuppun (kan)**	6	**roku-jikan**	**muika (kan)**

NOTE **san-jikan han**, three and a half hours (see also Appendix J, pp. 249–50)

	WEEKS	MONTHS	YEARS
1	**isshūkan**	**ikkagetsu (kan)**	**ichi-nen (kan)**
2	**ni-shūkan**	**ni-kagetsu (kan)**	**ni-nen (kan)**
3	**san-shukan**	**san-kagetsu (kan)**	**san-nen (kan)**
4	**yon-shūkan**	**yon-kagetsu (kan)**	**yo-nen (kan)**
5	**go-shūkan**	**go-kagetsu (kan)**	**go-nen (kan)**
6	**roku-shūkan**	**rokkagetsu (kan)**	**roku-nen (kan)**

NOTE: **ichi-nen han**, one and a half years (see also Appendix J, pp. 249–50)

KEY SENTENCES

1. **Sumisu-san wa Tōkyō Eki de densha ni norimasu.**
2. **Sumisu-san wa Shinjuku Eki de densha o orimasu.**
3. **Hikōki wa 9-ji ni Tōkyō o dete, 10-ji han ni Sapporo ni tsukimasu.**
4. **Tōkyō kara Nikkō made densha de 1-jikan han kakarimasu.**

1 Mr. Smith will get on the train at Tokyo Station.
2 Mr. Smith will get off the train at Shinjuku Station.
3 The plane leaves Tokyo at 9:00 and arrives in Sapporo at 10:30.
4 It takes an hour and a half to go by train from Tokyo to Nikko.

EXERCISES

I *Practice conjugating verbs.* Repeat the verbs below and memorize their **-te** forms.

	-MASU FORM	-TE FORM
get on, take	**norimasu**	**notte**
get off	**orimasu**	**orite**
go out, leave	**demasu**	**dete**
arrive	**tsukimasu**	**tsuite**
take (time)	**kakarimasu**	**kakatte**
walk	**arukimasu**	**aruite**

— VOCABULARY

-fun/-pun (kan)	minute(s)	**-kagetsu**	month(s) (counter)
-jikan	hour(s)	**-nen (kan)**	year(s)
-ka/-nichi (kan)	day(s) (counter)	**arukimasu**	walk
-shūkan	week(s)		

Make up dialogues following the patterns of the examples. Substitute the underlined parts with the alternatives given.

A *State where someone will get on and off a means of public transportation.*

ex. **Sumisu-san wa Tōkyō Eki de densha ni norimasu. Shinjuku Eki de densha o orimasu.**

1 ..... (chikatetsu)

2 ..... (takushī)

3 ..... (basu)

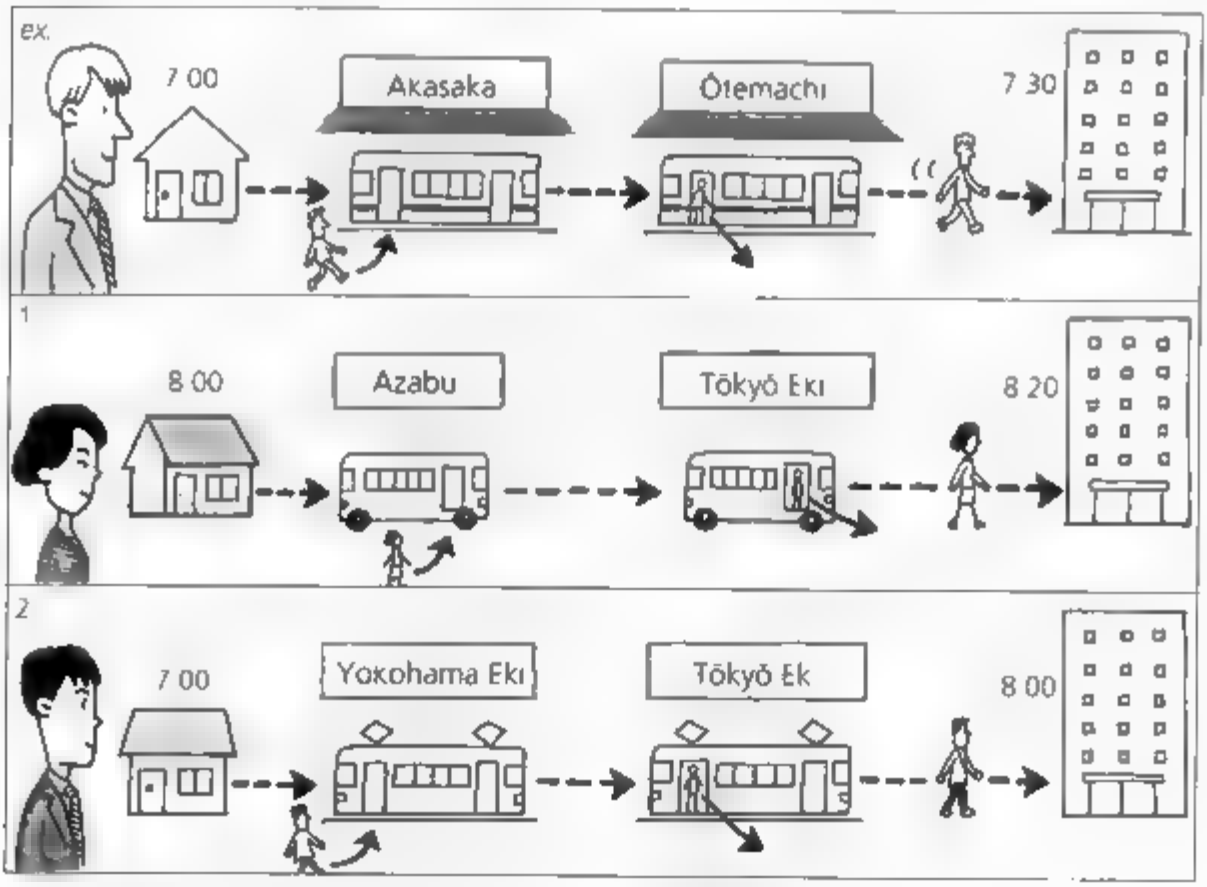
B *State a person's departure and arrival time.*

ex. **Takahashi-san wa 7-ji ni uchi o demashita. 8-ji ni kaisha ni tsukimashita.**

1 ..... (10-ji ni hoteru, 11-ji ni kūkō)

2 ..... (asa Tōkyō, 1-ji goro Kyōto)

III Make up dialogues following the patterns of the examples. Substitute the underlined words with the words suggested by the illustrations.



VOCABULARY

dōyatte	how, in what way
Akasaka	Akasaka (district in Tokyo)
Ōtemachi	Otemachi (district in Tokyo)
Azabu	Azabu (district in Tokyo)

A *Ask and give the route by which one commutes to work.*

ex. **Takahashi: Sumisu-san wa dōyatte kaisha ni ikimasu ka.**
Sumisu: Akasaka de chikatetsu ni notte, Ōtemachi de orimasu. Ōtemachi kara kaisha made arukimasu.

1. Takahashi Chan-san wa

   Chan

2. Takahashi Suzuki-san wa

   Suzuki

B *Ask and answer what time one leaves home every day and what time one arrives at the office.*

ex. **Takahashi: Mainichi nan-ji ni uchi o demasu ka.**
Sumisu: 7-ji ni demasu.
Takahashi: Nan-ji ni kaisha ni tsukimasu ka.
Sumisu: 7-ji han ni tsukimasu.

1 Takahashi

   Chan

   Takahashi

   Chan

2 Takahashi

   Suzuki

   Takahashi

   Suzuki

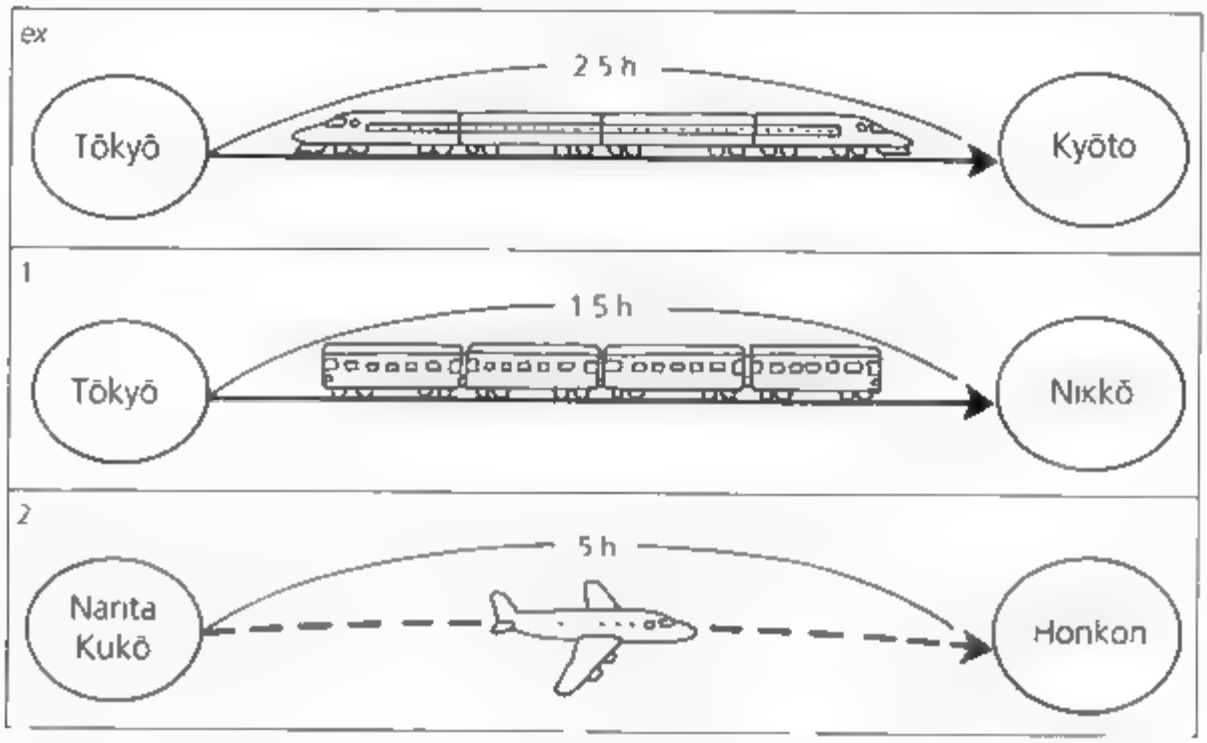
IV *State how long one's commute to work is.* Make up sentences following the pattern of the example. Substitute the underlined words with the alternatives given.

ex. **Uchi kara kaisha made chikatetsu de 40-pun kakarimasu.**

1 _____ (densha, 1-jikan)

2 _____ (basu, 45-fun)

V ***Ask and answer how long it takes to get somewhere.*** Make up dialogues following the pattern of the example. Substitute the underlined words with the words suggested by the illustrations.



ex **Sumisu: Tōkyō kara Kyōto made donogurai kakarimasu ka.**
Nakamura: Shinkansen de 2-jikan han kakarimasu.

1. Sumisu

   Nakamura

2. Nakamura

   Chan

VI ***Ask and answer how long one stayed in a certain place.*** Make up dialogues following the pattern of the example. Substitute the underlined words with the alternatives given.

ex **Sumisu: Takahashi-san wa donogurai Nyūyōku ni imashita ka.**
Takahashi: 4-ka imashita.

1 Sumisu: _____ (Honkon)

Takahashi: _____ (2-shūkan)

2 Sumisu: _____ (Sapporo)

Takahashi: _____ (5-kagetsu)

3 Sumisu: _____ (Sanfuranshisuko)

Takahashi: _____ (3-nen)

VOCABULARY

Narita Kūkō	Narita Airport
imasu	be, stay
Nyūyōku	New York
Sanfuranshisuko	San Francisco

VII Make up dialogues following the patterns of the examples. Substitute the underlined words with the alternatives given.

A. *Talk about a summer vacation plan.*

ex. **Suzuki: Natsu-yasumi ni doko ni ikimasu ka.**
Nakamura: Pari ni itte, bijutsukan o mimasu.
Suzuki: Sō desu ka. Donogurai Pari ni imasu ka.
Nakamura: 1-shūkan imasu.
Suzuki: Ii desu ne.

1 Suzuki

Nakamura: ..... (Nyūyōku, myūjikaru)

Suzuki: ..... (Nyūyōku)

Nakamura: ..... (6-ka)

Suzuki

2 Suzuki

Nakamura: ..... (Kyōto, o-tera)

Suzuki: ..... (Kyōto)

Nakamura: ..... (5-ka)

Suzuki

B *Invite someone to an event and tell him or her what the departure time will be.*

ex. **Katō: Ashita 11-ji kara Tōkyō Hoteru de o-kashi no fea ga arimasu. Chan-san mo issho ni ikimasen ka.**
Chan: Hai. Nan-ji ni kaisha o demasu ka.
Katō: Tōkyō Hoteru made 1-jikan gurai kakarimasu kara, 10-ji ni demasu.
Chan: Wakarimashita.

1. Katō: ..... (Odaiba)

Chan

Katō: ..... (Odaiba, 30-pun, 10-ji han)

Chan.

2 Katō: ..... (Yokohama)

Chan

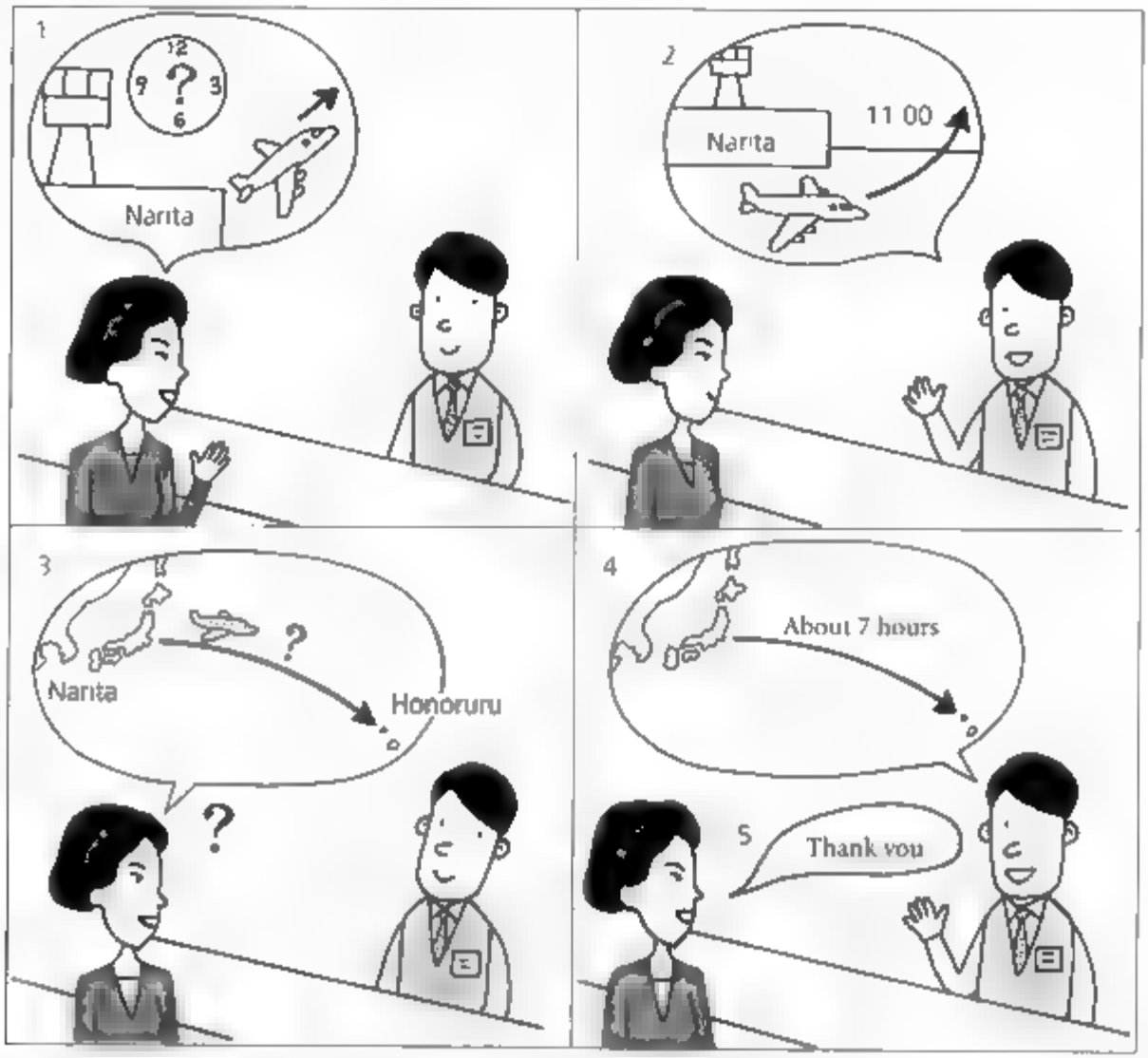
Katō: ..... (Yokohama, 1-jikan han, 9-ji han)

Chan.

VOCABULARY

Pari	Paris
myūjikaru	musical
fea	fair

VIII. ***Talk about a flight itinerary.*** Complete the following dialogue using the information in the illustrations as a guide



1 Chan

2 ryokō-gaisha no hito

3 Chan

4. ryokō-gaisha no hito

5. Chan

IX. Listen to the CD and fill in the blanks based on the information you hear

Kaisha kara Nozomi Depāto made de gurai kakar masu

ABULARY	**Honoruru**	Honolulu
	ryokō-gaisha	travel agency

SHORT DIALOGUE

Mr. Green wants to go to Kamakura.

Gurin:	**Sumimasen, kono densha wa Kamakura ni ikimasu ka.**
ekiin:	**Iie, ikimasen. Yokosuka-sen ni notte kudasai.**
Gurin:	**Yoko— . . . nan desu ka.**
ekiin:	**Yokosuka-sen desu. Chika 1-kai no 1-bansen desu yo.**
Gurin:	**Arigatô gozaimasu.**

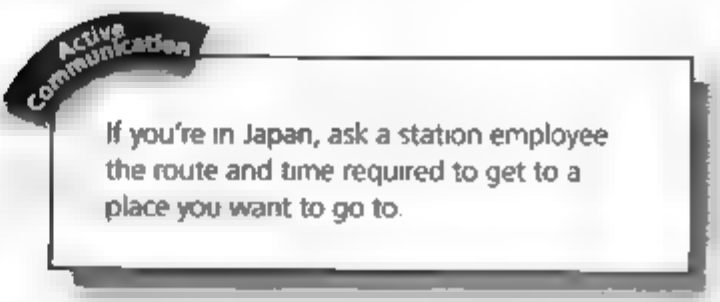
Green:	Excuse me. Does this train go to Kamakura?
station employee:	No, it doesn't. Please take the Yokosuka Line.
Green:	Yoko— . . . what is that?
station employee:	The Yokosuka Line. It's platform no. 1 on the first underground floor.
Green:	Thank you.

VOCABULARY

ekiin	station employee
Yokosuka-sen	Yokosuka Line
-sen	(train) line
1-bansen	platform number one
-bansen	platform number

NOTES

1. **Yoko— . . . nan desu ka.**
   When you only hear one part of a word and want to ask someone to repeat it, say **nan desu ka** after the part of the word that you understood.

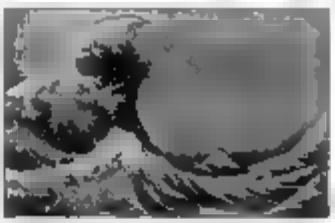


LESSON 20 AT AN ART MUSEUM

TARGET DIALOGUE

TRACK 76

Ms. Chan and Ms. Nakamura are looking at woodblock prints at the Sakura Art Museum. The two of them ask a museum employee some questions.


Ukiyoe

なかむら：きれいな　うきよえですね。

チャン：ほんとうに　きれいですね。

なかむら：すみません。うきよえの　しゃしんを　とっても　いいですか。

びじゅつかんの　ひと：はい。

なかむら：あ、ここに　えいごの　パンフレットが　ありますよ。

チャン：そうですね。すみません。この　パンフレットを　もらっても　いいですか。

びじゅつかんの　ひと：はい、どうぞ。

■ チャンさんは　さくらびじゅつかんで　えいごの　パンフレットを　もらいました。

Nakamura: Kireina ukiyoe desu ne.
Chan: Hontō ni kirei desu ne.
Nakamura: Sumimasen. Ukiyoe no shashin o totte mo ii desu ka.
bijutsukan no hito: Hai.
Nakamura: A, koko ni Eigo no panfuretto ga arimasu yo.
Chan: Sō desu ne. Sumimasen. Kono panfuretto o moratte mo ii desu ka.
bijutsukan no hito: Hai, dōzo.

■ **Chan-san wa Sakura Bijutsukan de Eigo no panfuretto o moraimashita.**

Nakamura: These are lovely ukiyoe prints, aren't they?
Chan: They really are lovely, aren't they?
Nakamura: Excuse me. Is it all right to take pictures of the ukiyoe prints?
museum employee: Yes.
Nakamura: Oh, here's an English-language pamphlet.
Chan: You're right. Excuse me, is it all right to take this pamphlet?
museum employee: Sure, go ahead.

■ Ms. Chan received an English-language pamphlet.

VOCABULARY

うきよえ	**ukiyoe**	ukiyoe (woodblock print)
とっても いいですか	**totte mo ii desu ka**	may I take (a photograph)?
パンフレット	**panfuretto**	pamphlet, brochure

NOTES

1. Shashin o totte mo ii desu ka.

Asking permission to do something is done using the following sentence construction: verb **-te** form + **mo ii desu ka**. To grant permission, say **hai, dōzo** ("yes, please [do]"), and to refuse permission, say **sumimasen ga, chotto . . .** ("I'm sorry, but that would be a little difficult . . .")

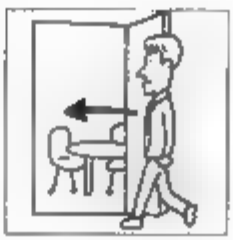
PRACTICE

WORD POWER

1. Verbs:

1 **tsukaimasu**

2 **(tabako o) suimasu**



3 **hairimasu**

VOCABULARY

tsukaimasu	use
(tabako o) suimasu	smoke (a cigarette)
tabako	cigarette
hairimasu	enter

I. Things available at the information counter of a museum

1 **ehagaki** 2 **iyahōn-gaido** 3 **panfuretto** 4 **katarogu**

KEY SENTENCES

1. **Kono e no shashin o totte mo ii desu ka.**
2. **Kono pen o tsukatte mo ii desu ka.**

1. Is it all right to take a photograph of this picture?
2. Is it all right to use this pen?

EXERCISES

Practice conjugating verbs. Repeat the verbs below and memorize their **-te** forms

	-MASU FORM	-TE FORM
use	**tsukaimasu**	**tsukatte**
smoke	**suimasu**	**sutte**
enter	**hairimasu**	**haitte**
rest	**yasumimasu**	**yasunde**

VOCABULARY

ehagaki	(picture) postcard	**panfuretto**	pamphlet
iyahōn-gaido	recorded guide	**katarogu**	catalog
iyahōn	earphones, headphones		
gaido	guide		

II ***Ask permission to do something.*** Change the sentences below as in the example

ex. **Kono katarogu o moraimasu. → Kono katarogu o moratte mo ii desu ka.**

1 Mado o akemasu →

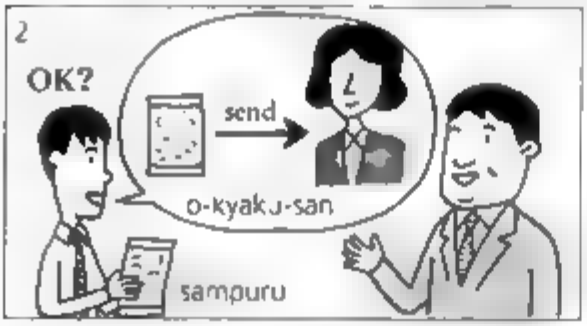
2 Kono iyahōn-gaido o tsukaimasu. →

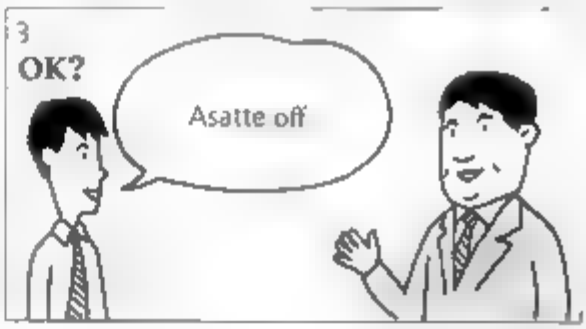
3 Kono e no shashin o torimasu. →

4 Koko de tabako o suimasu →

5 Ashita yasumimasu. →

I ***Ask and grant permission to do something.*** Make up dialogues following the pattern of the example and based on the information in the illustrations





ex **Suzuki: Kono shiryō no kopi o shite mo ii desu ka.**
Katō: Hai, dōzo.

1 Suzuki

Katō

2 Suzuki

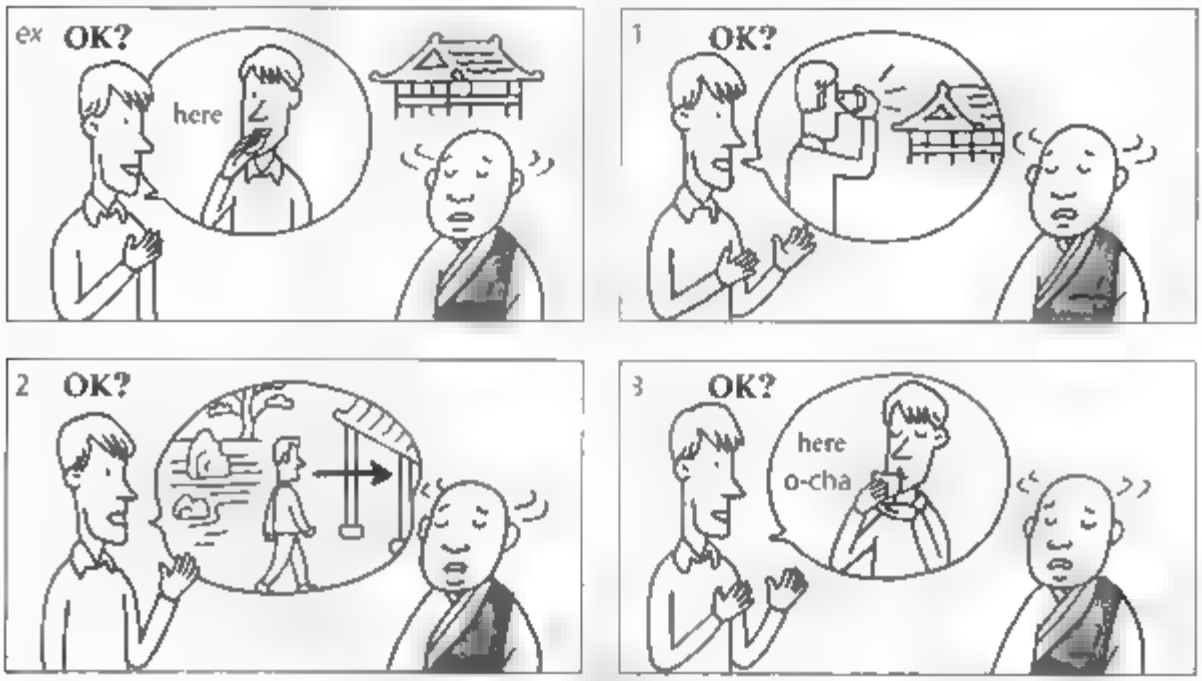
Katō

3 Suzuki

Katō

VOCABULARY **o-kyaku-san** customer, client (polite form of **kyaku**)

IV ***Ask and refuse permission to do something.*** Make up dialogues following the pattern of the example and based on the information in the illustrations



ex **Sumisu:** **Koko de o-kashi o tabete mo ii desu ka.**
o-tera no hito: Sumimasen ga, chotto . . . .

1 Sumisu

o-tera no hito

2 Sumisu

o-tera no hito

3 Sumisu

o-tera no hito

V ***Get and give assistance at a store.*** Make up dialogues following the pattern of the example. Substitute the underlined words with the words in parentheses.

ex **Sumisu:** **Sumimasen, kono terebi no <u>katarogu</u> ga arimasu ka.**
mise no hito: Hai, kore desu.
Sumisu: **Moratte mo ii desu ka.**
mise no hito: Hai, dōzo.

1 Sumisu. _____ (ryokan, panfuretto)

mise no hito

Sumisu

mise no hito

2 Sumisu: .... (resutoran, kādo)

mise no hito

Sumisu

mise no hito

VI ***Ask for permission to borrow a pen.*** Look at the illustrations and make up a dialogue that reflects what is happening

1 mise no hito

2. Sumisu

3 Sumisu

4. mise no hito:

5 Sumisu

VII Listen to the CD and fill in the blanks based on the information you hear

Sumisu-san wa ..... . kara .... o tsukaimasu

VOCABULARY **kādo** (business) card

I Mr. Green has gone to the hospital to visit a sick friend. He first goes to the reception desk in the visiting area.

uketsuke: **Go-jūsho to o-namae o kaite kudasai.**
Gurin: **Rōmaji de kaite mo ii desu ka.**
uketsuke: **Hai.**

receptionist: Please write your address and your name.
Green: May I write in Roman letters?
receptionist: Yes.

VOCABULARY

rōmaji	romanized Japanese

II Mr. Green is visiting a friend.

Gurin: **Koko ni nimotsu o oite mo ii desu ka.**
tomodachi: **Hai, dōzo.**
Gurin: *(after chatting for a while)* **Sumimasen. O-tearai o tsukatte mo ii desu ka.**
tomodachi: **Hai, dōzo.**

Green: May I put my luggage here?
friend: Yes, please do.
Green: Excuse me. May I use your bathroom?
friend: Yes, go right ahead.

VOCABULARY

oite	(-te form of **okimasu**)
okimasu	put

Active Communication

If you're in Japan, go to various stores or public institutions and ask permission to do something—to take a photograph, for example.

LESSON 21 BEING WARNED OR ADVISED

TARGET DIALOGUE

TRACK 80

Ms. Chan and Ms. Nakamura are looking at a picture of Mt. Fuji in the art museum.

チャン：この　ふじさんの　えは　とても　きれいですね。

なかむら：そうですね。

チャン：なかむらさん、この　えの　まえで　わたしの　しゃしんを　とってください。

なかむら　はい、わかりました。とりますよ。*(takes a flash picture)*

びじゅつかんの　ひと　すみません、ここで　フラッシュを　つかわないでください。

なかむら：すみません、わかりました。

■なかむらさんは　ふじさんの　えの　まえで　チャンさんの　しゃしんを　とりました。

Chan: Kono Fujisan no e wa totemo kirei desu ne.
Nakamura: Sō desu ne.
Chan: Nakamura-san, kono e no mae de watashi no shashin o totte kudasai.
Nakamura: Hai, wakarimashita. Torimasu yo. *(takes a flash picture)*
bijutsukan no hito: Sumimasen, koko de furasshu o tsukawanaide kudasai.
Nakamura: Sumimasen, wakarimashita.

■ **Nakamura-san wa Fujisan no e no mae de Chan-san no shashin o torimashita.**

Chan: This picture of Mt. Fuji is really lovely, isn't it?
Nakamura: Yes, it is.
Chan: Ms. Nakamura, please take a photograph of me in front of this picture.
Nakamura: Okay, right. Are you ready?
museum employee: Excuse me. Please don't use a flash here.
Nakamura: I'm sorry, I understand.

■ Ms. Nakamura took a photograph of Ms. Chan in front of a picture of Mt. Fuji.

ふじさん	**Fujisan**	Mt. Fuji
とりますよ	**torimasu yo**	(said when you are about to take someone's photo)
フラッシュ	**furasshu**	flash
つかわないでください	**tsukawanaide kudasai**	please don't use

NOTES

1. Koko de furasshu o tsukawanaide kudasai.

The "please do not ... " construction is formed as follows: verb **-nai** + **de** + **kudasai**. This expression is often used by managers or officials when asking someone to refrain from doing something, although it can also be used by restaurant customers when requesting that a specific ingredient not be used.

ex. **Satō o irenaide kudasai.** "Please don't put any sugar in it."

To make this rather strong expression sound softer, give the reason why you would like the other person to refrain from doing what they are about to do.

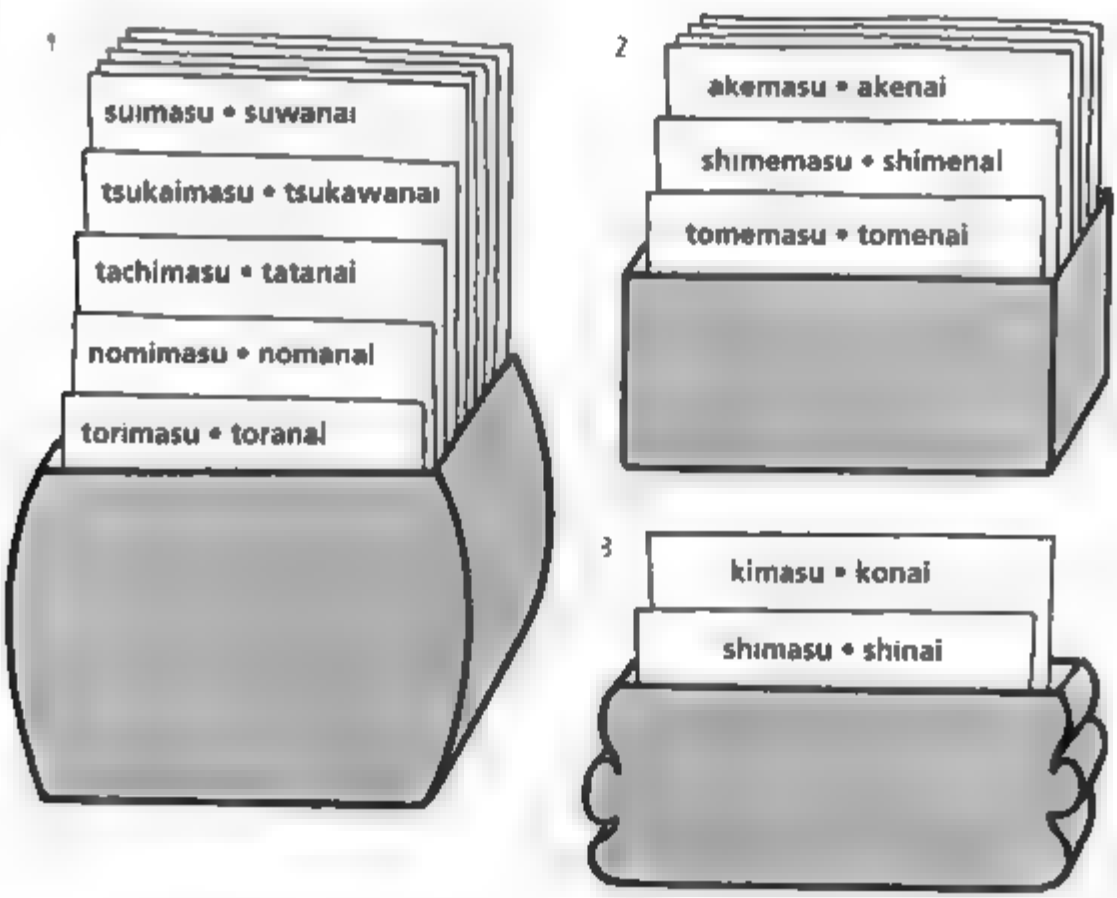
ex. **Koko ni kuruma o tomenaide kudasai. Deguchi desu kara.**
"Please do not park your car here. (This) is an exit."

PRACTICE

WORD POWER

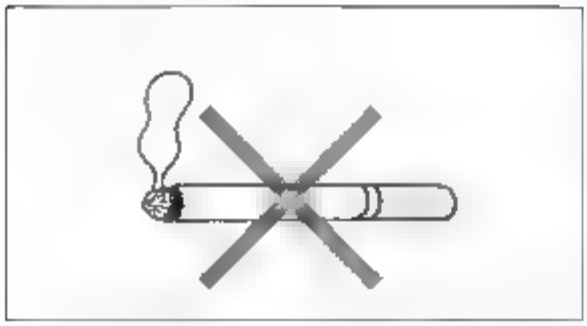
TRACK 81

I. The **-nai** form:

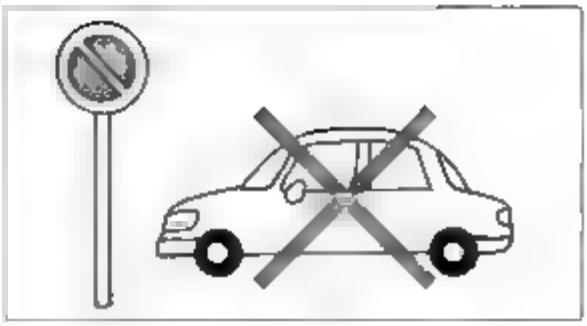


VOCABULARY **tachimasu** stand up

II Restrictions.



1 **kin'en**



2 **chusha-kinshi**

KEY SENTENCES

1. **Koko wa iriguchi desu kara, kuruma o tomenaide kudasai**
2. **Sushi ni wasabi o irenaide kudasai.**

1. This is the entrance, so please don't park your car here
2. Please don't put any wasabi in the sushi

EXERCISES

I *Practice conjugating verbs.* Repeat the verbs below and memorize their **-nai** forms

REGULAR		REGULAR II		IRREGULAR	
-MASU FORM	**-NAI** FORM	**-MASU** FORM	**-NAI** FORM	**-MASU** FORM	**-NAI** FORM
aimasu	**awanai**	**misemasu**	**misenai**	**kimasu**	**konai**
kakimasu	**kakanai**	**iremasu**	**irenai**	**shimasu**	**shinai**
keshimasu	**kesanai**	**tabemasu**	**tabenai**		
tachimasu	**tatanai**	**akemasu**	**akenai**		
nomimasu	**nomanai**	**shimemasu**	**shimenai**		
kaerimasu	**kaeranai**	**mimasu**	**minai**		

VOCABULARY

kin'en	no smoking, nonsmoking
chūsha-kinshi	no parking
wasabi	wasabi, Japanese (green) horseradish
iremasu	put in, add

Practice the -nai form. Change the following verbs to their **-nai** forms

ex **aimasu** → **awanai**

1 akemasu →

2 shimemasu →

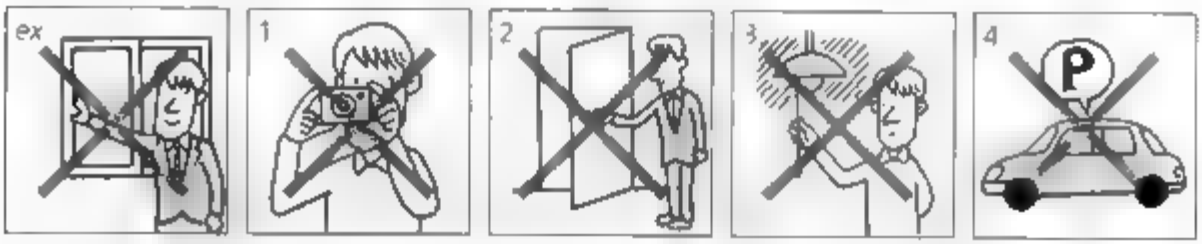
3 torimasu →

4 kaimasu →

5 yomimasu →

6 kikimasu →

III ***Forbid someone to do something.*** Look at the illustrations and make up sentences as in the example



ex **mado o akemasu** → **Mado o akenaide kudasai.**

1 shashin o torimasu →

2 doa o shimemasu →

3 denki o keshimasu →

4 kuruma o tomemasu →

IV ***Forbid someone to do something and give a reason.*** Make up sentences following the pattern of the example. Substitute the underlined part with the alternatives given

ex **Koko wa <u>iriguchi desu</u> kara, kuruma o tomenaide kudasai.**

1 (deguchi desu)

2 (mise no mae desu)

3 (chūsha-kinshi desu)

VOCABULARY **deguchi** exit

V Make up dialogues following the patterns of the examples. Substitute the underlined part(s) with the alternatives given.

A. *Ask someone to refrain from smoking.*

ex. **Chan: Sumimasen, kono densha wa kin'en desu kara, tabako o suwanaide kudasai.**
otoko no hito: Hai, wakarimashita. Sumimasen.

1 Chan: ..... (kono resutoran wa kin'en desu)

otoko no hito: .....

2 Chan: ..... (akachan ga imasu)

otoko no hito: .....

B. *Order something at a restaurant and request that a specific ingredient not be used.*

ex. **Chan: Sumimasen, hambāgā o onegaishimasu.**
mise no hito: Hai.
Chan: Sumimasen ga, kechappu o irenaide kudasai.
mise no hito: Hai, wakarimashita.

1. Chan: ..... (sushi)

mise no hito: .....

Chan: ..... (wasabi)

mise no hito: .....

2. Chan: ..... (sandoitchi)

mise no hito: .....

Chan: ..... (mayonēzu)

mise no hito: .....

3. Chan: ..... (aisu-kōhī)

mise no hito: .....

Chan: ..... (satō)

mise no hito: .....

VI. Listen to the CD and fill in the blanks based on the information you hear.

TRACK 87

Gogo kara ..... de ..... ga arimasu.

VOCABULARY

akachan	baby	**mayonēzu**	mayonnaise
hambāgā	hamburger	**aisu-kōhī**	ice coffee
kechappu	ketchup	**satō**	sugar

SHORT DIALOGUES

I. Mr. Smith got drunk at the Sasakis' house and spilled red wine on their clean carpet. The next day, he apologizes at the office.

Sumisu: Sasaki-san, kinō wa sumimasendeshita.
Sasaki: Iie, dōzo ki ni shinaide kudasai.

Smith: Ms. Sasaki, I'm so sorry about yesterday.
Sasaki: No, please don't let it bother you.

VOCABULARY

ki ni shinaide kudasai	don't worry about it; don't let it bother you
ki ni shimasu	worry (about), be bothered (by)

II. Mr. Smith goes to the clinic with a stomachache.

Isha: Kyō wa o-sake o nomanaide kudasai.
Sumisu: Hai, wakarimashita.

doctor: Don't drink any alcohol today.
Smith: Ok, I understand.

VOCABULARY

isha	(medical) doctor

Active Communication

What would you say in these situations?

1. A stranger is trying to park in front of your house.
2. The person next to you lights up a cigarette in a nonsmoking car on the Shinkansen.

Quiz 4 (Units 8–9)

I Fill in the blank(s) in each sentence with the appropriate particle. Where a particle is not needed, write in an *X*.

1. Sumisu-san wa kaigi no mae ( ) shiryō o yomimashita.
2. Futatsu-me no kado ( ) hidari ( ) magatte kudasai.
3. Depāto no saki ( ) tomete kudasai.
4. Takahashi-san wa Shibuya ( ) densha ( ) orite, basu ( ) norimasu.
5. Shibuya ( ) Asakusa ( ) chikatetsu ( ) 40-pun kakarimasu.
6. Takahashi-san wa Honkon ( ) 1-shukan ( ) imashita.
7. Shinkansen wa 8-ji ( ) Tōkyō Eki ( ) dete, 10-ji ( ) Kyōto Eki ( ) tsukimasu.
8. Koko ( ) chusha-kinshi desu ( ), kuruma ( ) tomenaide kudasai.

II Complete each question by filling in the blank with the appropriate word.

1. Shūmatsu ni ( ) o shimashita ka.
   Ginza ni itte, kaimono o shimashita.
2. ( ) Ōsaka-shisha ni denwa o shimashita ka.
   Kaigi no mae ni shimashita.
3. ( ) kaisha ni ikimasu ka.
   Shibuya de chikatetsu ni notte, Ginza de orimasu. Ginza kara kaisha made 10-pun arukimasu.
4. Tōkyō kara Ōsaka made hikōki de ( ) kakarimasu ka.
   1-jikan gurai kakarimasu.

III Complete the table by writing in the appropriate forms of the verbs.

	-MASU FORM	-TE FORM	-NAI FORM
ex.	tsukaimasu	tsukatte	tsukawanai
1	kakimasu	kaite	
2		keshite	kesana
3	nomimasu		nomana
4.	torimasu	totte	
5.	shimemasu		shimenai
6.		akete	akenai
7.	mimasu		minai
8	kimasu	kite	
9.		shite	shinai

IV Complete the sentences by filling in the blank(s) with the appropriate form of the word(s) given at the end.

1. Sumisu-san wa kinō shigoto no ato de tomodachi to eiga o ( ), ban-gohan o tabemashita (mimasu)
2. Sumisu-san wa kinō hana o ( ), uchi ni kaerimashita (kaimasu)
3. Oishii sushi-ya o ( ) kudasai. (oshiemasu)
4. Tsugi no kōsaten o migi ni ( ), massugu ( ) kudasai (magarimasu, ikimasu)
5. Kono katarogu o ( ) mo ii desu ka. (moraimasu)
6. Koko wa deguchi desu kara, kuruma o ( ) kudasai (tomemasu)

UNIT 10

AT THE OFFICE

Walking into a traditional Japanese company, one will notice the absence of high partitions and cubicles. most Japanese offices are open, with desks facing one another so that employees can readily communicate. This arrangement is efficient because it saves on space; and in a country where land prices can be astronomical, such efficiency is important. Another feature of such offices is the conspicuous hierarchy. In one desk with a view of all others sits the office manager, and in front of him the division chief, then the section chief, and so on down to the bottom. Recently, however, Japanese companies have been modifying the traditional layout to make their offices more functional for the people who work in them, or more aesthetically pleasing to visitors.

UNIT 10 GRAMMAR

Present Progressive and Habitual Actions

person **wa** verb **-te imasu**

ex **Gurei-san wa ima kaigi-shitsu de repōto o yonde imasu.**
"Mr. Grey is reading a report in the meeting room now."
Gurei-san wa maishū do-yōbi ni tenisu o shite imasu.
"Mr. Grey plays tennis every Saturday."

A verb in the **-te** form followed by **imasu** expresses a present-progressive action ("is doing"), as in the first example above, or, when accompanied by an adverb like **maishū** ("every week") or **mainichi** ("every day"), a habitual action, as in the second example.

Current States

person **wa** verb **-te imasu**

ex **Gurei-san wa Yokohama ni sunde imasu.** "Mr. Grey lives in Yokohama."
Gurei-san wa Ginkō ni tsutomete imasu. "Mr. Grey is employed at a bank."
Ano mise de terebi o utte imasu. "At that store (they) sell TVs."
Gurei-san wa Yoshida-san no jūsho o shitte imasu. "Mr. Grey knows Mr. Yoshida's address."

The **-te imasu** form can also express a current state when the verb is one of those used in the examples above—**sumimasu**, **tsutomemasu**, **urimasu**, or **shirimasu**.
NOTE. The verb **shirimasu** ("know") from which **shitte imasu** derives, is usually used in the **-te** form followed by **imasu**. But the form this verb takes when used in response to the question **shitte imasu ka** ("do you know?") varies, and in this way it is unlike other verbs.
ex Aa, **Hai, shitte imasu.** "Yes, (I) know."
An, **Iie, shirimasen.** "No, (I) don't know."

LESSON 22 BUSY AT THE MOMENT

TARGET DIALOGUE

TRACK 84

Mr. Smith is looking for Ms. Chan. He enters the sales department office and asks Mr. Suzuki where she is.

スミス：すみません。チャンさんは　いますか。

すずき：いいえ。いま　3がいの　かいぎしつに　います。

スミス：そうですか。

すずき：いま、のぞみデパートの　たかはしさんに　あたらしい
　　しょうひんの　せつめいを　しています。

スミス：そうですか。わかりました。どうも。

■スミスさんは　えいぎょうぶに　いきましたが、　チャンさんは
いませんでした。

Sumisu: Sumimasen. Chan-san wa imasu ka.
Suzuki: Iie. Ima 3-gai no kaigishitsu ni imasu.
Sumisu: Sô desu ka.
Suzuki: Ima, Nozomi Depâto no Takahashi-san ni atarashii shôhin no setsumei o shite imasu.
Sumisu: Sô desu ka. Wakarimashita. Dômo.

■ Sumisu-san wa eigyô-bu ni ikimashita ga, Chan-san wa imasendeshita.

Smith: Excuse me. Is Ms. Chan here?
Suzuki: No, she's in the conference room on the third floor.
Smith: Is that so?
Suzuki: Yes, she's explaining new products to Mr. Takahashi of Nozomi Department Store.
Smith: Is that so? I see. Thanks.

■ Mr. Smith went to the sales department office (to look for Ms. Chan), but Ms. Chan was not there.

VOCABULARY

せつめいを　しています	**setsumei o shite imasu**	is/are explaining
せつめいを　します	**setsumei o shimasu**	explain
えいぎょうぶ	**eigyô-bu**	sales department (office)
が	**ga**	but (see Note 1 below)

NOTES

1. **Sumisu-san wa eigyo-bu ni ikimashita ga, Chan-san wa imasendeshita.**
   This **ga** is a conjunction that joins two clauses. It can be translated as "but."

PRACTICE

WORD POWER

I. Verbs.

1 **hanashi o shimasu**

2 **setsumei o shimasu**

3 **sōji o shimasu**

4 **tsukurimasu**

II. Parts of a building

1 **robi** 2 **erebētā** 3 **esukarētā** 4 **kaidan**

VOCABULARY

hanashi o shimasu	talk	**robi**	lobby
setsumei o shimasu	explain	**erebētā**	elevator
sōji o shimasu	clean	**esukarētā**	escalator
tsukurimasu	make	**kaidan**	stairs

KEY SENTENCES

1. **Sumisu-san wa ima shimbun o yonde imasu.**
2. **Mō kaigi no repōto o kakimashita ka.**
3. **Sumisu-san wa Takahashi-san no uchi ni ikimashita ga, Takahashi-san wa uchi ni imasendeshita.**

1 Mr. Smith is reading a newspaper now.
2 Have you already written the report about the meeting?
3 Mr. Smith went to Mr. Takahashi's house, but Mr. Takahashi was not at home.

EXERCISES

I *Practice conjugating verbs.* Repeat the verbs below and memorize their **-te imasu** forms, affirmative and negative.

	-MASU FORM	-TE IMASU FORM	
		aff	*neg*
talk	**hanashi o shimasu**	**hanashi o shite imasu**	**hanashi o shite imasen**
explain	**setsumei o shimasu**	**setsumei o shite imasu**	**setsumei o shite imasen**
clean	**sōji o shimasu**	**sōji o shite imasu**	**sōji o shite imasen**
make	**tsukurimasu**	**tsukutte imasu**	**tsukutte imasen**

II *State what someone is doing now.* Change the following sentences as in the example.

ex. **Sumisu-san wa shimbun o yomimasu.**
→ **Sumisu-san wa shimbun o yonde imasu.**

1 Sumisu-san wa sōji o shimasu. →
2 Sumisu-san wa tegami o kakimasu. →
3. Sumisu-san wa kopī o shimasu. →
4. Sumisu-san wa Takahashi-san to hanashi o shimasu. →
5. Sumisu-san wa ryōri o tsukurimasu. →

VOCABULARY mō already

II Make up dialogues following the patterns of the examples and based on the situations depicted in the illustrations.

A *Ask and answer what one is doing now.*

ex. 1 **A: Gurin-san wa ima nani o shite imasu ka.**
B: Denwa o shite imasu.

1 A

B

2 A

B

3 A

B

4 A

B

5 A

B

6 A

B

B. ***Answer what one is doing now in response to a question.***

ex. 2 **A: Katō-san wa ima repōto o kaite imasu ka.**
B: Iie, kaigishitsu de setsumei o shite imasu.

7 A. Sasaki-san wa ima kaigi o shite imasu ka.

B.

8 A. Nakamura-san wa ima denwa o shite imasu ka.

B.

9. A. Chan-san wa ima Sasaki-san to hanashi o shite imasu ka.

B.

IV. ***Ask and answer whether one has completed an action.*** Make up dialogues following the pattern of the example. Substitute the underlined words with the alternatives given. Be sure to use the same grammatical form as in the example.

ex. **A: Mō hiru-gohan o tabemashita ka.**
B: Hai, tabemashita.

1 A. ..... (ryokō no shashin, mimasu)

B. ..... (mimasu)

2. A. ..... (kaigi no repōto, kakimasu)

B. ..... (kakimasu)

V. ***Connect two clauses.*** Link each pair of sentences as in the example.

ex. **Watashi wa Takahashi-san no uchi ni ikimashita. Takahashi-san wa uchi ni imasendeshita.**
→ Watashi wa Takahashi-san no uchi ni ikimashita ga, Takahashi-san wa uchi ni imasendeshita.

1 Watashi wa eigyō-bu no Chan-san ni denwa o shimashita. Chan-san wa imasendeshita.

→

2 Watashi wa kō depāto ni ikimashita. Depāto wa yasumi deshita.

→

VI Make up dialogues following the patterns of the examples. Substitute the underlined parts with the alternatives given. Be sure to use the same grammatical forms as in the examples.

A. ***Explain that one is in the midst of something.***

ex **Katō: Mō kopī o shimashita ka.**
Suzuki: Sumimasen, ima shite imasu kara, chotto matte kudasai.
Katō: Hai.

1 Katō: ..... (mēru, yomimasu)

Suzuki: ..... (yomimasu)

Katō:

2 Katō: ..... (kaigi no shiryō, tsukurimasu)

Suzuki: ..... (tsukurimasu)

Katō:

B. ***Respond to a cell phone call by suggesting it is inconvenient or inappropriate to talk at the moment.***

ex Mr. Smith gets a call on his cell phone from his friend Mr. Yamada. Since he is in a meeting, he answers quietly.

Yamada: Moshimoshi, Sumisu-san desu ka.
Sumisu: Hai.
Yamada: Yamada desu.
Sumisu: Yamada-san, sumimasen ga, ima kaigi o shite imasu.
Yamada: Ja, mata ato de denwa o shimasu.
Sumisu: Onegaishimasu.

1 Yamada:

Sumisu:

Yamada:

Sumisu: (o-kyaku-san to hanashi o shimasu)

Yamada:

Sumisu:

2 Yamada:

Sumisu:

Yamada:

Sumisu: (Nihon-go no gakkō de benkyō o shimasu)

Yamada:

Sumisu:

VOCABULARY **mata ato de** see you later; talk to you later

VI Listen to the CD and choose the correct answer to the question asked

a)

b)

c)

SHORT DIALOGUES

Ms. Sasaki is waiting for Ms. Chan's report on her business trip to Hokkaido

Sasaki: Chan-san, repōto wa mō kakimashita ka.
Chan: Sumimasen, mada desu. Mō sukoshi matte kudasai.

Sasaki: Ms. Chan, have you already written the report?
Chan: I'm sorry. Not yet. Please wait a bit more

VOCABULARY

mada	not yet
mō sukoshi	a little more

II. Mr. Suzuki is looking for an empty room

Suzuki: Sumimasen. 3-gai no kaigishitsu o tsukatte mo ii desu ka.
Nakamura: Ee. Ima dare mo tsukatte imasen kara, dōzo.

Suzuki: Excuse me. Is it all right to use the conference room on the third floor?
Nakamura: Yes, since no one is using it now. Go right ahead

NOTES

1. **Repōto wa . . .**
Although **repōto** ("report") is the object, Ms. Sasaki is singling it out as a topic for discussion, so **wa** replaces the object marker **o**

2. **Repōto wa mō kakimashita ka.**
It should be noted that the verb ending **-mashita**, when used with **mō** ("already"), expresses completion in addition to indicating the past tense

Active Communication

Imagine that you are in a meeting or involved in some activity that you can't break away from, and a call comes in on your cell phone. Explain in Japanese to the person on the other end of the line why it is inconvenient for you to talk at the moment.

LESSON 23 RESPONDING TO AN INQUIRY

TARGET DIALOGUE

TRACK 88

A customer from Nagoya has phoned to inquire about ABC Foods' new products

チャン：はい、ABC フーズでございます。

きゃく　すみません、ABC フーズの　あたらしい　チョコレートは
　　どこで　うっていますか。

チャン：「ショコラショコラ」ですか。

きゃく：ええ、そうです。

チャン：とうきょうの　スーパーと　コンビニで　うっています。

きゃく　わたしは　なごやに　すんでいます。なごやでも　うっていますか。

チャン　いいえ、なごやでは　うっていません。もうしわけございません。

きゃく：そうですか。わかりました。

チャン：たいへん　もうしわけございません。

■ABC フーズの「ショコラショコラ」は　とうきょうの　スーパーと　コンビニで　うっています。

Chan: Hai, ABC Fūzu de gozaimasu.
kyaku: Sumimasen, ABC Fūzu no atarashii chokorēto wa doko de utte imasu ka.
Chan: "Shokora-shokora" desu ka.
kyaku: Ee, sō desu.
Chan: Tōkyō no sūpā to kombini de utte imasu.
kyaku. Watashi wa Nagoya ni sunde imasu. Nagoya de mo utte imasu ka.
Chan iie, Nagoya de wa utte imasen. Mōshiwake gozaimasen.
kyaku: Sō desu ka. Wakarimashita.
Chan: Taihen mōshiwake gozaimasen.

■ ABC Fūzu no "Shokora-shokora" wa Tōkyō no supā to kombini de utte imasu.

Chan. Yes, this is ABC Foods.
customer Excuse me, about ABC Foods' new chocolates—where do you sell them?
Chan Do you mean "Chocolat-Chocolat"?
customer Yes, that's right
Chan We sell them at supermarkets and convenience stores in Tokyo
customer I live in Nagoya. Do you sell them in Nagoya?
Chan No. we do not sell them in Nagoya. I'm sorry to have to tell you this
customer Is that so? I see
Chan. I'm really very sorry

■ As for Chocolat-Chocolat, ABC Foods sells it in supermarkets and convenience stores in Tokyo

VOCABULARY

うっています	**utte imasu**	sell
うります	**urimasu**	sell
ショコラショコラ	**Shokora-shokora**	Chocolat-Chocolat (fictitious product name)
なごや	**Nagoya**	Nagoya (city in central Japan)
すんでいます	**sunde imasu**	live
すみます	**sumimasu**	live
もうしわけございません	**mōshiwake gozaimasen**	I'm sorry to have to tell you this (polite way of saying **sumimasen**)
たいへん	**taihen**	very much, extremely (polite way of saying **totemo**)

NOTES

1 **ABC Fūzu no atarashii chokorēto wa doko de utte imasu ka.**
Although **chokorēto** is the object, here it is being singled out as the topic and therefore takes the particle **wa** instead of **o**.

2. **Watashi wa Nagoya ni sunde imasu.**
The particle **ni** is used to indicate the place where one lives or is employed
ex. **Yamada-san wa ginkō ni tsutomete imasu** "Ms. Yamada is employed at a bank."

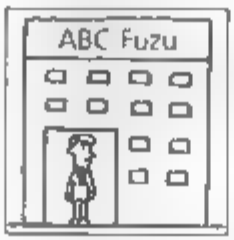
3. **Nagoya de mo utte imasu ka.**
Iie, Nagoya de wa utte imasen.
Note the positions of the particles **de** and **mo** here. In Ms. Chan's reply, she uses the topic marker **wa** after **de** to show that "Nagoya" is the topic. "As for Nagoya, (Chocolat-Chocolat) is not sold there." Note that while one particle may normally follow another, as do **mo** and **wa** after **de** in the sentences above, **mo** and **wa** never follow the particles **ga** or **o** but simply take their place. Similarly, **mo** and **wa** are never used together; one or the other is used.

PRACTICE

WORD POWER

I. Verbs.

1 **sunde imasu**



2 **tsutomete imasu**

3 **shitte imasu**

4 **utte imasu**

VOCABULARY

sunde imasu	live
tsutomete imasu	be employed
shitte imasu	know
utte imasu	sell

I. Family

	RELATED TO THE SPEAKER	RELATED TO OTHERS
child	**kodomo**	**okosan**
son	**musuko**	**musukosan**
daughter	**musume**	**ojōsan/musumesan**
older brother	**ani**	**onisan**
older sister	**ane**	**onēsan**
younger brother	**otōto**	**otōtosan**
younger sister	**imōto**	**imōtosan**

KEY SENTENCES

1. **Takahashi-san wa Yokohama ni sunde imasu.**
2. **Sumisu-san wa ABC Fūzu ni tsutomete imasu.**
3. **Sumisu-san wa Itō-san o shitte imasu.**
4. **Kombini de konsāto no kippu o utte imasu.**

1. Mr. Takahashi lives in Yokohama.
2. Mr. Smith is employed by ABC Foods.
3. Mr. Smith knows Ms. Ito.
4. They sell concert tickets at convenience stores.

EXERCISES

Practice conjugating verbs. Repeat the verbs below and memorize their **-te imasu** forms, affirmative and negative.

	-MASU FORM	-TE IMASU FORM	
		aff	*neg*
live	**sumimasu**	**sunde imasu**	**sunde imasen**
be employed	**tsutomemasu**	**tsutomete imasu**	**tsutomete imasen**
know	*	**shitte imasu**	**shirimasen****
sell	**urimasu**	**utte imasu**	**utte imasen**

* **shirimasu**—the affirmative present tense—is hardly ever used.
** The negative **-te imasu** form is **shitte imasen**, but this form is not used.

BULARY **Itō** Itō (surname)

I ***State where someone lives.*** Make up sentences following the pattern of the example. Substitute the underlined words with the words in parentheses.

ex. **Yamamoto-san wa Kyōto ni sunde imasu.**

1 (Gurīn-san, Shibuya)

2 (Nakamura-san, Shinjuku)

II ***Ask and answer where someone lives.*** Make up dialogues following the pattern of the example. Substitute the underlined words with the words in parentheses.

ex. **A. Takahashi-san wa doko ni sunde imasu ka.**
B. Yokohama ni sunde imasu.

1 A (Yamada-san)

B (Shibuya)

2 A (Howaito-san)

B (Roppongi)

IV ***State where someone is employed.*** Make up sentences following the pattern of the example. Substitute the underlined words with the words in parentheses.

ex. **Takahashi-san wa depāto ni tsutomete imasu.**

1 (Yamada-san, ginkō)

2 (Sumisu-san, ABC Fūzu)

V ***Ask and answer where someone is employed.*** Make up dialogues following the pattern of the example. Substitute the underlined words with the words in parentheses.

ex. **Yamada: Buraun-san wa doko ni tsutomete imasu ka.**
Sumisu: Rondon Ginkō ni tsutomete imasu.

1 Yamada (Howaito-san)

Sumisu (JBP Japan)

2 Yamada (Suzuki-san no onīsan)

Sumisu (ryokō-gaisha)

JBP Japan (fictitious company name)

VI ***State where someone lives and is employed.*** Use the information in the table to make up sentences as in the example.

	PERSON	RESIDENCE	EMPLOYER
ex	Andō-san	Shinagawa	JBP Japan
1	Gurin-san	Shibuya	ABC Fūzu
2	Nakamura-san no imōtosan	Sapporo	ginkō
3	Chan-san no onēsan	Honkon	depāto

ex. **Andō-san wa Shinagawa ni sunde imasu.**
Soshite, JBP Japan ni tsutomete imasu.

1

2

3

VII Make up dialogues following the patterns of the examples. Substitute the underlined words with the alternatives given.

A. ***Confirm whether one knows someone or something.***

ex. **A: Sasaki-san o shitte imasu ka.**
B: Hai, shitte imasu.

1. A. (Buraun-san)

   B. Hai,

2. A. (Takahashi-san no jūsho)

   B. Hai, ...

B. ***Deny that one knows someone or something.***

ex. **A: Howaito-san o shitte imasu ka.**
B: Iie, shirimasen.

1. A. (Chan-san no mēru-adoresu)

   B. Iie.

2. A. (Suzuki-san no denwa-bangō)

   B. Iie,

VOCABULARY

Andō	Ando (surname)
Shinagawa	Shinagawa (district in Tokyo)
soshite	and (NOTE: Unlike **to**, which connects words, **soshite** connects sentences.)

VIII ***Ask and answer whether one knows a particular address or fax number.*** Use the information in the table to make up a dialogue as in the example

	Restaurant Tokyo's fax	Restaurant Tokyo's address	Sapporo branch office's fax
Suzuki	ex. yes	1. yes	2. no

ex **Sumisu: Resutoran Tōkyō no fakkusu no bangō o shitte imasu ka.**
Suzuki: Hai, shitte imasu.

1 Sumisu

Suzuki

2 Sumisu

Suzuki

IX ***Ask where a product is sold.*** Make up dialogues following the pattern of the example. Substitute the underlined parts with the alternatives given

ex **A: Konsāto no kippu wa doko de utte imasu ka.**
B: Kombini de utte imasu.

1 A: ..... (dejikame)

B: ..... (Nozomi Depāto)

2 A: ..... (kusuri)

B: ..... (ano mise)

X Make up dialogues following the patterns of the examples. Substitute the underlined parts with the alternatives given

A. ***Talk about a new product.***

ex **Hofuman: ABC Fūzu no atarashii o-kashi o shitte imasu ka.**
Matsui: Ee, shitte imasu.
Hofuman: Doko de utte imasu ka.
Matsui: Ginza no depāto de utte imasu.

1 Hofuman: ..... (Fuji Kompyūtā no atarashii gēmu)

Matsui

Hofuman

Matsui: ..... (Shinjuku no denki-ya)

VOCABULARY

Resutoran Tōkyō Restaurant Tokyo (fictitious restaurant name)
Fuji Kompyūtā Fuji Computers (fictitious company name)
denki-ya electronics store

2. Hofuman: _____ (mēpuru-shiroppu)

Matsui:

Hofuman:

Matsui: _____ (sūpā)

B. ***Talk about a particular person.***

ex. Mr. Smith meets various people for the first time at a party.

Sumisu: Andō-san, o-shigoto wa nan desu ka.
Andō: Enjinia desu. JBP Japan ni tsutomete imasu.
Sumisu: Sō desu ka. Ja, Yokohama-shisha no Itō-san o shitte imasu ka.
Andō: Ee, shitte imasu.

1. Sumisu:

Kojima: _____ (hisho)

Sumisu: _____ (Ōsaka-shisha no Yamashita-san)

Kojima:

2. Sumisu:

Kobayashi: _____ (bengoshi)

Sumisu: _____ (Honkon-shisha no Wan-san)

Kobayashi:

C. ***Talk about a particular person's telephone number or e-mail address.***

ex. **Sumisu: JBP Japan no Itō-san o shitte imasu ka.**
Nakamura: Hai, shitte imasu.
Sumisu: Ja, Itō-san no denwa-bangō o shitte imasu ka.
Nakamura: Iie, shirimasen.

1. Sumisu: _____ (Wan-san)

Nakamura:

Sumisu: _____ (Wan-san no mēru-adoresu)

Nakamura:

2. Sumisu: _____ (Andō-san)

Nakamura:

Sumisu: _____ (Andō-san no keitai no bangō)

Nakamura:

BULARY

mēpuru-shiroppu	maple syrup	**Honkon-shisha**	Hong Kong (branch) office
Kojima	Kojima (surname)	**Wan**	Wang (surname)
Yamashita	Yamashita (surname)		
Kobayashi	Kobayashi (surname)		

X Listen to the CD and answer the question based on the information you hear

SHORT DIALOGUE

Mr. Smith wants to make a reservation at the sushi restaurant Sushimasa, but he doesn't know the phone number.

Sumisu: Sumimasen. Sushimasa no denwa-bangō o shitte imasu ka.
Nakamura: Sā, wakarimasen. Suzuki-san ni kite kudasai.

Smith: Excuse me. Do you know the phone number for Sushimasa?
Nakamura: Actually, I don't. Please ask Mr. Suzuki.

VOCABULARY

Sushimasa	Sushimasa (fictitious sushi bar)
sā, wakarimasen	don't know (NOTE: The sā here expresses the speaker's hesitation about immediately answering, "I don't know.")
sā	let me see

Active Communication

1. Next time you meet a Japanese person for the first time, tell him or her where you live and where you are employed. Then ask that person where he or she lives and is employed.
2. If you're in Japan, ask where something you are looking for is sold.

4. If you're in Japan, ask yourself
you are looking for is cold

7. Hard time you meet a lady
for the first time, tell me
you live and where you
Then ask that person w
lives and is employed

UNIT 11

SOCIALIZING

The Japanese have an internationa reputation of being hardworking people, the men devoted to their work and the women to their families But while they may be diligent they are also social, and there are many kinds of celebrations—most season-inspired—that they participate in From cherry blossom viewing in the spring, when friends and colleagues get together to appreciate the beauty of the ephemeral cherry blossoms, to excursions in autumn to see the changing of the colors of the leaves, to year-end and new-year parties, the Japanese have get-togethers whenever the seasons beckon them. In addition to these annual events, though, they also enjoy western style gatherings drinking parties, barbecues, and even home parties

GRAMMAR

Preference and Desire

person **wa** noun **ga suki desu**	
//	**jōzu desu**
//	**wakarimasu**

ex **Gurei-san wa biru ga suki desu.** "Mr. Grey likes beer."
Gurei-san wa tenisu ga jōzu desu. "Mr. Grey is good at tennis."
Gurei-san wa Chūgoku-go ga wakarimasu. "Mr. Grey understands/knows Chinese."

■ The particle **ga** used with **suki desu, jōzu desu, itai desu,** and **wakarimasu**

Ga is used before the adjectives **suki desu** ("like", *lit.*, "be likable"), **jōzu desu** ("be skilled"), and **itai desu** ("be painful"), and also before the verb **wakarimasu** ("understand"), to show what one likes or is skilled at, what part of one's body hurts, or what one understands.
NOTE: With **itai desu**, the topic of the sentence is always the speaker, and the subject is a body part.

watashi wa verb **-tai desu**

■ Expressing desire: verb **-tai desu**

Constructions expressing desire ("I want to ") can be made from the **-masu** form by dropping **-masu** and adding **-tai** as follows.
iki-masu → iki-tai
tabe-masu → tabe-tai
NOTE: -tai is inflected like an **-i** adjective.
ex **Ikitai desu.** "(I) want to go."
Ikitakunai desu. "(I) don't want to go."
Ikitakatta desu. "(I) wanted to go."
Ikitakunakatta desu. "(I) didn't want to go."

■ **-Tai** expresses the speaker's desire, not a third person's

ex **Takushi de ikitai desu.** "(I) want to go by taxi."
The particle **ka** may be added to **-tai desu** to form a question ("do you want to ?"), although this type of question is often considered impolite, especially when directed at a social superior. To ask if someone wants to do something, it is safest to use the **-masu** form followed by **ka**, as in **Takushi de ikimasu ka** ("Do you [want to] go by taxi?").
NOTE: The particle **ga** is sometimes used instead of **o**.
ex **Wain o/ga nomitai desu.** "(I) want to drink wine."

BEING INTRODUCED TO SOMEONE

TARGET DIALOGUE

PAGE 92

The Greens are having a forma party at their house During the party, Mr Green ntroduces Mr Smith to his friend Mr Ogawa

グリーン：スミスさん、こちらは　おがわさんです。

おがわ　はじめまして、おがわです。よろしく　おねがいします。

スミス　ABC フーズの　スミスです。よろしく　おねがいします。

グリーン：おがわさん、わたしは　スミスさんと　まいしゅう　どようびに　テニスを　しています。スミスさんは　テニスが　とても　じょうずです。

おがわ：そうですか。わたしも　テニスが　すきです。

スミス　じゃ、こんしゅうの　どようびに　おがわさんも　いっしょに　テニスを　しませんか。

おがわ：ありがとうございます。ぜひ。

■ グリーンさんは　まいしゅう　どようびに　スミスさんと　テニスを　しています。こんしゅうの　どようびは　おがわさんも　いっしょに　テニスを　します。

Gurin: Sumisu-san, kochira wa Ogawa-san desu.
Ogawa: Hajimemashite, Ogawa desu. Yoroshiku onegaishimasu
Sumisu: ABC Fūzu no Sumisu desu. Yoroshiku onegaishimasu.
Gurin: Ogawa-san, watashi wa Sumisu-san to maishū do-yōbi ni tenisu o shite imasu. Sumisu-san wa tenisu ga totemo jōzu desu.
Ogawa: Sō desu ka. Watashi mo tenisu ga suki desu.
Sumisu: Ja, konshū no do-yōbi ni Ogawa-san mo issho ni tenisu o shimasen ka.
Ogawa: Arigatō gozaimasu. Zehi.

■ **Gurin-san wa maishū do-yōbi ni Sumisu-san to tenisu o shite imasu. Konshū no do-yōbi wa Ogawa-san mo issho ni tenisu o shimasu.**

Green: Mr Smith, this is Mr Ogawa
Ogawa: How do you do. I'm Ogawa. Pleased to meet you
Smith: I'm Smith from ABC Foods. Pleased to meet you
Green: Mr Ogawa, I play tennis with Mr Smith every Saturday He's very good at tennis
Ogawa: Is that so? I like tennis, too
Smith: Well, would you like to play tennis with us this Saturday, too?
Ogawa: Thank you. I'll definitely be there

■ Mr Green plays tennis with Mr Smith every Saturday This Saturday Mr Ogawa will play tennis with them

VOCABULARY

テニス	**tenisu**	tennis
じょうずです	**jōzu desu**	be skilled, be good at (-na adj.)

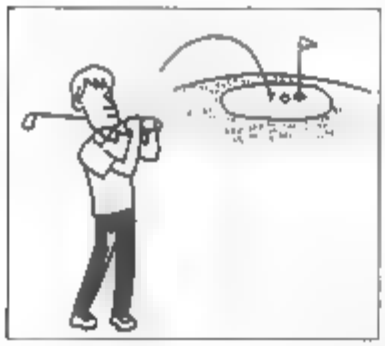
NOTES

1. **Sumisu-san wa tenisu ga totemo jōzu desu.**
   The adjective **jōzu desu** ("be skilled") is applied to another person. Japanese never use this word in reference to themselves or members of their families. Therefore, one does not usually ask . . . **ga jozu desu ka** ("are you good at . . . ?")

PRACTICE

WORD POWER

I



1 **jōzu desu**

2 **suki desu**

3 **wakarimasu**

II Sports.

1 **suki**

2 **sakkā**

3 **yakyū**

4. **suiei**

VOCABULARY

Jōzu desu	be skilled (-na adj.)	**sakkā**	soccer (see also p. 142)
suki desu	like (-na adj.)	**yakyū**	baseball
wakarimasu	understand	**suiei**	swimming
suki	skiing		

KEY SENTENCES

1. **Sumisu-san wa tenisu ga jōzu desu.**
2. **Takahashi-san wa kudamono ga suki desu.**
3. **Sumisu-san wa Nihon-go ga wakarimasu.**

1 Mr. Smith is good at tennis.
2 Mr. Takahashi likes fruit.
3 Mr. Smith understands Japanese.

EXERCISES

I *Practice conjugating verbs and adjectives.* Repeat the words below and memorize their forms—present and past, affirmative and negative.

		PRESENT FORM		PAST FORM	
		aff.	*neg.*	*aff.*	*neg.*
-NA ADJ.	be skilled	**jōzu desu**	**jōzu dewa arimasen**	**jōzu deshita**	**jōzu dewa arimasendeshita**
	like, love	**suki desu**	**suki dewa arimasen**	**suki deshita**	**suki dewa arimasendeshita**
VERB	understand	**wakarimasu**	**wakarimasen**	**wakarimashita**	**wakarimasen deshita**

II Make up sentences following the patterns of the examples. Substitute the underlined words with the words in parentheses.

A. *State what someone is skilled at.*

ex. **Nakamura-san wa gorufu ga jōzu desu.**

1. _____ (tenisu)
2. _____ (suki)
3. _____ (Eigo)

B. *State what someone likes.*

ex. **Nakamura-san wa kudamono ga suki desu.**

1. _____ (sukiyaki)
2. _____ (ryokō)
3. _____ (sakkā)

VOCABULARY **kudamono** fruit

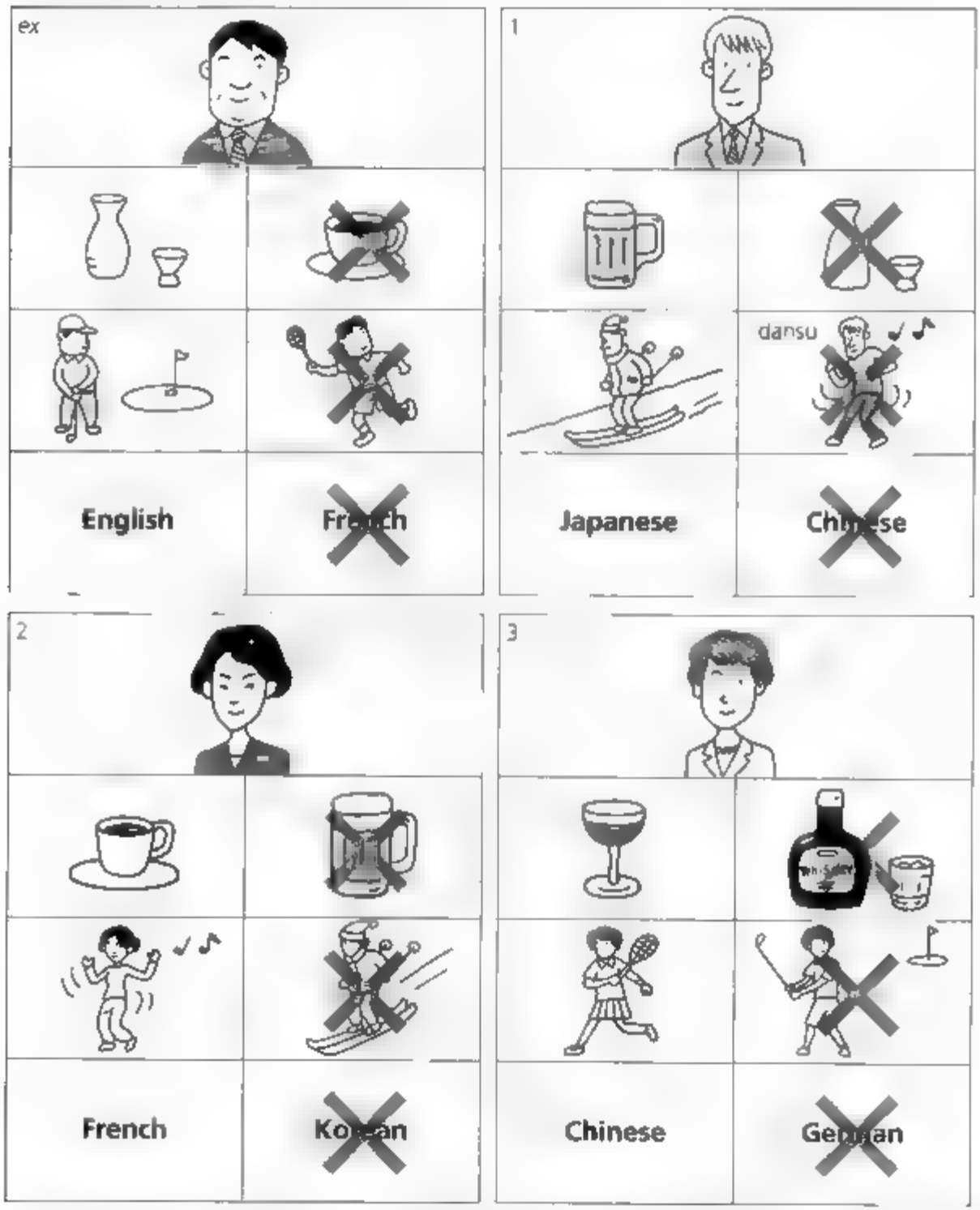
C *State what someone understands.*

ex. **Sumisu-san wa Nihon-go ga wakarimasu.**

1 _____ (Furansu-go)

2 _____ (kanji)

III Make up sentences or dialogues following the patterns of the examples and based on the information in the chart below



kanji	kanji, Chinese character(s)	**Kankoku-go**	Korean (language)
uisuki	whiskey	**Doitsu-go**	German (language)
dansu	dancing		
Chūgoku-go	Chinese (language)		

A. *State the things someone likes, is skilled at, and understands.*

ex. **Katō-san wa o-sake ga suki desu. Gorufu ga jōzu desu. Eigo ga wakarimasu.**

1

2

3

B. *State the things someone dislikes, is unskilled at, and does not understand.*

ex. **Katō-san wa kōhī ga suki dewa arimasen. Tenisu ga jōzu dewa arimasen. Furansu-go ga wakarimasen.**

1

2

3

C. *Ask and answer whether someone likes or understands something.*

ex. **Takahashi: Katō-san wa o-sake ga suki desu ka.**
Katō: Hai, suki desu.
Takahashi: Katō-san wa Furansu-go ga wakarimasu ka.
Katō: Iie, wakarimasen.

1. Takahashi: Sumisu-san wa bīru ga suki desu ka.

   Sumisu:

   Takahashi: Sumisu-san wa Nihon-go ga wakarimasu ka.

   Sumisu:

2. Takahashi: Chan-san wa kōhī ga suki desu ka.

   Chan:

   Takahashi: Chan-san wa Kankoku-go ga wakarimasu ka.

   Chan:

3. Takahashi: Sasaki-san wa urusuki ga suki desu ka.

   Sasaki:

   Takahashi: Sasaki-san wa Chūgoku-go ga wakarimasu ka.

   Sasaki:

D. *Ask and answer whether someone is skilled at something.*

ex. **Takahashi: Katō-san wa gorufu ga jōzu desu ka.**
Nakamura: Hai, jōzu desu.

1. Takahashi: Sumisu-san wa dansu ga jōzu desu ka.

   Nakamura:

2. Takahashi: Chan-san wa dansu ga jōzu desu ka.

   Nakamura: _____

3. Takahashi: Sasaki-san wa gorufu ga jōzu desu ka.

   Nakamura: _____

IV ***Ask for and provide detailed information about one's likes.*** Make up dialogues following the pattern of the example. Substitute the underlined words with the words in parentheses.

ex **Chan: Suzuki-san wa supōtsu ga suki desu ka.**
Suzuki: Hai, suki desu.
Chan: Donna supōtsu ga suki desu ka.
Suzuki: Sakkā ga suki desu.

1. Chan: _____ (kudamono)

   Suzuki: _____

   Chan: _____ (kudamono)

   Suzuki: _____ (ringo)

2. Chan: _____ (Itaria-ryōri)

   Suzuki: _____

   Chan: _____ (Itaria-ryōri)

   Suzuki: _____ (piza)

3. Chan: _____ (ongaku)

   Suzuki: _____

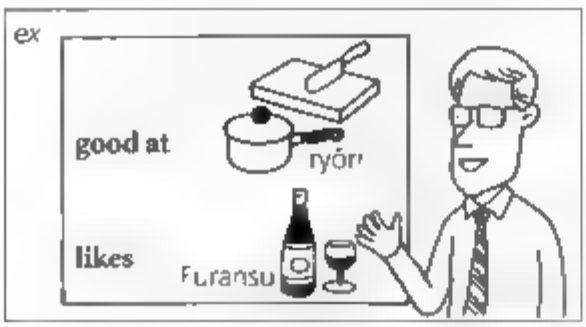
   Chan: _____ (ongaku)

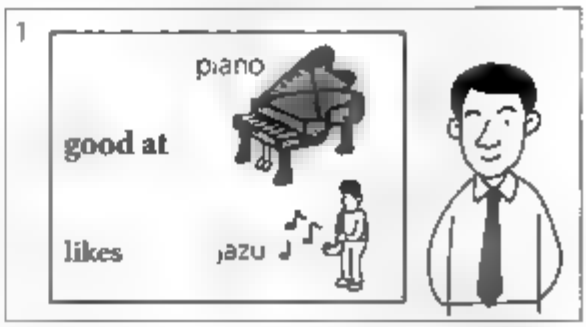
   Suzuki: _____ (jazu)

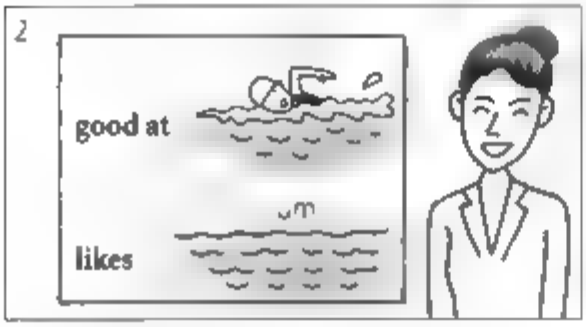
VOCABULARY

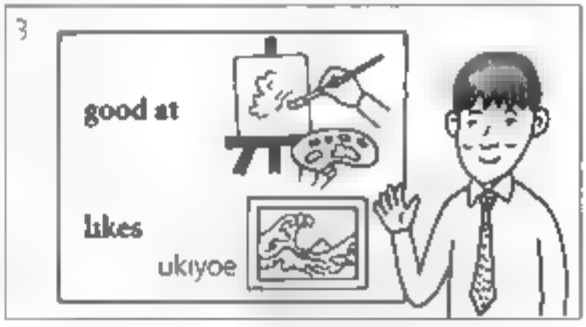
Itaria-ryōri	Italian food
Jazu	jazz

V ***Introduce a friend and give information about his or her likes.*** Complete the dialogues below following the pattern of the example and based on the information in the illustrations









ex **Takahashi: Chan-san, kochira wa Kāpentā-san desu.**
Kāpentā: Hajimemashite. Kāpentā desu. Yoroshiku onegaishimasu.
Takahashi: Kāpentā-san wa ryōri ga jōzu desu. Furansu no wain ga suki desu.

1 Takahashi: Chan-san, kochira wa Ochiai-san desu

Ochiai: Hajimemashite. Ochiai desu. Yoroshiku onegaishimasu.

Takahashi:

2. Takahashi: Chan-san, kochira wa Kojima-san desu.

Kojima: Hajimemashite. Kojima desu. Yoroshiku onegaishimasu.

Takahashi:

3. Takahashi: Chan-san, kochira wa Andō-san desu.

Andō: Hajimemashite. Andō desu. Yoroshiku onegaishimasu.

Takahashi:

VOCABULARY

piano	piano
umi	ocean, sea
Kāpentā	Carpenter (surname)
Ochiai	Ochiai (surname)

VI Make up dialogues following the patterns of the examples. Substitute the underlined words with the words in parentheses.

A *Talk about a mutual interest.*

ex. **Gurin: Do-yōbi ni Hakone ni itte gorufu o shimasu.**
Katō: Ii desu ne. Gurin-san wa gorufu ga suki desu ka.
Gurin: Ee, suki desu. Katō-san wa?
Katō: Watashi mo suki desu.
Gurin: Ja, kondo issho ni ikimasen ka.
Katō: Arigatō gozaimasu. Zehi.

1. Gurin: _____ (Tōkyō Sutajiamu, yakyū, mimasu)

   Katō: _____ (yakyū)

   Gurin: _____

   Katō: _____

   Gurin: _____

   Katō: _____

2. Gurin: _____ (Ginza, Furansu-ryōri, tabemasu)

   Katō: _____ (Furansu-ryōri)

   Gurin: _____

   Katō: _____

   Gurin: _____

   Katō: _____

B *Describe someone in detail.*

ex. **Suzuki: Sasaki-san, achira wa donata desu ka.**
Sasaki: JBP Japan no Ochiai-san desu. Ochiai-san wa Chūgoku ni sunde imashita kara, Chūgoku-go ga totemo jōzu desu.
Suzuki: Sō desu ka. Watashi wa raishū kara Chūgoku-go o naraimasu.
Sasaki: Ja, shōkaishimashō ka.
Suzuki: Ee, onegaishimasu.

1. Suzuki: _____

   Sasaki: _____ (Kāpentā-san, Furansu, Furansu-go)

   Suzuki: _____ (Furansu-go)

   Sasaki: _____

   Suzuki: _____

VOCABULARY

Tōkyō Sutajiamu	Tokyo Stadium (fictitious building name)	**shōkaishimasu**	introduce
Furansu-ryori	French food		
achira	that person over there		
naraimasu	learn, take lessons in		

2. Suzuki

Sasaki (Kojima-san, Kankoku, Kankoku-go)

Suzuki: ..... (Kankoku-go)

Sasaki:

Suzuki

VII. Listen to the CD and fill in the blank based on the information you hear

Chan-san wa ..... ga jōzu desu

SHORT DIALOGUE

Ms. Nakamura is interested in Mr. Ogawa

Nakamura: Gurin-san, achira wa donata desu ka.
Gurin: A, Ogawa-san desu. Tokidoki issho ni kendō no renshū o shimasu.
Nakamura: Sō desu ka. Sutekina hito desu ne.
Gurin: Shōkaishimashō ka.
Nakamura: Ee, onegaishimasu.

Nakamura: Mr. Green, who is that?
Green: Oh, that's Mr. Ogawa. We sometimes practice kendo together.
Nakamura: Is that so? He's a fine person, isn't he?
Green: Shall I introduce him to you?
Nakamura: Yes, please do.

VOCABULARY

kendō	kendo (a martial art in which the contestants fight with bamboo swords)
renshū o shimasu	practice
sutekina	fine, wonderful, lovely (-na adj.)

Active Communication

Imagine you are at a party. Introduce your friends or colleagues to one another and give details about their interests and skills.

LESSON 25 AT A PARTY

TARGET DIALOGUE

TRACK 96

Mrs. Green is serving food to Mr. Smith and Mr. Ogawa. Mr. Smith and Mr. Ogawa are eating Japanese food that Mrs. Green made.

スミス：おいしいですね。

おがわ　ほんとうに　おいしいですね。グリーンさんは　りょうりが　じょうずですね。

グリーン　ありがとうございます。まいしゅう　すいようびに　ぎんざの　クッキングスクールで　にほんりょうりを　ならっています。

スミス　わたしも　にほんりょうりを　ならいたいです。その　クッキングスクールは　どこに　ありますか。

グリーン：のぞみデパートの　となりに　あります。

■ グリーンさんは　まいしゅう　すいようびに　ぎんざの　クッキング　スクールで　にほんりょうりを　ならっています。

Sumisu: Oishii desu ne.
Ogawa: Hontō ni oishii desu ne. Gurin-san wa ryōri ga jōzu desu ne.
Gurin: Arigatō gozaimasu. Maishū sui-yōbi ni Ginza no kukkingu-sukūru de Nihon-ryōri o naratte imasu.
Sumisu: Watashi mo Nihon-ryōri o naraitai desu. Sono kukkingu-sukūru wa doko ni arimasu ka.
Gurin: Nozomi Depāto no tonari ni arimasu.

■ **Gurin-san wa maishū sui-yōbi ni Ginza no kukkingu-sukūru de Nihon-ryōri o naratte imasu.**

Smith: This is delicious, isn't it?
Ogawa: It really is delicious, isn't it? You are a good cook, Mrs. Green.
Green: Thank you. I take lessons in Japanese cuisine at a cooking school in Ginza every Wednesday.
Smith: I'd like to learn Japanese cuisine, too. Where is that cooking school?
Green: It's next door to Nozomi Department Store.

■ Mrs. Green takes lessons in Japanese cuisine at a cooking school in Ginza every Wednesday.

クッキングスクール	**kukkingu-sukūru**	cooking school
にほんりょうり	**Nihon-ryōri**	Japanese food
ならいたいです	**naraitai desu**	want to learn
その	**sono**	(see Note 1 below)

NOTES

1. **Sono kukkingu-sukūru**
   Sono here is in reference to what came up just before in the conversation

PRACTICE

WORD POWER

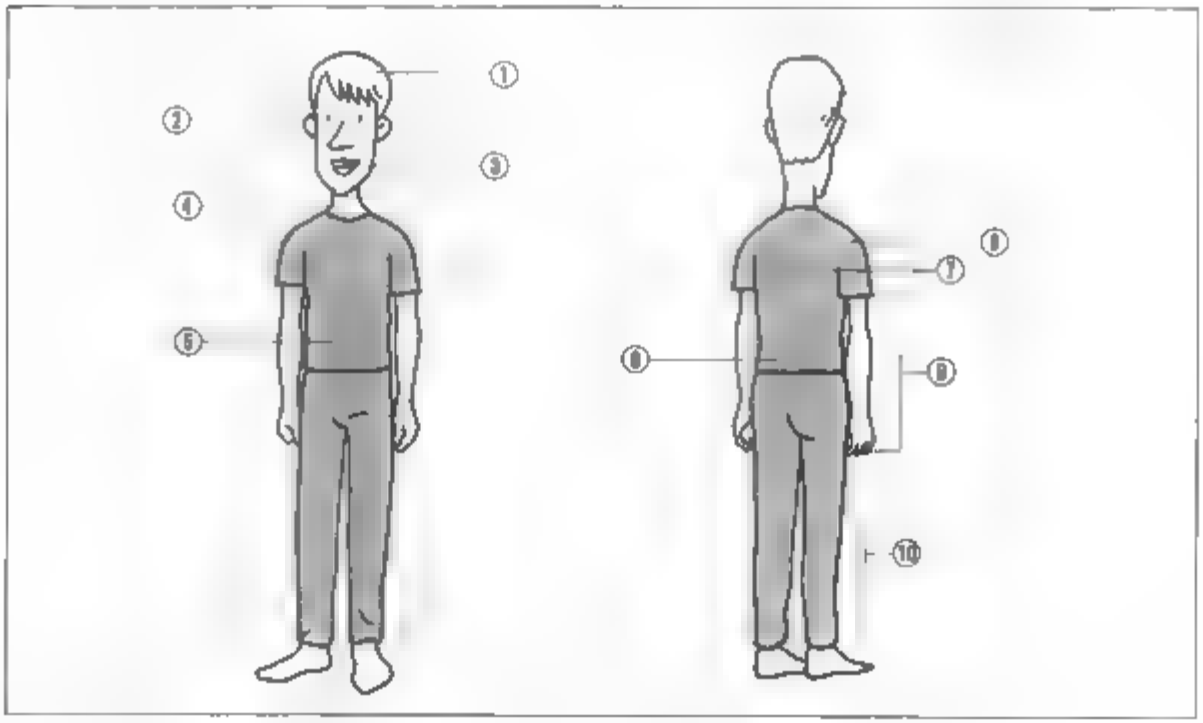
I. Hobbies

1 **jūdō**

2 **ikebana**

3 **o-cha**

II. Parts of the body



1 **atama**
2 **me**
3 **ha**
4 **nodo**
5 **onaka**
6 **kata**
7 **senaka**
8 **koshi**
9 **te**
10 **ashi**

← VOCABULARY

jūdō	judo	**me**	eye	**kata**	shoulder	**ashi**	leg, foot
ikebana	ikebana, flower arranging	**ha**	tooth	**senaka**	back		
o-cha	tea ceremony	**nodo**	throat	**koshi**	lower back		
atama	head	**onaka**	belly, stomach	**te**	hand, arm		

KEY SENTENCES

1. **Watashi wa onsen ni ikitai desu.**
2. **Watashi wa atama ga itai desu.**

1 I want to go to a spa.
2 I have a headache

EXERCISES

I *Practice conjugating verbs.* Repeat the **-tai** forms of the following verbs until you memorize them

	PRESENT FORM		PAST FORM	
	aff	*neg.*	*aff*	*neg*
want to learn	**naraitai desu**	**naraitakunai desu**	**naraitakatta desu**	**naraitakunakatta desu**
want to go	**ikitai desu**	**ikitakunai desu**	**ikitakatta desu**	**ikitakunakatta desu**

II *State what you want to do.* Change the sentences below as in the examples

ex **Watashi wa onsen ni ikimasu.** → **Watashi wa onsen ni ikitai desu.**
Watashi wa onsen ni ikimasen. → **Watashi wa onsen ni ikitakunai desu.**

1. Watashi wa terebi o mimasu. →
2. Watashi wa Takahashi-san ni aimasen. →
3. Watashi wa furui kagu o kaimasu. →
4. Watashi wa jūdō o naraimasen. →

VOCABULARY

Ikitai desu	want to go
itai desu	be painful, hurt
kagu	furniture

III Make up dialogues following the patterns of the examples. Substitute the underlined parts with the alternatives given, being careful to use the correct grammatical form.

A *Ask and answer where one wants to live.*

ex. **A: Shōrai donna tokoro ni sumitai desu ka.**
B: Umi no chikaku ni sumitai desu.

1 A. .....
B: ..... (atatakai tokoro)

2 A. .....
B. ..... (shizukana machi)

3 A. .....
B. ..... (Okinawa)

B *Ask for information.*

ex. **A: Nihon-go o naraitai desu. Ii gakkō o shitte imasu ka.**
B: Sumimasen, shirimasen.

1 A. ..... (onsen ni ikimasu, tokoro)
B. .....

2. A. ..... (ikebana o nara masu, kurasu)
B. .....

3. A: ..... (furui kagu o kaimasu, mise)
B. .....

IV *State which part of your body hurts.* Make up sentences following the pattern of the example. Substitute the underlined word with the words in parentheses.

ex. **Watashi wa atama ga itai desu.**

1. ..... (ha)

2. ..... (onaka)

VOCABULARY

shōrai	the future
atatakai	warm
machi	town
kurasu	class

V ***Tell a doctor one's symptoms.*** Make up dialogues following the pattern of the example and based on the information in the illustration

ex. **Isha: Dō shimashita ka.**
Chan: Kibun ga warui desu.

1 Isha

Chan

2 Isha

Chan

3. Isha

Chan

VI ***State what you do every week, and assuming the role of your listener, express envy and your own desire.*** Make up dialogues following the pattern of the example. Substitute the underlined parts with the alternatives given. Be sure to use the same grammatical forms as in the example.

ex. **A: Watashi wa maishū Nihon-go o naratte imasu.**
B: Ii desu ne. Watashi mo naraitai desu.

1 A: _____ _____ _____ (jogingu o shimasu)

B: _____ _____ _____ (shimasu)

2. A: _____ _____ _____ (o-cha o naraimasu)

B: _____ _____ _____ (naraimasu)

VOCABULARY

dō shimashita ka	what's the matter with you?
netsu	fever
38-do	38 degrees (Celsius)
-do	degree

VI. Make up dialogues following the patterns of the examples. Substitute the underlined parts with the alternatives given. Be sure to use the same grammatical forms as in the examples.

A. ***Give information.***

ex **Takahashi: Nichi-yôbi ni onsen ni ikimashita.**
Sumisu: Ii desu ne. Watashi mo ikitai desu.
Takahashi: Ii onsen o oshiemasho ka.
Sumisu: Ee, onegaishimasu.

1 Takahashi: ..... (tenisu o shimasu)

Sumisu: ..... (shimasu)

Takahashi: ..... (tenisu-kurabu)

Sumisu: .....

2 Takahashi: .....
(Kamakura ni itte, Nihon no furui kagu o kaimasu)

Sumisu: ..... (kaimasu)

Takahashi: ..... (mise)

Sumisu: .....

B. ***Explain why one did not go to a farewell party for a colleague.***

ex **Katô: Kinô Howaito-san no sôbetsukai ni ikimashita ka.**
Sumisu: Iie, Ikitakatta desu ga, atama ga itakatta desu kara, ikimasendeshita.
Katô: Sô desu ka. Zannen deshita ne.

1 Katô: .....

Sumisu: ..... (ha ga itakatta desu)

Katô: .....

2 Katô: .....

Sumisu: ..... (netsu ga arimashita)

Katô: .....

VIII. Listen to the CD and choose the correct answer based on the information you hear.

What kind of place does Mr. Smith want to live in?

a) shizukana machi b) ôkii machi c) chisai machi

SHORT DIALOGUE

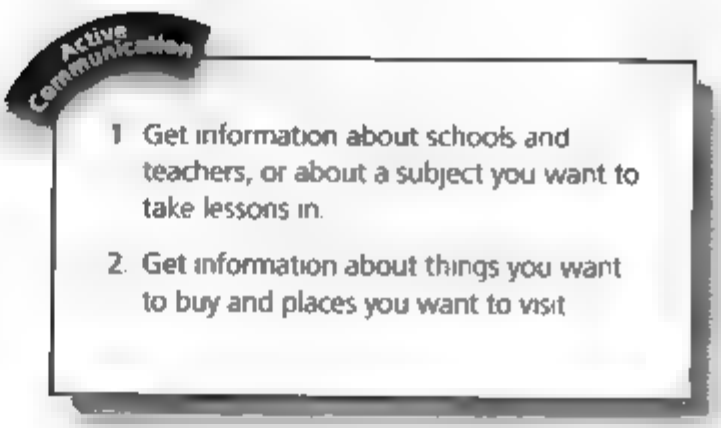
The party has come to an end.

Ogawa: **Nakamura-san, kuruma de kimashita ka.**
Nakamura: **Iie, densha de kimashita.**
Ogawa: **Osoi desu kara, watashi no kuruma de kaerimasen ka.**
Nakamura: **Arigatō gozaimasu.**
Ogawa: **Sumisu-san mo issho ni ikaga desu ka.**
Sumisu: **Arigatō gozaimasu. Onegaishimasu.**

Ogawa: Ms. Nakamura, did you come by car?
Nakamura: No, I came by train.
Ogawa: It's late, so wouldn't you like to go home in my car?
Nakamura: Thank you.
Ogawa: Mr. Smith, how about going home with us?
Smith: Thank you. I'd like that.

VOCABULARY

osoi desu be late



Quiz 5 (units 9–11)

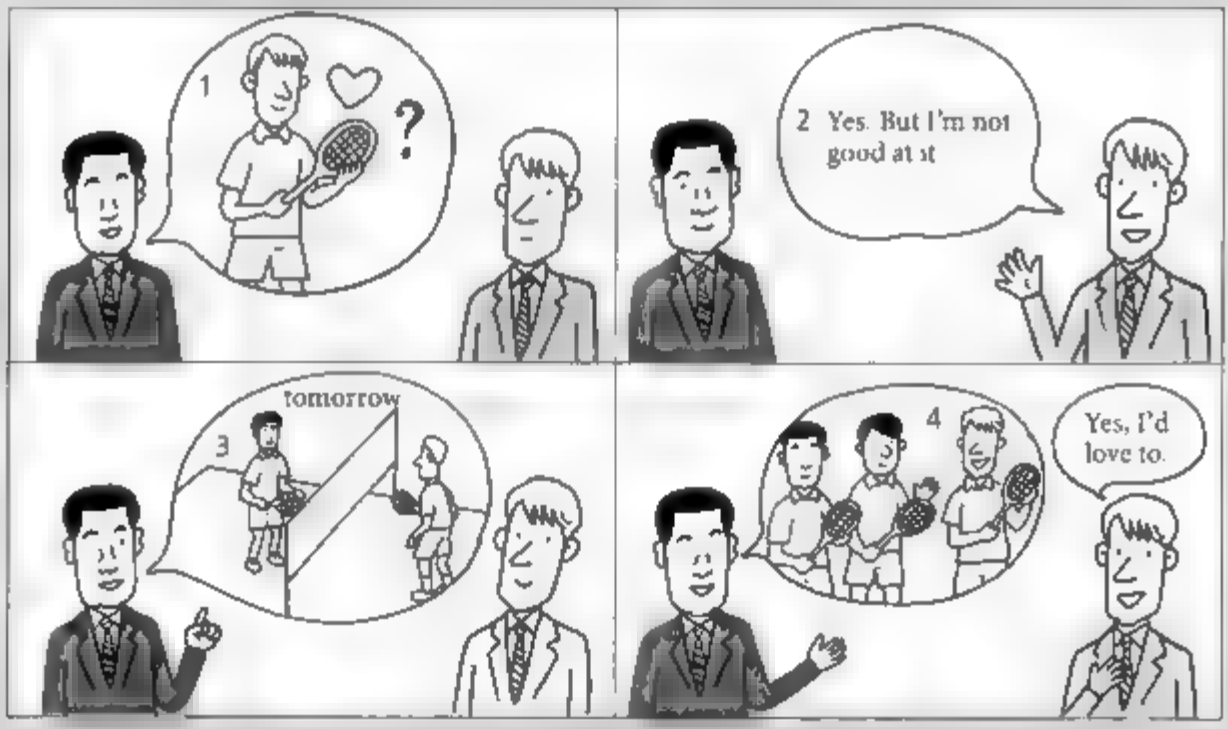
I Fill in the blank in each sentence with the appropriate particle. Where a particle is not needed, write in an *X*.

1. Sumisu-san wa gorufu ( ) jōzu desu.
2. Takahashi-san no otōsan wa ginkō ( ) tsutomete imasu.
3. Konsāto no kippu wa doko ( ) utte imasuka.
4. Dō shimashita ka.
   Atama ( ) itai desu.
5. Sumisu-san no okāsan wa Sanfuranshisuko ( ) sunde imasu.

II Choose the word that is appropriate in the context of the sentence.

1. Sumisu-san wa ima nani o shite imasu ka.
   Kaigishitsu de Takahashi-san to hanashi o (shimasu / shite imasu).
2. Takahashi-san no denwa-bangō o (shirimasu / shitte imasu) ka.
   Iie, (shirimasen / shitte imasen).
3. Watashi wa kinō pātī ni (ikitai desu / ikitakatta desu) ga, isogashikatta desu kara, ikimasen deshita.

III Look at the illustrations and complete the dialogue by filling in the blanks with the appropriate forms of the three words given in brackets. (You may use the same word more than once.)



[shimasu, jōzu desu, suki desu]

Takahashi: Sumisu-san wa tenisu ga (1.) ka.
Sumisu: Ee, demo amari (2.).
Takahashi: Ashita tomodachi to tenisu o (3.). Sumisu-san mo issho ni (4.) ka.
Sumisu: Ee, zehi.

APPENDIXES

A. Particles

Particles	Examples	Unit	Lesson
wa	1 Watashi wa Sumisu desu.	1	1
	2 Sumisu-san wa ashita Kyōto ni ikimasu.	3	6
	3 Nagoya de wa utte imasen.	10	23
	4 Konshū no Do-yōbi wa Ogawa-san mo issho ni tenisu o shimasu.	11	24
	5 "Shokora-shokora" wa Tōkyō no sūpa to kombini de utte imasu.	10	23
no	1 Nozomi Depāto no Tanaka desu.	1	1
	2 Watashi no meishi desu.	1	2
	3 Watashi no desu.	1	2
	4 Nihon no kuruma desu.	2	5
	5 Kyōto no shisha ni ikimashita.	3	6
	6 Tēburu no ue ni hana to shimbun ga arimasu.	4	8
	7 Raishū no Kin-yōbi ni Nihon ni kimasu.	3	7
	8 Kaigi no ato de Sapporo-shisha ni ikimasu.	8	17
	9 Tsugi no shingō o migi ni magatte kudasai.	8	18
	10 Tomodachi no Hofuman-san ni moraimashita.	6	13
	11 Watashi no sukina iro desu.	6	13
ka	1 Sumisu-san wa Amerika-jin desu ka.	1	1
	2 Bengoshi desu ka, enjinia desu ka.	1	1
	3 Donata desu ka.	1	2
	4 Sō desu ka.	2	3
kara	1 10-ji kara desu.	2	3
	2 10-ji kara 8-ji made desu.	2	3
	3 Honkon kara kimashita.	3	6
	4 Tōkyō kara Nikkō made densha de 1-jikan han kakarimasu.	9	19
	5 2-kai ni resutoran ga arimasu kara, resutoran de shokuji o shimasen ka.	7	15
made	1 8-ji made desu.	2	3
	2 10-ji kara 8-ji made desu.	2	3
	3 Kaisha made arukimasu.	9	19
	4 Tōkyō kara Nikkō made densha de 1-jikan han kakarimasu.	9	19
o	1 Sore o kudasai.	2	4
	2 Kabuki o mimasu.	5	10
	3 Benkyō o shimasu.	5	10
	4 Tsugi no shingō o migi ni magatte kudasai.	8	18
	5 Sumisu-san wa Shinjuku Eki de densha o orimasu.	9	19
mo	1 Are mo 3000-en desu.	2	4
	2 "Shokora-shokora" wa Nagoya de mo utte imasu ka.	10	23
	3 Sampuru no shashin mo okutte kudasai.	8	18
	4 Tēburu no ue ni nani mo arimasen.	4	8
de	1 Hitori de kimasu ka.	3	6
	2 Takushī de kimashita.	3	7
	3 Sumisu-san wa kinō resutoran de ban-gohan o tabemashita.	5	10
	4 Do-yōbi ni Asakusa de o-matsuri ga arimasu.	7	15

	5 Sumisu-san wa kinō pāti no ato de takushī de kaerimashita.	8	17
	6. Katarogu o sugu mēru de okutte kudasai.	8	18
to	1 Chan-san wa kinō tomodachi to resutoran ni ikimashita.	3	6
	2. Tēburu no ue ni shimbun to hana ga arimasu.	4	8
ga	1 Dono densha ga ikimasu ka.	3	6
	2 1-kai ni ginkō ga arimasu.	4	8
	3 Sumisu-san wa eigyō-bu ni ikimashita ga, Chan-san wa imasendeshita.	10	22
	4 Moshimoshi, Chan-desu ga, ohayō gozaimasu.	8	18
ni	1 Sumisu-san wa ashita ginkō ni/e ikimasu.	3	6
	2 Hikōki wa 10-ji han ni Sapporo ni tsukimasu.	9	19
	3 3-gatsu 26-nichi ni Igirisu kara kimashita.	3	7
	4 Uketsuke ni onna no hito ga imasu.	4	8
	5 Sumisu-san wa ashita tomodachi ni aimasu.	5	11
	6 Sumisu-san wa tomodachi ni denwa o shimasu.	5	11
	7 Chan-san wa Sumisu-san ni hana o moraimashita.	6	13
	8 Sumisu-san wa ABC Fūzu ni tsutomete imasu.	10	23
	9 Tanaka-san wa Yokohama ni sunde imasu.	10	23
ya	1 Kaban no naka ni kagi ya hon ga arimasu.	4	8
ne	1 Kaigi wa 3-ji kara desu ne.	3	6
yo	1 Nihon no supa desu yo.	4	8
. . . wa . . . ga			
	1 Sumisu-san wa eiga no kippu ga 2-mai arimasu.	7	16
	2 Tanaka-san wa kudamono ga suki desu.	11	24
	3 Watashi wa atama ga itai desu.	11	25
	4 Watashi wa wain o/ga nomitai desu.	11	25

B. Interrogatives

Interrogatives	Examples	Unit	Lesson
donata	Kochira wa donata desu ka.	1	1
dare no	Kore wa dare no kasa desu ka.	1	2
dare to	Sumisu-san wa dare to Nozomi Depāto ni ikimasu ka.	3	6
dare ga	Uketsuke ni dare ga imasu ka.	4	8
dare ni	Sumisu-san wa dare ni tegami o kakimasu ka.	5	11
	Dare ni aimashita ka.	5	11*
	Dare ni eiga no kippu o moraimashita ka.	6	13
nan	Kore wa nan desu ka.	1	2
nan-ban	Tanaka-san no denwa-bangō wa nan-ban desu ka.	1	2
nan-nin	Ginkō no mae ni otoko no hito ga nan-nin imasu ka.	4	9
nan-ji	Ima nan-ji desu ka.	2	3
nan-yōbi	O-matsuri wa nan-yōbi desu ka.	2	7

*This type of sentence does not appear in the lesson's exercises

nan-nichi	O-matsuri wa nan-nichi desu ka.	3	7
nan-gatsu	O-matsuri wa nan-gatsu desu ka.	3	7
nan de	Sumisu-san wa nan de Ōsaka ni ikimasu ka.	3	7
nani ga	1-kai ni nani ga arimasu ka.	4	8
nani o	Shūmatsu ni nani o shimasu ka.	5	10
itsu	Tanjōbi wa itsu desu ka.	3	7
	Tanaka-san wa itsu Ōsaka-shisha ni ikimasu ka.	3	6
ikaga	Okashi wa ikaga desu ka.	5	11
ikura	Sore wa ikura desu ka.	2	4
ikutsu	Tēburu no ue ni ringo ga ikutsu arimasu ka.	4	9
doko	Kōban wa doko desu ka.	4	9
doko no	Kore wa doko no pasokon desu ka.	2	5
doko ni	Sumisu-san wa ashita doko ni ikimasu ka.	3	6
	Sumisu-san wa doko ni imasu ka.	4	9
	Chūshajō wa doko ni arimasu ka.	4	9
	Sumisu-san wa doko ni tegami o kakimasu ka.	5	11
	Sumisu-san wa doko ni sunde imasu ka.	10	23
doko de	Katō-san wa doko de gorufu o shimashita ka.	5	10
dono	Dono basu ga ikimasu ka.	3	6
dore	Ano T-shatsu wa ikura desu ka. Dore desu ka.	2	5
donna	Nikkō wa donna tokoro desu ka.	6	12
	Donna supōtsu ga suki desu ka.	11	24
dō	Kinō no pāti wa dō deshita ka.	6	14
	Dō shimashita ka.	11	25
dōshite	Dōshite desu ka.	8	17
donogurai	Tanaka-san wa donogurai Nyūyōku ni imashita ka.	9	19
	Donogurai kakarimasu ka.	9	19
dōyatte	Sumisu-san wa dōyatte kaisha ni ikimasu ka.	9	19

C. Sentence Patterns

Sentence Patterns	Examples	Unit	Lesson
. . . wa . . . desu	1 (Watashi wa) Sumisu desu.	1	1
	2 Kore wa Hayashi-san no kasa desu.	1	2
	3 Shigoto wa 9-ji kara 5-ji made desu.	2	3
	4 Tanaka-san no uchi wa atarashii desu.	6	12
	5 Kore wa omoshiroi hon desu.	6	12

wa . ga desu	1	Tanaka-san wa kudamono ga suki desu.	11	24
	2	Watashi wa atama ga itai desu.	11	25
-tai desu	1	Watashi wa onsen ni ikitai desu.	11	25
ni . . . ga arimasu/imasu	1	1-kai ni ginkō ga arimasu.	4	8
	2	Uketsuke ni onna no hito ga imasu.	4	8
wa . ni arimasu/imasu	1	Takushī-noriba wa eki no chikaku ni arimasu.	4	9
	2	Sumisu-san wa 2-kai ni imasu.	4	9
. . . o kudasai	1	Sono ringo o futatsu kudasai.	2	5
. ni/e -masu	1	Sumisu-san wa ashita ginkō ni/e ikimasu.	3	6
. . . de . . o -masu	1	Sumisu-san wa kinō resutoran de ban-gohan o tabemashita.	5	10
ni o -masu	1	Chan-san wa yoku okāsan ni tegami o kakimasu.	5	11
	2	Chan-san wa Sumisu-san ni hana o moraimashita.	6	13
wa ga –masu	1	Sumisu-san wa eiga no kippu ga 2-mai arimasu.	7	16
	2	Sumisu-san wa Nihon-go ga wakarimasu.	11	24
de . . ga arimasu	1	Do-yōbi ni Asakusa de o-matsuri ga arimasu.	7	15
ni -masu	1	Sumisu-san wa Tōkyō Eki de densha ni norimasu.	9	19
o -masu	1	Sumisu-san wa Shinjuku Eki de densha o orimasu.	9	19
-masen ka	1	Shūmatsu ni issho ni eiga o mimasen ka.	7	15
	2	Nichi-yōbi ni uchi ni kimasen ka.	7	15
-mashō ka	1	Nani o tabemashō ka.	7	15
	2	Chizu o kakimashō ka.	7	15
-te, -masu	1	Sumisu-san wa kinō hon-ya ni itte, jisho o kaimashita.	8	17
-te imasu	1	Sumisu-san wa ima shimbun o yonde imasu.	10	22
	2	Tanaka-san wa Yokohama ni sunde imasu.	10	23
	3	Sumisu-san wa Satō-san o shitte imasu.	10	23
-te kudasai	1	Mō ichi-do itte kudasai.	8	18
-te mo ii desu ka	1	Kono pen o tsukatte mo ii desu ka.	9	20
-naide kudasai	1	Koko wa iriguchi desu kara, kuruma o tomenaide kudasai.	9	21

D. Adjectives

Included in the following list of adjectives are some (in gray) which do not appear in the text

-I adjectives

abunai	dangerous	ōi	many, much
akarui	bright	oishii	delicious
amai	sweet	ōkii	big
atarashii	new, fresh	omoi	heavy
atatakai	warm	omoshiroi	interesting
atsui	hot	osoi	slow, late

chiisai	small	**samui**	cold
chikai	near	**semai**	narrow
furui	old	**shiokarai**	salty
hayai	fast, early	**sukunai**	few, a little
hikui	low	**suppai**	sour
hirai	wide	**suzushii**	cool
ii	good, fine	**tadashii**	correct
isogashii	busy	**takai**	expensive, high
itai	painful	**tanoshii**	pleasant, enjoyable
karai	hot, spicy	**tōi**	far
karui	light	**tsumaranai**	boring
kitanai	dirty	**tsumetai**	cold
kurai	dark	**wakai**	young
mijikai	short	**warui**	bad
muzukashii	difficult	**yasashii**	easy
nagai	long	**yasui**	inexpensive

-na adjectives

anzenna	safe	**kirainna**	detestable
benrina	convenient	**kireina**	clean, pretty
dairjina	important	**nigiyakana**	lively
damena	no good	**shinsetsuna**	kind
fubenna	inconvenient	**shitsureina**	rude
fushinsetsuna	unkind	**shizukana**	quiet
genkina	well, healthy	**sukina**	favorite, likable
hetana	unskillful	**sutekina**	fine, wonderful, lovely
himana	free	**teineina**	polite
kōtōnai	various	**yūmeina**	famous
jōzuna	skillful		

Color Words

Below are words for colors. Those in gray are not introduced in this text.

akai	red	**kuroi**	black
aoi	blue, green	**midoriiro no***	green
chairoi, chairo no*	brown	**murasaki no***	purple
kiiroi, kiiro no*	yellow	**shiroi**	white

*These words are nouns followed by the particle **no**.

E. Verb Conjugation

The conjugations of Japanese verbs fall into the following three categories:

Regular I: Five-vowel conjugation

Regular II: Single-vowel conjugation

Irregular: There are only two irregular verbs: **kimasu** and **shimasu**. See Irregular Verbs, p. 246.

Regular I verbs are conjugated according to the Japanese vowel order: **a, i, u, e, o**. Regular II verbs are based on the vowels **-i** and **-e** only. From the **-nai** form it can be seen whether a verb is Regular I or Regular II. If the vowel preceding **-nai** is **-a**, the verb is Regular I. If it is **-i** or **-e**, the verb is Regular II. The chart below shows the conjugations of the verbs **kakimasu** ("write") and **tabemasu** ("eat").

	REGULAR I	REGULAR II
-nai form	**kaka-nai**	**tabe-nai**
-masu form	**kaki-masu**	**tabe-masu**
dictionary form	**kaku**	**taberu**
conditional form	**kaka-ba**	**tabere-ba**
volitional form	**ka-kō**	**tabeyō**

-te form	[illegible]	**tabete**
-ta form	**kaita**	**tabeta**

Of the seven forms above, this book introduces the **-nai**, **-masu** and **-te** forms, the dictionary, conditional, volitional, and **-ta** forms are discussed in books II and III of this series.

Note that the dictionary form—so called because it is the form listed in dictionaries—can be used at the end of a sentence instead of the **-masu** form. Likewise, the **-nai** form can be used at the end of a sentence instead of **-masen**. However, these forms are less polite than **-masu** and **-masen**.

For reference, the following are the **-masu**, **-te**, **-nai**, dictionary, and **-ta** forms of typical Regular I, Regular II, and Irregular verbs. Some of the verbs listed (in gray) are not introduced in this book.

REGULAR I VERBS					
-masu	**-te**	**-nai**	dictionary	**-ta**	meaning
aimasu	atte	awanai	au	atta	meet
arimasu	atte	nai	aru	atta	be, exist, have
arukimasu	aruite	arukanai	aruku	aruita	walk
azukarimasu	azukatte	azukaranai	azukaru	azukatta	take care of, look after
chigaimasu	chigatte	chigawanai	chigau	chigatta	be wrong
gambarimasu	gambatte	gambaranai	gambaru	gambatta	do one's best
hairimasu	haitte	hairanai	hairu	haitta	enter
iimasu	itte	iwanai	iu	itta	say
ikimasu	itte	ikanai	iku	itta	go
itadakimasu	itadaite	itadakanai	itadaku	itadaita	accept
kaerimasu	kaette	kaeranai	kaeru	kaetta	return, go home
kaimasu	katte	kawanai	kau	katta	buy
kakarimasu	kakatte	kakaranai	kakaru	kakatta	(it) takes
kakimasu	kaite	kakanai	kaku	kaita	write
kashimasu	kashite	kasanai	kasu	kashita	lend
katsugimasu	katsuide	katsuganai	katsugu	katsuida	carry (on one's shoulders)
keshimasu	keshite	kesanai	kesu	keshita	turn off
kikimasu	kiite	kikanai	kiku	kiita	listen (to), ask
komimasu	konde	komanai	komu	konda	be crowded
machimasu	matte	matanai	matsu	matta	wait
magarimasu	magatte	magaranai	magaru	magatta	turn
mochimasu	motte	motanai	motsu	motta	have, hold
moraimasu	moratte	morawanai	morau	moratta	receive
naraimasu	naratte	narawanai	narau	naratta	learn
niaimasu	niatte	niawanai	niau	niatta	suit, look good on
nomimasu	nonde	nomanai	nomu	nonda	drink
norimasu	notte	noranai	noru	notta	ride, get on
okimasu	oite	okanai	oku	oita	put, place
okurimasu	okutte	okuranai	okuru	okutta	send
oshimasu	oshite	osanai	osu	oshita	push
owarimasu	owatte	owaranai	owaru	owatta	finish
shirimasu*	shitte	shiranai	shiru	shitta	know
suimasu	sutte	suwanai	suu	sutta	smoke (cigarettes)
sumimasu	sunde	sumanai	sumu	sunda	live
tachimasu	tatte	tatanai	tatsu	tatta	stand up
torimasu	totte	toranai	toru	totta	take (a picture)
tsukaimasu	tsukatte	tsukawanai	tsukau	tsukatta	use
tsukimasu	tsuite	tsukanai	tsuku	tsuita	arrive

*This form is hardly ever used. Instead, **shitte imasu** (the **-te** form) is used.

tsukurimasu	tsukutte	tsukuranai	tsukuru	tsukutta	make
urimasu	utte	uranai	uru	utta	sel
wakarimasu	wakatte	wakaranai	wakaru	wakatta	understand
yobimasu	yonde	yobana	yobu	yonda	invite, call, summon
yomimasu	yonde	yomanai	yomu	yonda	read

REGULAR II VERBS					
-masu	**-te**	**-nai**	dictionary	**-ta**	meaning
agemasu	agete	agenai	ageru	ageta	give
akemasu	akete	akenai	akeru	aketa	open
demasu	dete	denai	deru	deta	leave
imasu	ite	inai	iru	ita	be
iremasu	irete	irenai	ireru	ireta	put in/into
mimasu	mite	minai	miru	mita	see
misemasu	misete	misenai	miseru	miseta	show
orimasu	orite	orinai	oriru	orita	get off
oshiemasu	oshiete	oshienai	oshieru	oshieta	tell
shimemasu	shimete	shimenai	shimeru	shimeta	close
tabemasu	tabete	tabenai	taberu	tabeta	eat
todokemasu	todokete	todokenai	todokeru	todoketa	deliver
tomemasu	tomete	tomenai	tomeru	tometa	stop, park
tsukemasu	tsukete	tsukenai	tsukeru	tsuketa	turn on
(ki o) tsukemasu	tsukete	tsukenai	tsukeru	tsuketa	be careful
tsutomemasu	tsutomete	tsutomenai	tsutomeru	tsutometa	work for

IREGULAR VERBS					
-masu	**-te**	**-nai**	dictionary	**-ta**	meaning
kimasu	kite	konai	kuru	kita	come
mottekimasu	mottekite	mottekonai	mottekuru	mottekita	bring
shimasu	shite	shinai	suru	shita	do
shitsureishimasu	shitsureishite	shitsureishinai	shitsureisuru	shitsureishita	be rude
shōkaishimasu	shōkaishite	shōkaishinai	shōkaisuru	shōkaishita	introduce

The verb **shimasu** ("do") follows various nouns, sometimes with and sometimes without the particle **o**, to express a variety of meanings. Below is a sampling of "noun **o shimasu**" combinations. The words in gray are not introduced in this text.

benkyō o shimasu	study
denwa o shimasu	telephone
doraibu o shimasu	go for a drive
gorufu o shimasu	play golf
hanashi o shimasu	talk
jogingu o shimasu	jog
kaigi o shimasu	have a meeting
kaimono o shimasu	shop
kopi o shimasu	make a copy
pāti o shimasu	give a party
renshū o shimasu	practice
ryokō o shimasu	take a trip
sampo o shimasu	go for a walk
setsumei o shimasu	explain
shigoto o shimasu	work
shokuji o shimasu	have a mea
shutchō o shimasu	go on a business trip
sōbetsukai o shimasu	give a farewell party
sōji o shimasu	clean
suki o shimasu	ski
supōtsu o shimasu	play sports
tenisu o shimasu	play tennis
unten o shimasu	drive
yoyaku o shimasu	make a reservation

F. Ko-so-a-do Words

	ko-words	so-words	a-words	do-words
direction	**kochira** here, this way	**sochira** there, that way	**achira** over there	**dochira** where
people	**kochira** this person	**sochira** that person	**achira** that person over there	**donata, dare** who
thing	**kore** this	**sore** that	**are** that over there	**dore** which
place	**koko** here	**soko** there	**asoko** over there	**doko** where
demonstrative	**kono kamera** this camera	**sono kamera** that camera	**ano kamera** that camera over there	**dono kamera** which camera

G. Countries, Nationalities and Languages

	Country	Nationality	Language
Australia	**Ōsutoraria**	**Ōsutoraria-jin**	**Eigo**
Brazil	**Burajiru**	**Burajiru-jin**	**Porutogaru-go**
Canada	**Kanada**	**Kanada-jin**	**Eigo/Furansu-go**
China	**Chūgoku**	**Chūgoku-jin**	**Chūgoku-go**
Egypt	**Ejiputo**	**Ejiputo-jin**	**Arabia-go**
France	**Furansu**	**Furansu-jin**	**Furansu-go**
Germany	**Doitsu**	**Doitsu-jin**	**Doitsu-go**
Indonesia	**Indoneshia**	**Indoneshia-jin**	**Indoneshia-go**
Italy	**Itaria**	**Itaria-jin**	**Itaria-go**
Japan	**Nihon**	**Nihon-jin**	**Nihon-go**
New Zealand	**Nyūjirando**	**Nyūjirando-jin**	**Eigo**
Russia	**Roshia**	**Roshia-jin**	**Roshia-go**
Spain	**Supein**	**Supein-jin**	**Supein-go**
Switzerland	**Suisu**	**Suisu-jin**	**Doitsu-go/Furansu-go/Itaria-go**
Thailand	**Tai**	**Tai-jin**	**Tai-go**
United Kingdom	**Igirisu**	**Igirisu-jin**	**Eigo**
United States	**Amerika**	**Amerika-jin**	**Eigo**

H. Counters

The abstract numbers (**ichi, ni, san**) are given on p. 10 (0–10), p. 23 (10–30; 40, 50, ...) and p. 30 (100, 200 ...). (For an explanation of very large numbers, see Note 2, p. 29.) The **hitotsu, futatsu, mittsu** system is explained on p. 38 and given in full on p. 39, along with examples of two counters, **-mai** and **-hon**. Below are other counters used in this book.

Floors of a house or building: **-kai**

ikkai	1st floor	**go-kai**	5th floor	**kyū-kai**	9th floor
ni-kai	2nd floor	**rokkai**	6th floor	**jukkai**	10th floor
san-gai	3rd floor	**nana-kai**	7th floor	**jūikkai**	11th floor
yon-kai	4th floor	**hachi-kai**	8th floor	**jūni-kai**	12th floor

nan-kai/nan-gai how many floors, which floor

Also: **chika ikkai**, (1st) basement floor (of several), **chika ni-kai**, 2nd basement floor, etc.

Liquid measure (cupful, glassful): **-hai/-bai/-pai**

Ippai	1 cupful	**go-hai**	5 cupfuls	**kyū-hai**	9 cupful
ni-hai	2 cupfuls	**roppai**	6 cupfuls	**juppai**	10 cupfuls
sam-bai	3 cupfuls	**nana-hai**	7 cupfuls	**jūippai**	11 cupfuls
yon-hai	4 cupfuls	**happai**	8 cupfuls	**jūni-hai**	12 cupfuls

nan-bai how many cups/glasses

People **-nin**

hitori	1 person	**roku-nin**	6 people	**kyū-nin**	9 people
futari	2 people	**shichi-nin**	7 people	**ku-nin**	//
san-nin	3 people	**nana-nin**	//	**jū-nin**	10 people
yo-nin	4 people	**hachi-nin**	8 people	**jūichi-nin**	11 people
go-nin	5 people			**jūni-nin**	12 people

nan-nin how many people

Times **-kai, -do**

ikkai, ichi-do	once	**nana-kai, nana-do**	7 times
ni-kai, ni-do	twice	**hachi-kai, hachi-do**	8 times
san-kai, san-do	3 times	**kyū-kai, kyū-do**	9 times
yon-kai, yon-do	4 times	**jukkai, jū-do**	10 times
go-kai, go-do	5 times	**jūikkai, jūichi-do**	11 times
rokkai, roku-do	6 times	**jūni-kai, jūni-do**	12 times

nan-kai how many times
nan-do how many times/degrees

NOTE: Generally speaking, **-kai** and **-do** may be used interchangeably

I. Extent, Frequency, Quantity

Extent

100%	**totemo**	very, extremely
	amari . . . -nai/-masen	not very
0%	**zenzen . . . -nai/-masen**	not at all

ex. **Kono nomimono wa totemo oishii desu.** "This drink is very good."
Kono nomimono wa amari oishikunai desu. "This drink is not very good."
Kono nomimono wa zenzen oishikunai desu. "This drink is not good at all."

Frequency

100%	**itsumo**	always
	yoku	often
	tokidoki	sometimes
	tamani	occasionally
	amari . . . -masen	not very often
0%	**zenzen . . . -masen**	never

ex. **Ban-gohan no ato de itsumo terebi o mimasu.** "(I) always watch TV after dinner."
Ban-gohan no ato de yoku terebi o mimasu. "(I) often watch TV after dinner."
Ban-gohan no ato de tokidoki terebi o mimasu. "(I) sometimes watch TV after dinner."
Ban-gohan no ato de tamani terebi o mimasu. "(I) occasionally watch TV after dinner."
Ban-gohan no ato de amari terebi o mimasen. "(I) don't often watch TV after dinner."
Ban-gohan no ato de zenzen terebi o mimasen. "(I) never watch TV after dinner."

Quantity

100%	**takusan**	a lot, many
	sukoshi	a few, a little
	amari . . . -masen	not much/many
0%	**zenzen . . . -masen**	none at all

ex **Uchi no chikaku ni mise ga takusan arimasu.** "There are a lot of stores near my house."
Uchi no chikaku ni mise ga sukoshi arimasu. "There are a few stores near my house."
Uchi no chikaku ni mise ga amari arimasen. "There aren't many stores near my house."
Uchi no chikaku ni mise ga zenzen arimasen. "There are no stores near my house."

J. Time Expressions

Every **mai-**

maiasa	every morning	**maishû**	every week
maiban	every evening, every night	**maitsuki/maigetsu**	every month
mainichi	every day	**mainen/maitoshi**	every year

Periods

Minutes, **-fun/-pun**

Ippun (kan)	(for) 1 minute	**happun (kan)**	(for) 8 minutes
ni-fun (kan)	(for) 2 minutes	**hachi-fun (kan)**	〃
sam-pun (kan)	(for) 3 minutes	**kyû-fun (kan)**	(for) 9 minutes
yom-pun (kan)	(for) 4 minutes	**juppun (kan)**	(for) 10 minutes
go-fun (kan)	(for) 5 minutes	**jûippun (kan)**	(for) 11 minutes
roppun (kan)	(for) 6 minutes	**jûni-fun (kan)**	(for) 12 minutes
nana-fun (kan)	(for) 7 minutes		
nan-pun (kan)	how many minutes		

Hours **-jikan**

Ichi-jikan	(for) 1 hour	**nana-jikan**	(for) 7 hours
ni-jikan	(for) 2 hours	**shichi-jikan**	〃
san-jikan	(for) 3 hours	**hachi-jikan**	(for) 8 hours
yo-jikan	(for) 4 hours	**ku-jikan**	(for) 9 hours
go-jikan	(for) 5 hours	**jû-jikan**	(for) 10 hours
roku-jikan	(for) 6 hours	**jûichi-jikan**	(for) 11 hours
		jûni-jikan	(for) 12 hours
nan-jikan	how many hours		

Days **-nichi (kan)**

Ichi-nichi	(for) 1 day	**nanoka (kan)**	(for) 7 days
futsuka (kan)	(for) 2 days	**yôka (kan)**	(for) 8 days
mikka (kan)	(for) 3 days	**kokonoka (kan)**	(for) 9 days
yokka (kan)	(for) 4 days	**tôka (kan)**	(for) 10 days
itsuka (kan)	(for) 5 days	**jûichi-nichi (kan)**	(for) 11 days
muika (kan)	(for) 6 days	**jûni-nichi (kan)**	(for) 12 days
nan-nichi (kan)	how many days		

Weeks -shūkan

isshūkan	(for) 1 week	**nana-shūkan**	(for) 7 weeks
ni-shūkan	(for) 2 weeks	**hasshūkan**	(for) 8 weeks
san-shūkan	(for) 3 weeks	**kyū-shūkan**	(for) 9 weeks
yon-shūkan	(for) 4 weeks	**jusshūkan**	(for) 10 weeks
go-shūkan	(for) 5 weeks	**jūisshūkan**	(for) 11 weeks
roku-shūkan	(for) 6 weeks	**jūni-shūkan**	(for) 12 weeks
nan-shūkan	how many weeks		

Months -kagetsu (kan)

ikkagetsu (kan)	(for) 1 month	**nana-kagetsu (kan)**	(for) 7 months
ni-kagetsu (kan)	(for) 2 months	**hakkagetsu (kan)**	(for) 8 months
san-kagetsu (kan)	(for) 3 months	**kyū-kagetsu (kan)**	(for) 9 months
yon-kagetsu (kan)	(for) 4 months	**jukkagetsu (kan)**	(for) 10 months
go-kagetsu (kan)	(for) 5 months	**jūikkagetsu (kan)**	(for) 11 months
rokkagetsu (kan)	(for) 6 months	**jūni-kagetsu (kan)**	(for) 12 months
nan-kagetsu (kan)	how many months		

Years -nen (kan)

ichi-nen (kan)	(for) 1 year	**shichi-nen (kan)**	(for) 7 years
ni-nen (kan)	(for) 2 years	**hachi-nen (kan)**	(for) 8 years
san-nen (kan)	(for) 3 years	**kyū-nen (kan)**	(for) 9 years
yo-nen (kan)	(for) 4 years	**jū-nen (kan)**	(for) 10 years
go-nen (kan)	(for) 5 years	**jūichi-nen (kan)**	(for) 11 years
roku-nen (kan)	(for) 6 years	**jūni-nen (kan)**	(for) 12 years
nana-nen (kan)	(for) 7 years		
nan-nen (kan)	how many years		

NOTE: Except for with **-jikan** and **-shūkan** the suffix **-kan** may be considered optional and need be added only when specificity is called for

Relative Time

Day

ototoi	day before yesterday
kinō	yesterday
kyō	today
ashita	tomorrow
asatte	day after tomorrow

Month

sensengetsu	month before last
sengetsu	last month
kongetsu	this month
raigetsu	next month
saraigetsu	month after next

Morning

ototoi no asa	morning before last
kinō no asa	yesterday morning
kesa	this morning
ashita no asa	tomorrow morning
asatte no asa	morning of the day after tomorrow

Evening

ototoi no ban/yoru	evening/night before last
kinō no ban/yoru	yesterday evening/night
komban	this evening
ashita no ban/yoru	tomorrow evening/night
asatte no ban/yoru	evening/night of the day after tomorrow

Week

sensenshū	week before last
senshū	last week
konshū	this week
raishū	next week
saraishū	week after next

Year

ototoshi	year before last
kyonen	last year
kotoshi	this year
rainen	next year
sarainen	year after next

Seasons

haru	spring	**aki**	autumn
natsu	summer	**fuyu**	winter

ANSWERS TO SELECTED EXERCISES AND QUIZZES

UNIT 1

Lesson 1

V. bengoshi

Lesson 2

II. A. 1 A: Kore wa hon desu ka. B: Hai, hon desu. 2 A: Kore wa kasa desu ka. B: Hai, kasa desu. 3 A: Kore wa tokei desu ka. B: Hai, tokei desu.

B. 1 B: Iie, kasa dewa arimasen. 2 B: Iie, tokei dewa arimasen. 3 B: Iie, kagi dewa arimasen.

III. 1 A: Kore wa nan desu ka. B: Kagi desu. 2 A: Kore wa nan desu ka. B: Tokei desu. 3 A: Kore wa nan desu ka. B: Keitai desu.

IV. 1 Kore wa Nakamura-san no kasa desu. 2 Kore wa Katō-san no tokei desu. 3 Kore wa Sasaki-san no kagi desu.

V. A. 1 A: Kore wa Sumisu-san no hon desu ka. B: Hai, Sumisu-san no desu. 2 A: Kore wa Nakamura-san no kagi desu ka. B: Hai, Nakamura-san no desu. 3 A: Kore wa Chan-san no keitai desu ka. B: Hai, Chan-san no desu.

B. 1 B: Iie, Sasaki-san no dewa arimasen. 2 B: Iie, Chan-san no dewa arimasen. 3 B: Iie, Sumisu-san no dewa arimasen.

C. 1 A: Kore wa dare no hon desu ka. B: Sumisu-san no desu. 2 A: Kore wa dare no kagi desu ka. B: Nakamura-san no desu. 3 A: Kore wa dare no keitai desu ka. B: Chan-san no desu.

VI. A. 1 Sasaki-san no denwa-bangō wa zero-san no san-ni-kyū-hachi no nana-nana-yon-hachi desu. 2 Taishikan no denwa-bangō wa zero-san no san-ni-ni-go no ichi-ichi-ichi-roku desu. 3 Ginkō no denwa-bangō wa zero-san no go-roku-kyū-zero no san-ichi-ichi-ichi desu. 4 Takahashi-san no denwa-bangō wa zero-san no san-yon-go-kyū no kyū-roku-ni-zero desu.

B. 1 A: Sasaki-san no denwa-bangō wa nan-ban desu ka. B: Zero-san no san-ni-kyū-hachi no nana-nana-yon-hachi desu. 2 A: Taishikan no denwa-bangō wa nan-ban desu ka. B: Zero-san no san-ni-ni-go no ichi-ichi-ichi-roku desu. 3 A: Ginkō no denwa-bangō wa nan-ban desu ka. B: Zero-san no go-roku-kyū-zero no san-ichi-ichi-ichi desu. 4 A: Takahashi-san no denwa-bangō wa nan-ban desu ka. B: Zero-san no san-yon-go-kyū no kyū-roku-ni-zero desu.

VIII. Zero-san no san-yon-go-kyū no kyū-roku-roku-zero

UNIT 2

Lesson 3

I. 1. 4-ji. 2. 9-ji. 3. 7-ji 15-fun. 4. 10-ji 20-pun. 5. 6-ji han.

II. 1 A: Ima nan-ji desu ka. B: 4-ji desu. 2 A: Ima nan-ji desu ka. B: 9-ji desu. 3 A: Ima nan-ji desu ka. B: 7-ji 15-fun desu. 4. A: Ima nan-ji desu ka. B: 10-ji 20-pun desu. 5 A: Ima nan-ji desu ka. B: 6-ji han desu.

VI. 7-ji han

Lesson 4

I. 1 hachijū-en. 2 hyaku-en. 3 hyaku-nijū-en. 4 sambyaku-en. 5 happyaku-rokujū-en. 6 sen-nihyaku-en. 7 sanzen-en. 8. yonsen-happyaku-en. 9 ichiman-nanasen-en. 10 samman-kyusen-en.

IV. 1 A: Sore wa ikura desu ka. 2 A: Are wa ikura desu ka. 3 A: Kore wa ikura desu ka. 4 A: Sore wa ikura desu ka. 5. A: Are wa ikura desu ka.

IX. 38,000

Lesson 5

II. 1 A: Sono kuroi kamera wa ikura desu ka. B: 20,000-en desu. 2 A: Kono aoi kamera wa ikura desu ka. B: 13,000-en desu. 3 A: Ano ōki terebi wa ikura desu ka. B: 80,000-en desu. 4 A: Sono chiisai terebi wa ikura desu ka. B: 30,000-en desu.

V. 1 Sumisu: Sono biru o 3-bon kudasai. 2 Sumisu: Sono ōki ringo o yottsu kudasai. 3 Sumisu: Sono aoi T-shatsu o 2-mai kudasai. 4. Sumisu: Sono mikan o 2-kiro kudasai.

VII. 1 b) 2 a)

QUIZ 1 UNITS 1–2

I. 1. wa 2. no 3. ka, ka 4. no, no 5. kara, made 6. wa, mo 7. o, X 8. no, no

II. 1. Doitsu-jin 2. nan 3. Takahashi-san, Dare 4. nan-ban 5. nan-ji, nan-ji 6. ikura 7. doko

UNIT 3

Lesson 6

VIII. 1. Sumisu-san wa raishū Sasaki-san to Ōsaka-shisha ni ikimasu. 2. Sumisu-san wa ashita dare to Honkon ni ikimasu ka. 3. Sumisu-san wa asatte uchi ni kaerimasu. 4. Sumisu-san wa kinō tomodachi to Ginza no depāto ni ikimashita. 5. Sumisu-san wa sengetsu Suzuki-san to doko ni ikimashita ka.

X. tomodachi, depāto

Lesson 7

VII. 1. Sumisu-san wa asatte basu de depāto ni ikimasu. 2. Sumisu-san wa 2000-nen ni Takahashi-san to shinkansen de Kyōto ni ikimashita. 3. Sumisu-san wa 7-gatsu 15-nichi ni chikatetsu de taishikan ni ikimasu/ikimashita. 4. Sumisu-san wa ashita aruite tomodachi no uchi ni ikimasu.

VIII. 1. Sumisu-san wa sui-yōbi ni hitori de hikōki de Ōsaka-shisha ni ikimasu. 2. Sumisu-san wa kin-yōbi no 12-ji ni hisho to resutoran ni ikimasu. 4-ji ni Sasaki-san to Yokohama-shisha ni ikimasu. 6-ji ni Amerika Taishikan ni ikimasu. 3. Sumisu-san wa nichi-yōbi no gozen 9-ji ni tomodachi to kōen ni ikimasu. Gogo 7-ji ni Suzuki-san to tomodachi no uchi ni ikimasu.

X. 1. b) 2. c) [hikōki]

UNIT 4

Lesson 8

VI. 1. 3-gai ni resutoran ga arimasu. 2. 1-kai ni otoko no hito ga imasu. 3. 4-kai ni nani ga arimasu ka. 4. Chika 1-kai ni dare ga imasu ka. 5. Isu no ue ni kaban ga arimasu. 6. Tēburu no ue ni hana to hon ga arimasu. 7. Beddo no chikaku ni Takahashi-san ga imasu. 8. Reizōko no naka ni nani ga arimasu ka.

VIII. 1. ginkō 2. yūbinkyoku 3. resutoran

Lesson 9

V. 1. Chan: Takushī-noriba wa doko ni arimasu ka. 2. Chan: Ginkō wa doko ni arimasu ka. 3. Chan: Kāto wa doko ni arimasu ka. 4. Chan: Kusuri-ya wa doko ni arimasu ka. 5. Chan: Hon-ya wa doko ni arimasu ka. 6. Chan: O-tearai wa doko ni arimasu ka.

VII. sūpā no tonari

UNIT 5

Lesson 10

III. A. 1. Sumisu-san wa hon o yomimasu. 2. Sumisu-san wa kōhī o nomimasu. 3. Sumisu-san wa kitte o kaimasu. 4. Sumisu-san wa tenisu o shimasu.

B. 1. A: Sumisu-san wa nani o yomimasu ka. B: Hon o yomimasu. 2. A: Sumisu-san wa nani o nomimasu ka. B: Kōhī o nomimasu. 3. A: Sumisu-san wa nani o kaimasu ka. B: Kitte o kaimasu. 4. A: Sumisu-san wa nani o shimasu ka. B: Tenisu o shimasu.

V. A. 1. Sumisu-san wa toshokan de hon o yomimasu. 2. Sumisu-san wa kaisha de shigoto o shimasu. 3. Sumisu-san wa yūbinkyoku de kitte o kaimasu. 4. Sumisu-san wa supōtsu-kurabu de tenisu o shimasu.

B. 1. A: Sumisu-san wa doko de hon o yomimasu ka. B: Toshokan de yomimasu. 2. A: Sumisu-san wa doko de shigoto o shimasu ka. B: Kaisha de shimasu. 3. A: Sumisu-san wa doko de kitte o kaimasu ka. B: Yūbinkyoku de kaimasu. 4. A: Sumisu-san wa doko de tenisu o shimasu ka. B: Supōtsu-kurabu de shimasu.

VI. 1. Katō-san wa maiasa yasai-jūsu o nomimasu. 2. Katō-san wa maiban okusan to jogingu o shimasu. 3. Katō-san wa maishū supōtsu-kurabu ni ikimasu.

VIII. 1. ōki o-tera 2. (o-tera no) niwa de

Lesson 11

III. A. 1. 1) Sumisu-san wa tomodachi ni tegami o kakimasu. 2) Sumisu-san wa Nozomi Depāto no shachō ni tegami o kakimasu. 3) Sumisu-san wa Ginza no hoteru ni tegami o kakimasu. 4) Sumisu-san wa Nihon-go no gakkō ni tegami o kakimasu. 2. 1) Sumisu-san wa tomodachi ni denwa o shimasu. 2) Sumisu-san wa Nozomi Depāto no shachō ni denwa o shimasu. 3) Sumisu-san wa Ginza no hoteru ni denwa o shimasu. 4) Sumisu-san wa Nihon-go no gakkō ni denwa o shimasu. 3. 1) Sumisu-san wa tomodachi ni mēru o okurimasu. 2)

Sumisu-san wa Nozomi Depāto no shachō ni mēru o okurimasu. 3) Sumisu-san wa Ginza no hoteru ni mēru o okurimasu. 4) Sumisu-san wa Nihon-go no gakkō ni mēru o okurimasu.

B. 1. 1) A: Sumisu-san wa dare ni tegami o kakimasu ka. B: Tomodachi ni kakimasu. 2) A: Sumisu-san wa dare ni tegami o kakimasu ka. B: Nozomi Depāto no shachō ni kakimasu. 3) A: Sumisu-san wa doko ni tegami o kakimasu ka. B: Ginza no hoteru ni kakimasu. 4) A: Sumisu-san wa doko ni tegami o kakimasu ka. B: Nihon-go no gakkō ni kakimasu. 2. 1) A: Sumisu-san wa dare ni denwa o shimasu ka. B: Tomodachi ni shimasu. 2) A: Sumisu-san wa dare ni denwa o shimasu ka. B: Nozomi Depāto no shachō ni shimasu. 3) A: Sumisu-san wa doko ni denwa o shimasu ka. B: Ginza no hoteru ni shimasu. 4) A: Sumisu-san wa doko ni denwa o shimasu ka. B: Nihon-go no gakkō ni shimasu. 3. 1) A: Sumisu-san wa dare ni mēru o okurimasu ka. B: Tomodachi ni okurimasu. 2) A: Sumisu-san wa dare ni mēru o okurimasu ka. B: Nozomi Depāto no shachō ni okurimasu. 3) A: Sumisu-san wa doko ni mēru o okurimasu ka. B: Ginza no hoteru ni okurimasu. 4) A: Sumisu-san wa doko ni mēru o okurimasu ka. B: Nihon-go no gakkō ni okurimasu.

IV. 1. Sumisu-san wa ka-yōbi no 10-ji ni Nozomi Depāto de Takahashi-san ni aimasu. 2. Sumisu-san wa sui-yōbi no 7-ji ni Resutoran Rōma de Sasaki-san no go-shujin ni aimasu. 3. Sumisu-san wa moku-yōbi no 11-ji ni Sapporo-shisha de shisha no hito ni aimasu. 4. Sumisu-san wa kin-yōbi no 6-ji han ni hoteru no robi de Nakamura-san ni aimasu.

V. 1. Hai, tokidoki tabemasu. 2. Iie, amari shimasen. 3. Iie, zenzen mimasen.

VII. 1. Sumisu: Wain o 1-pon onegaishimasu. mise no hito: Hai. 2. Sumisu: Sarada o futatsu onegaishimasu. mise no hito: Hai. 3. Sumisu: Aisu-kurīmu o yottsu onegaishimasu. mise no hito: Hai.

IX. mēru o okuri(masu)

QUIZ 2 UNITS 3–5

I. 1. ya 2. ni, to 3. ga, ga 4. wa, ni, no 5. to, ni 6. ni 7. de, o 8. de, ni 9. X, de, o 10. X, ni 11. kara

II. 1. dare 2. doko 3. nani 4. ikutsu 5. nan-nin 6. itsu 7. Dare 8. doko 9. nan-ji 10. itsu 11. nani, dare

III. 1. arimasu 2. arimasen 3. ikimasen 4. mimasu, mimasen 5. yoku

UNIT 6

Lesson 12

IV. 1. Kore wa atarashii kuruma desu. 2. Kore wa furui biru desu. 3. Kore wa takai sētā desu. 4. Kore wa amai kēki desu. 5. Kore wa oishii ringo desu.

VIII. 1. Sumisu-san wa senshū shizukana resutoran de shokuji o shimashita. 2. Sumisu-san wa senshū kireina resutoran de shokuji o shimashita.

X. 1. Sumisu: (a) Eki kara chikai desu ne. (b) Benri desu ne. 2. Sumisu: Omoshiroi e desu ne. 3. Sumisu: Totemo furui tokei desu ne. 4. Sumisu: Kireina hana desu ne.

XII. kireina

Lesson 13

III. A. 1. A: Sumisu-san wa dare ni tokei o agemashita ka. B: Suzuki-san ni agemashita. 2. A: Sumisu-san wa dare ni Kyōto no o-miyage o agemashita ka. B: Nakamura-san ni agemashita.

B. 1. A: Suzuki-san wa dare ni tokei o moraimashita ka. B: Sumisu-san ni moraimashita. 2. A: Nakamura-san wa dare ni Kyōto no o-miyage o moraimashita ka. B: Sumisu-san ni moraimashita.

C. 1. A: Sumisu-san wa Suzuki-san ni nani o agemashita ka. B: Tokei o agemashita. 2. A: Sumisu-san wa Nakamura-san ni nani o agemashita ka. B: Kyōto no o-miyage o agemashita.

IV. A. 1. Chan-san wa Kurisumasu ni Suzuki-san ni dejikame o agemashita. Suzuki-san wa Kurisumasu ni Chan-san ni dejikame o moraimashita. 2. Suzuki-san wa Barentaindē ni Chan-san ni kireina sukāfu o agemashita. Chan-san wa Barentaindē ni Suzuki-san ni kireina sukāfu o moraimashita.

B. 1. A: Chan-san wa Kurisumasu ni Suzuki-san ni nani o agemashita ka. B: Dejikame o agemashita. 2. A: Suzuki-san wa Barentaindē ni Chan-san ni nani o agemashita ka. B: Kireina sukāfu o agemashita.

C. 1. A: Chan-san wa Kurisumasu ni dare ni dejikame o agemashita ka. B: Suzuki-san ni agemashita. 2. A: Suzuki-san wa Barentaindē ni dare ni kireina sukāfu o agemashita ka. B: Chan-san ni agemashita.

D. 1. A: Chan-san wa itsu Suzuki-san ni dejikame o agemashita ka. B: Kurisumasu ni agemashita. 2. A: Suzuki-san wa itsu Chan-san ni kireina sukāfu o agemashita ka. B: Barentaindē ni agemashita.

E. 3. A: Chan-san wa tanjōbi ni Suzuki-san ni nani o moraimashita ka. B: Hanataba o moraimashita. 4. A: Suzuki-san wa tanjōbi ni Chan-san ni nani o moraimashita ka. B: Sētā o moraimashita.

F. 3. A: Chan-san wa tanjōbi ni dare ni hanataba o moraimashita ka. B: Suzuki-san ni moraimashita. 4. A: Suzuki-san wa tanjōbi ni dare ni sētā o moraimashita ka. B: Chan-san ni moraimashita.

G 3 A. Chan-san wa itsu Suzuki-san ni hanataba o moraimashita ka. B Tanjōbi ni moraimash ta. 4 A. Suzuki-san wa itsu Chan-san ni sêtâ o moraimashita ka. B: Tanjōbi ni moraimashita

VI. Nihon-go no hon o moraimashita.

Lesson 14

III. A. 1 Nakamura Kinō no pāti no ryōri wa oishikatta desu ka. Chan. Hai, oishikatta desu Sumisu Iie, oishikunakatta desu. 2 Nakamura: Kinō no o-matsuri wa nigiyaka deshita ka. Chan Hai, nigiyaka deshita. Sumisu. Iie, nigiyaka dewa arimasendeshita.

B. 1 Katō Kinō no konsâto wa dō deshita ka. Chan: Totemo yokatta desu. Sumisu Amari yokunakatta desu 2 Katō Kinō no bāgen-sêru wa dō deshita ka. Chan. Totemo yasukatta desu Sumisu Amari yasukunakatta desu.

V nichi-yōbi, nigiyaka deshita.

UNIT 7

Lesson 15

I. 1 Kōhi o nomimasen ka 2 Gorufu o shimasen ka.

II A. 1 A Shumatsu ni issho ni Ginza ni ikimasen ka B Ee, ikimashō 2 A Shumatsu ni issho ni shokuji o shimasen ka B Ee, shimashō 3 A. Shūmatsu ni issho ni sumō o mimasen ka B Ee, mimashō 4 A Shūmatsu ni issho ni hiru-gohan o tabemasen ka. B: Ee, tabemashō

B. 1 A Shūmatsu ni issho ni Ginza ni ikimasen ka. B. Zannen desu ga, tsugō ga warui desu 2 A Shumatsu ni issho ni shokuji o shimasen ka B Zannen desu ga, tsugō ga warui desu 3 A Shumatsu ni issho ni sumō o mimasen ka. B Zannen desu ga, tsugō ga warui desu. 4 A Shumatsu ni issho ni hiru-gohan o tabemasen ka. B: Zannen desu ga, tsugō ga warui desu

IV A. 1 Raigetsu Sapporo de yuki-matsuri ga arimasu 2 Ashita taishikan de pāti ga arimasu 3 Kayō-bi ni Yokohama de sakkā no shiai ga arimasu.

B 1 A Raigetsu Sapporo de yuki-matsuri ga arimasu. Issho ni ikimasen ka. B Ii desu ne Ikimashō 2 A. Ashita taishikan de pāti ga arimasu. Issho ni ikimasen ka. B Ii desu ne Ikimashō 3 A Ka-yōbi ni Yokohama de sakkā no shiai ga arimasu Issho ni ikimasen ka B Ii desu ne Ikimashō

VI. 1 Suzuki Do-yōbi ni issho ni shokuji o shimasen ka. 2 Chan Ee, shimashō 3 Suzuki: Nani o tabemashō ka. 4 Chan O-sushi wa dō desu ka. 5 Suzuki Ii desu ne 6 Suzuki: Nan-ji ni aimashō ka 7 Chan 6-ji ni aimasen ka. 8. Suzuki Hai, sō shimashō

VII. densha, nichi-yōbi

Lesson 16

I. 1 Chizu o kakimashō ka 2 Kono hon o kashimashō ka

II. 1 Sumisu: Doa o akemashō ka Nakamura. Ee, onegaishimasu 2 Sumisu: Shashin o torimashō ka. Suzuki: Iie, kekkō desu 3 Sumisu Mado o shimemashō ka. Nakamura Ee, onegaishimasu. 4 Sumisu: Eakon o keshimashō ka. Suzuki: Iie, kekkō desu

III. 1 Watashi wa kasa ga arimasu 2 Watashi wa eiga no kippu ga arimasu. 3. Watashi wa Nihon-go no jugyō ga arimasu 4 Watashi wa yasumi ga arimasu 5. Watashi wa jikan ga arimasu. 6 Watashi wa kaigi ga arimasu

V 1 Suzuki Kopi o shimashō ka 2 Sumisu: Ee, onegaishimasu 3. Suzuki Nan-mai shimashō ka. 4 Sumisu 3-mai onegaishimasu

VII. Suzuki-san ga kakimasu

QUIZ 3 UNITS 6–7

I. 1 ni 2 o 3. ga 4. ga 5. ga, X

II. 1 donna 2 dare 3. dō 4. doko

III 1 kireina 2 oishii 3 shizuka dewa arimasen 4. nigiyaka deshita 5. omoshirokunakatta desu

IV. 1 mimasen ka, aimashō ka 2. tsukemashō ka, akemashō ka

UNIT 8

Lesson 17

III 1 Denki o tsukete, doa o shimemasu. 2 Denwa-bangō o kite, denwa o shimasu. 3 Uchi de hon o yonde, repōto o kakimasu.

IV 1 A: Ashita nani o shimasu ka. B: Ginza de kaimono o shite, eiga o mimasu. 2 A: Ashita nani o shimasu ka B: Resutoran de hiru-gohan o tabete, bijutsukan ni ikimasu.

V 1 Sumisu: san ni atte, issho ni tenisu o shimashita 2 Doa o akete denki o tsukemashō ka

VI. 1 A: Kinō nani o shimashita ka. B: Roppongi ni itte, shokuji o shimashita. 2 A: Kinō nani o shimashita ka. B: Tomodachi ni atte, issho ni sumō o mimashita.

VIII 1 A: Kinō shigoto no ato de nani o shimashita ka B: Tomodachi ni atte, issho ni eiga o mimashita. 2 A: Kinō shigoto no ato de nani o shimashita ka B: Depāto ni itte, kaimono o shimashita. 3 A: Kinō shigoto no ato de nani o shimashita ka B: Bā de wain o nonde, takushī de uchi ni kaerimashita.

IX 1 Sumisu-san wa kin-yōbi ni Kōbe ni itte, gorufu o shimasu. Gorufu no ato de tomodachi no uchi ni ikimasu. 2 Sumisu-san wa doyō-bi ni Kyōto ni itte, Yamamoto-san to shokuji o shimasu. Shokuji no ato de furui o-tera ya niwa o mimasu.

XI. a) [terebi]

Lesson 18

II 1 Chotto matte kudasai. 2 Shashin o totte kudasai. 3 Mō ichi-do itte kudasai. 4 Pen o kashite kudasai. 5 Piza o todokete kudasai.

III A. 1 A: Sumimasen. Mēru-adoresu o kaite kudasai. B: Hai. 2 A: Sumimasen. Menyū o misete kudasai. B: Hai. 3. A: Sumimasen. Kaigi no shiryō o mottekite kudasai. B: Hai.

V 1 Tsugi no shingō o hidari ni magatte kudasai. 2 Futatsu-me no kado o migi ni magatte kudasai. 3 Massugu itte kudasai. 4. Depāto no temae de tomete kudasai.

VII. Takahashi-san, fakkusu

UNIT 9

Lesson 19

III A. 1 Takahashi: (Chan-san wa) dōyatte kaisha ni ikimasu ka. Chan: Azabu de basu ni notte, Tōkyō Eki de orimasu. Tōkyō Eki kara kaisha made arukimasu. 2 Takahashi: (Suzuki-san wa) dōyatte kaisha ni ikimasu ka. Suzuki: Yokohama Eki de densha ni notte, Tōkyō Eki de orimasu. Tōkyō Eki kara kaisha made arukimasu.

B. 1 Chan: 8-ji ni demasu. 8-ji 20-pun ni tsukimasu. 2 Suzuki: 7-ji ni demasu. 8-[illegible] ni tsukimasu.

V 1 Sumisu: Tōkyō kara Nikkō made donogurai kakarimasu ka. Nakamura: Densha de 1-jikan han kakarimasu. 2 Nakamura: Narita Kūkō kara Honkon made donogurai kakarimasu ka. Chan: Hikōki de 5-jikan kakarimasu.

VIII. 1 Chan: Hikōki wa nan-ji ni Narita o demasu ka. 2 ryokō-gaisha no hito: 11-ji ni demasu. 3 Chan: Narita kara Honoruru made donogurai kakarimasu ka. 4. ryokō-gaisha no hito: 7-jikan gurai kakarimasu. 5 Chan: Arigatō gozaimasu.

IX. chikatetsu, 30-pun

Lesson 20

II. 1 Mado o akete mo ii desu ka. 2 Kono ryahōn-gaido o tsukatte mo ii desu ka. 3 Kono e no shashin o totte mo ii desu ka. 4 Koko de tabako o sutte mo ii desu ka. 5 Ashita yasunde mo ii desu ka.

III. 1 Suzuki: O-kyaku-san ni katarogu o misete mo ii desu ka. Katō: Hai, dōzo. 2 Suzuki: O-kyaku-san ni sampuru o okutte mo [illegible] desu ka. Katō: Hai, dōzo. 3. Suzuki: Asatte yasunde mo ii desu ka. Katō: Hai, dōzo.

IV 1 Sumisu: O-tera no shashin o totte mo ii desu ka. o-tera no hito: Sumimasen ga, chotto [illegible]. 2 Sumisu: Niwa ni haitte mo ii desu ka. o-tera no hito: Sumimasen ga, chotto [illegible]. 3 Sumisu: Koko de o-cha o nonde mo ii desu ka. o-tera no hito: Sumimasen ga, chotto [illegible]

VI. 1 mise no hito: Koko/Kochira ni o-namae to go-jūsho o onegaishimasu. 2 Sumisu: Sumimasen, pen ga arimasen. 3 Sumisu: Kono pen o tsukatte mo ii desu ka. 4. mise no hito: Hai, dōzo. 5 Sumisu: Arigatō.

VII. 3-ji han, kaigishitsu

Lesson 21

III. 1 Shashin o toranaide kudasai. 2 Doa o shimenaide kudasai. 3 Denki o kesanaide kudasai. 4 Kuruma o tomenaide kudasai.

IV 1 Koko wa deguchi desu kara, kuruma o tomenaide kudasai. 2 Koko wa mise no mae desu kara, kuruma o tomenaide kudasai. 3. Koko wa chusha-kinshi desu kara, kuruma o tomenaide kudasai.

VI kaigishitsu, kaigi

QUIZ 4 UNITS 8–9

I. 1 ni 2. o, ni 3. de 4. de, o, ni 5. kara, made, de 6. ni, X 7. ni, o, ni, ni 8. wa, kara, o

II. 1 nani 2. itsu 3. Dōyatte 4. donogurai

III. 1 kakanai 2 keshimasu 3 nonde 4 toranai 5 shimete 6 akemasu 7 mite 8. konai 9 shimasu
IV 1 mite 2. katte 3 oshiete 4 magatte, ite 5. moratte 6 tomenaide

UNIT 10

Lesson 22

III A. 1 A. Chan-san wa ima nani o shite imasu ka. B Repôto o kaite imasu. 2 A Nakamura-san wa ima nani o shite imasu ka. B. Kopi o shite imasu 3 A Katô-san wa ima nani o shite imasu ka B Kaigishitsu de setsumei o shite imasu. 4 A. Sasaki-san wa ima nani o shite imasu ka B O-kyaku-san to hanashi o shite imasu. 5 A Suzuki-san wa ima nani o shite imasu ka. B Tabako o sutte imasu. 6. A. Takahashi-san wa ima nani o shite imasu ka. B 1-kai de erebêtâ o matte imasu
B 7 B Iie, o-kyaku-san to hanashi o shite imasu 8 B Iie. kopi o shite imasu 9 B Iie, repôto o kaite imasu
VII. c) [(Sumisu-san wa) o-kyaku-san to hanashi o shite imasu.]

Lesson 23

VI. 1 Gurin-san wa Shibuya ni sunde imasu Soshite, ABC Fûzu ni tsutomete imasu 2 Nakamura-san no imôtosan wa Sapporo ni sunde imasu. Soshite ginkô ni tsutomete imasu. 3 Chan-san no onêsan wa Honkon ni sunde imasu. Soshite, depâto ni tsutomete imasu
VIII 1 Sumisu: Resutoran Tôkyô no jusho o shitte imasu ka Suzuki Hai, shitte imasu. 2 Sumisu: Sapporo-shisha no fakkusu-bangô o shitte imasu ka. Suzuki: Iie, shirimasen.
XI. 03 no 3944 no 6493 desu

UNIT 11

Lesson 24

III. A. 1 Sumisu-san wa biru ga suki desu. Suki ga jôzu desu. Nihon-go ga wakarimasu. 2 Chan-san wa kôhi ga suki desu. Dansu ga jôzu desu. Furansu-go ga wakarimasu. 3 Sasaki-san wa wain ga suki desu Tenisu ga jôzu desu Chûgoku-go ga wakarimasu.
B. 1 Sumisu-san wa o-sake ga suki dewa arimasen Dansu ga jôzu dewa arimasen Chûgoku-go ga wakarimasen. 2 Chan-san wa biru ga suki dewa arimasen Suki ga jôzu dewa arimasen. Kankoku-go ga wakarimasen 3 Sasaki-san wa uisuki ga suki dewa arimasen Gorufu ga jôzu dewa arimasen Doitsu-gô ga wakarimasen.
C. 1 Sumisu: Hai, suki desu Sumisu: Hai, wakarimasu. 2 Chan Hai, suki desu. Chan. Iie, wakarimasen 3. Sasaki Iie, suki dewa arimasen. Sasaki: Hai, wakarimasu.
D. 1 Nakamura: Iie, jôzu dewa arimasen 2 Nakamura. Hai. jôzu desu 3. Nakamura: Iie, jôzu dewa arimasen
V 1 Takahashi Ochiai-san wa piano ga jôzu desu. Jazu ga suki desu. 2 Takahashi Kojima-san wa suiei ga jôzu desu. Umi ga suki desu. 3. Takahashi: Andô-san wa e ga jôzu desu. Ukiyoe ga suki desu
VII. Furansu-go

Lesson 25

II 1 Watashi wa terebi o mitai desu. 2 Watashi wa Takahashi-san ni aitakunai desu. 3. Watashi wa furui kagu o kaitai desu. 4. Watashi wa jûdô o naraitakunai desu.
V 1 isha Dô shimashita ka. Chan. Netsu ga 38-do arimasu. 2 isha Dô shimashita ka. Chan Nodo ga itai desu. 3. isha: Dô shimashita ka. Chan: Koshi ga itai desu.
VI 1 A. Watashi wa maishu jogingu o shite imasu. B Ii desu ne Watashi mo shitai desu 2 A Watashi wa maishu o-cha o naratte imasu. B Ii desu ne Watashi mo naraitai desu.
VIII. c)

QUIZ 5 UNITS 10–11

I. 1 ga 2. ni 3 de 4. ga 5. ni
II. 1 shite imasu 2. shitte imasu, shirimasen 3. ikitakatta desu
III. 1 suki desu 2 jôzu dewa arimasen 3. shimasu 4. shimasen

CD SCRIPT FOR EXERCISES

UNIT 1

Lesson 1, Exercise V

onna no hito: Sumisu-san wa enjinia desu ka
Takahashi: Iie, bengoshi desu

Lesson 2, Exercise VIII

onna no hito: Sumimasen. Sumisu-san no denwa-bangō wa nan-ban desu ka.
Takahashi: Zero-san no san-yon-go-kyū no kyū-roku-roku-zero desu
onna no hito: Arigatō gozaimasu

UNIT 2

Lesson 3, Exercise VI

Sumisu: Sumimasen. Jimu wa nan-ji kara desu ka.
Furonto: 7-ji han kara desu.
Sumisu: Dōmo arigatō

Lesson 4, Exercise IX

Sumisu: Are wa bideo kamera desu ka.
mise no hito: Hai.
Sumisu: Ikura desu ka
mise no hito: 38,000-en desu

Lesson 5, Exercise VII

Sumisu: Sumimasen. Ano bīru wa doko no desu ka
mise no hito: Amerika no desu
Sumisu: Are wa ikura desu ka.
mise no hito: 300-en desu
Sumisu: Ja, are o 10-pon kudasai

UNIT 3

Lesson 6, Exercise X

Nakamura: Sumisu-san wa asatte doko ni ikimasu ka
Sumisu: Depāto ni ikimasu
Nakamura: Dare to ikimasu ka
Sumisu: Tomodachi to ikimasu.
Nakamura: Sō desu ka.

Lesson 7, Exercise X

Suzuki: Chan-san wa itsu Ōsaka-shisha ni ikimasu ka
Chan: Moku-yōbi ni ikimasu.
Suzuki: Nan de ikimasu ka.
Chan: Hikōki de ikimasu.
Suzuki: Sō desu ka.

Questions

1 Chan-san wa itsu Ōsaka-shisha ni ikimasu ka.
2 Chan-san wa nande Ōsaka-shisha ni ikimasu ka.

UNIT 4

Lesson 8, Exercise VIII
Ms. Nakamura is talking about her building.

1 1-kai ni ginkō ga arimasu.
2 2-kai ni yūbinkyoku ga arimasu.
3 3-gai ni resutoran ga arimasu.

Lesson 9, Exercise VII
Sumisu: Sumimasen. Chūshajō wa doko desu ka.
onna no hito: Sūpā no tonari desu.
Sumisu: Arigatō gozaimasu.

UNIT 5

Lesson 10, Exercise VIII
Chan-san wa do-yōbi ni tomodachi to densha de Kamakura ni ikimashita. Kamakura de ōki o-tera o mimashita. O-tera no niwa de hiru-gohan o tabemashita.

Lesson 11, Exercise IX
Nakamura: Chan-san wa yoku okāsan ni denwa o shimasu ka.
Chan: Iie, amari shimasen ga, yoku mēru o okurimasu.

UNIT 6

Lesson 12, Exercise XII
Nakamura: Ashita tomodachi to Hakone ni ikimasu.
Sumisu: Hakone wa donna tokoro desu ka.
Nakamura: Kireina tokoro desu yo.

Lesson 13, Exercise VI
Kinō wa Sumisu-san no tanjōbi deshita. Sumisu-san wa tomodachi ni Nihon-go no hon o moraimashita.

Question: Sumisu-san wa tanjōbi ni tomodachi ni nani o moraimashita ka.

Lesson 14, Exercise V
Suzuki: Chan-san, nichi-yōbi ni nani o shimashita ka.
Chan: Asakusa de o-matsuri o mimashita.
Suzuki: Dō deshita ka.
Chan: Totemo nigiyaka deshita.

UNIT 7

Lesson 15, Exercise VII
Suzuki: Sumisu-san, nichi-yōbi ni issho ni Nikkō ni ikimasen ka.
Sumisu: Ee, ikimashō.
Suzuki: Nan de ikimashō ka.
Sumisu: Densha wa dō desu ka.
Suzuki: Ee, sō shimashō. Ja, nichi-yōbi ni.

Lesson 16, Exercise VII
Sumisu: Suzuki-san, Furansu taishikan wa doko ni arimasu ka.
Suzuki: Hiroo desu. Chizu o kakimashō ka.
Sumisu: Ee, onegaishimasu.

Question: Dare ga chizu o kakimasu ka.

UNIT 8

Lesson 17, Exercise XI

Nakamura: Chan-san, shūmatsu ni nani o shimasu ka.
Chan: Do-yōbi ni Shinjuku ni itte, terebi o kaimasu.
Nakamura: Sō desu ka.

Question: Chan-san wa do-yōbi ni nani o kaimasu ka.

Lesson 18, Exercise VII

Katō: Chan-san, Takahashi-san ni kaigi no shiryō o faikusu de okutte kudasai.
Chan: Hai, wakarimashita.

UNIT 9

Lesson 19, Exercise IX

Sumisu: Sumimasen. Kaisha kara Nozomi Depāto made donogurai kakarimasu ka.
Nakamura: Chikatetsu de 30-pun gurai kakarimasu.
Sumisu: Sō desu ka. Arigatō gozaimasu.

Lesson 20, Exercise VII

Sumisu: Sumimasen, 3-ji han kara kaigishitsu o tsukattemo ii desu ka.
Nakamura: Hai, dōzo.
Sumisu: Arigatō gozaimasu.

Lesson 21, Exercise VI

Katō: Gogo kara kaigi ga arimasu kara, kaigishitsu no eakon o kesanaide kudasai.
Chan: Hai, wakarimashita.

UNIT 10

Lesson 22, Exercise VII

Sasaki: Sumisu-san wa doko desu ka.
Chan: Ima 3-gai no kaigishitsu de o-kyaku-san to hanashi o shite imasu.
Sasaki: Sō desu ka.

Question: Sumisu-san wa ima nani o shite imasu ka.

Lesson 23, Exercise XI

Sumisu: Sumimasen. Resutoran Rōma no denwa-bangō o shitte imasu ka.
Nakamura: Hai. 03-3944-6493 desu.
Sumisu: Arigatō gozaimasu.

Question: Resutoran Rōma no denwa-bangō wa nan-ban desu ka.

UNIT 11

Lesson 24, Exercise VII

Katō: Raishū Furansu no shisha ni ikimasu.
Sumisu: Hitori de ikimasu ka.
Katō: Iie, Chan-san to ikimasu. Chan-san wa Furansu-go ga jōzu desu kara.

Lesson 25, Exercise VIII

Nakamura: Sumisu-san, shōrai donna tokoro ni sumitai desu ka.
Sumisu: Sō desu ne. Chisai machi ni sumitai desu.
Nakamura: Sō desu ka.

a: oh, 57
ABC Fūzu: ABC Foods, 3
achira: that person over there, 230
agemasu: give, 110, 123, 124
aimasu: meet, 98, 100, 143, 162, 163, 197
aisu-kōhī: ice coffee, 199
aisu-kurīmu: ice cream, 104
akachan: baby, 199
akai (desu): red, 38
Akasaka: Akasaka (district), 82
akemasu: open, 151, 160, 163, 196, 197
amai (desu): sweet, 113, 115
amari ... -masen: not much, 99, 248–49
Amerika: the United States, 4
Amerika-jin: American (person), 4
anata: you, 3, 7
anata no: your, 10
Andō: Ando (surname), 216
ane: older sister, 214
ani: older brother, 214
ano: that over there (used before a noun), 20, 37
aoi (desu): blue, 37, 38
are: that one over there, 20, 31
arigatō: thank you, 10 → *dōmo*
arimasu: be, exist, 68, 69, 73, 79, have, own, 151, there is/are going to be, 142
aruite: by foot, by walking, 60, 63
arukimasu: walk, 181
asa: morning, 28
asa-gohan: breakfast, 26, 90
Asakusa: Asakusa (district), 118
Asakusa Eki: Asakusa Station, 142
asatte: the day after tomorrow, 52
ashi: leg, foot, 233
ashita: tomorrow, 49, 50, 51
asoko: over there, 78
atama: head, 233
atarashii (desu): new, fresh, 113, 115
atatakai (desu): warm, 235
atsui (desu): hot (of temperature), 113, 115, 133
Azabu: Azabu (district), 82
azukarimasu: take care of, be in charge of, 176; *azukatte kudasai*: please take care of, 176

bā: bar, 93
bāgen-sēru: clearance sale, 132
-bai: cupful, glassful, 112
ban: evening, 28
-ban: number ..., 58
bangō: number, 10
ban-gohan: dinner, 26, 90
-bansen: platform number, 187
bara: rose, 123
Barentaindē: Valentine's Day, 126
basu: bus, 58
basu-noriba: bus terminal, 79
basutei: bus stop, 85
beddo: bed, 72
benchi: bench, 157
bengoshi: attorney, lawyer, 3, 5
benkyō o shimasu: study, 91
benri desu or benrina: convenient, 114, 116
Berurin Mōtāzu: Berlin Motors, 7
bideo: video, 30
bideo-kamera: video camera, 30
bijutsukan: art museum, 164
biru: beer, 38
bōrupen: ballpoint pen, 35
bōshi: hat, cap, 124
bun: part, 29
Buraun: Brown (surname), 5
burausu: blouse, 124
byōin: hospital, clinic, 79

CD (=shidi): CD, 30
CD-purēyā: CD player, 30
Chan: Chan (surname), xiii
chekkuin-kauntā: check-in counter, 84
chichi: (my) father, 99
Chichi no hi: Father's Day, 128
chiisai (desu): small, little, 38, 113, 114
chika: basement, 71
chikai (desu): near, 113, 115
chika ikkai: first basement floor, 71
chikaku: vicinity, nearby, 72
chikatetsu: subway, 59, 61
chizu: map, 152
chō: trillion, 29
chokorēto: chocolate, 126
chotto: a little bit, 121, *chotto matte kudasai*: please wait a minute, 121, *chotto o-machi kudasai*: please wait a minute, 136, *chotto yoroshii desu ka*: do you have a moment?, 162
Chūgoku: China, 4
Chūgoku-go: Chinese (language), 226
Chūgoku-jin: Chinese (person), 4
chūrippu: tulip, 123
chūshajō: parking lot, 71
chūsha-kinshi: no parking, 197

daigaku: university, college, 7
daijōbu desu ka: are you all right?, 157
dansu: dancing, 226
dare: who, 8, 14
dare mo ... -masen: no one, 73
de: by means of, 59; (indicating location), 90, 142; (indicating means of telecommunication or post), 170
de gozaimasu: (humble form of *desu*), 96
deguchi: exit, 196
deijikame: digital camera, 30
demashō ka: shall we leave?, 180, *demasu*: leave, 180, 181
demo: but, 151
demo ii desu ka: is ... all right?, 36
denki: (electric) light, 164
denki-ya: electronics store, 217
densha: train, 61
denshi-jisho: electronic dictionary, 126
denwa: telephone, 10
denwa-bangō: telephone number, 10
denwa o shimasu: telephone, 88, 98, 100
depāto: department store, 3, 22
deshita: was/were, 2
desu: be, 2, 3, 79
dewa: well then, in any case, 38, 58
dewaija arimasen: is/are not, 2, 11
dewaija arimasendeshita: was/were not, 2
dō: how, 135, *dō deshita ka*: how was ...?, 135, *dō desu ka*: how is ...?, 142
-do: degree, 236
doa: door, 153
dōgu: tool, equipment, 155
dō itashimashite: you're welcome, 22
Doitsu: Germany, 4
Doitsu-go: German (language), 226
Doitsu-jin: German (person), 4
doko: where, which place, 41
dōmo: thanks, 175, *dōmo arigatō*: thank you, 10, 26, *dōmo arigatō gozaimashita*: thank you very much, 129; *dōmo arigatō gozaimasu*: thank you very much, 9
donata: who, 8
donna: what kind of, 118
dono: which (used before a noun), 58
donogurai: how long, 180
dore: which (one), 37, 58
dō shimashita ka: what's the matter with you?, 236
dōshite: why, 168
dōyatte: how, in what way, 182
do-yōbi: Saturday, 60
dōzo: please, if you please, 9, 112; *dōzo kochira e*: come right this way, 59
DVD (=dibudi): DVD, 35

e: painting, picture, 119
e: to, 48
eakon: air conditioner, 153
ee: yes, 9, 140, 149
ehagaki: postcard, 190
eiga: movie, 23
Eigo: English (language), 35
eigyō-bu: sales department, 205
eki: station, 51
ekiin: station employee, 187
empitsu: pencil, 80
-en: yen, 29, 31
enjinia: engineer, 5
erebētā: elevator, 206
esukarētā: escalator, 206

fairu: file, 80
fakkusu: fax, 171
fea: fair, 185
Fuji Kompyūtā: Fuji Computers, 217
Fujisan: Mt. Fuji, 195
-fun (kan): minute(s), 22, 23, 181
funabin: surface mail, 171
Furansu: France, 35
Furansu-go: French (language), 35
Furansu-ryōri: French food, 230
furasshu: flash, 195
furui (desu): old, 113, 115
furonto: the front desk, 26
futari: two people, 80
futatsu: two, 39
futatsu-me: second, 173
futsuka: the second (of the month), 61

ga: (as subject marker), 68, but (conjunctive usage), 170, 205, (instead of *wa*), 58, (used with *suki desu*, *jōzu desu*, *itai desu*, etc.), 222

-gai: floor, story, 71
gaido: guide, 190
gakkō: school, 101
gakusei: student, 5
-gatsu: month, 61
gēmu: game, 116
getsu-yōbi: Monday, 60
ginkō: bank, 7, 22
Ginza: Ginza (district), 52
go: five, 10
-go: language, 35
go-gatsu: May, 61
gogo: p.m., in the afternoon, 22
gohan: meal, 26
gojū: fifty, 22, 23
gojuppun: fifty minutes, 22
go-jūsho: (another person's) address, 174
goro: about, 86
gorufu o shimasu: play golf, 95
go-shujin: (another person's) husband, 99
gozen: a.m., in the morning, 23
gurai: about, approximately, 120
Gurin: Green (surname), xxi

ha: tooth, 233
hachi: eight, 10
hachi-gatsu: August, 61
hachi-ji: eight o'clock, 23
hachijū: eighty, 23
hagaki: postcard, 38
haha: (my) mother, 99
Haha no hi: Mother's Day, 128
hai: yes, 2, 6, 48, 140, 149, 204, *hai, dōzo*: please go ahead, please feel free, 8, 189
-hai: cupful, glassful, 112
hairimasu: enter, 189, 190
hajimemashite: how do you do, 3
Hakodate: Hakodate (city), 182
Hakone: Hakone (national park), 76
hambāgā: hamburger, 199
hambai: sales, marketing, 162
han: half past (of time), 23
hana: flower, 72
hanabi: fireworks, 142
hanabi-taikai: fireworks display, 142
hanashi o shimasu: talk, 148, 206, 207
hanataba: bouquet, 123
happi: *happi* coat, 151
hasami: scissors, 80
hatsuka: the twentieth (of the month), 61
hidari: left, 171
higashiguchi: east exit, 143
hikidashi: drawer, 75
hikōki: airplane, 61
hima desu or *himana*: free, not busy, 114, 116
hiru: afternoon, 23
hiru-gohan: lunch, 90
hiru-yasumi: lunch break, 23
hisho: secretary, 5
hito: person, 22
hitori: one person, 80
hitori de: alone, 50
hitotsu: one, 39
Hokkaidō: Hokkaido (island), 162
Hofuman: Hoffman (surname), 5
hōmu: platform, 143
hon: book, 1
Honkon: Hong Kong, 52
Honkon-shisha: Hong Kong (branch) office, 218
Honoruru: Honolulu, 186
honsha: main/central/head office, 170
hontō: true, 151, *hontō ni*: really, 120
hon-ya: bookstore, 79
hōru: (concert) hall, 147
hotchkisu: stapler, 80
hoteru: hotel, 65
Howaito: White (surname), 117
hyaku: one hundred, 23, 30
hyaku-man: one million, 29
hyaku-oku: ten billion (=10,000,000,000), 29

ichi: one, 10
ichi-do: one time, 17
ichi-gatsu: January, 61
ichi-man: ten thousand, 29, 30
ichi-oku: one hundred million, 29
Igirisu: England, the United Kingdom, 4
Igirisu-jin: Briton, 4
ii (desu): good, nice, 113, 115, 133
ii desu ne: that's nice, 70; that sounds good, 147
iie: no, 2, 6, 48, 204, *iie, (mō) kekkō desu*: no thank you, I'm fine, 112, 140
iimasu: say, 170, 172
ii n desu ka: is it all right?, 151
ikaga desu ka: how about ?, 112
ikebana: ikebana, flower arranging, 233
ikimasen ka: won't you go (with me)?, 140, 142, 143, *ikimashō ka*: shall we go?, 142, 143; *ikimasu*: go, 48, 50, 51, 52, 143, 160, 162, 163, 178, 222, *iktai desu*: want to go, 222, 234
ikkai: first floor, ground floor, 71
ikura: how much, 28
ikutsu: how many (small objects), 81
ima: now, 21
imasu: be, exist, 68, 73, 178; be, stay, 184
imōto, imōtosan: younger sister, 214
inu: dog, 95
irasshaimase: may I help you?, welcome, 28
irasshaimasu: be, 136
iremasu: put in, add, 197
iriguchi: entrance, 85, 143
iro: color, 122
isha: (medical) doctor, 200
isogashi (desu): busy, 113, 115
issho ni: together, 142
isu: chair, 72
itadakimasu: (said before eating), 112
itai (desu): be painful, hurt, 222, 234; ouch!, 157
Itaria: Italy, 41
Itaria-ryōri: Italian food, 228
it-chō: one trillion, 29
Itō: Ito (surname), 214
itsu: when, 54
itsuka: the fifth (of the month), 61
itsutsu: five, 39
itterasshai: good-bye, have a nice trip, 57
iyahōn: earphones, headphones, 190
iyahōn-gaido: recorded guide, 190
iyarinou: earring, 124

ja: well then, 29
jazu: jazz, 228
JBP Japan: JBP Japan, 215
-ji: o'clock, 22, 23
jikan: time, 152
-jikan: hour(s), 181
jimu: gym, 26
-jin: -ese, -ian (person from), 4
jinja: Shinto shrine, 70
jisho: dictionary, 35
jogingu o shimasu: jog, 91
Jonson: Johnson (surname), 61
jōzu desu: be skilled, 222, 224, 225
jū: ten, 23
jūdō: judo, 233
jū-gatsu: October, 61
jugyō: class, 152
jūichi-gatsu: November, 61
jūichi-ji: eleven o'clock, 23
jū-man: one hundred thousand, 29
jūni-gatsu: December, 61
jū-oku: one billion (=1,000,000,000), 29
jūsho: address, 10
jūsu: juice, 90
juyokka: the fourteenth (of the month), 61

ka: (question-marking particle) 2, 6, 48, 222
-ka (kan): day(s), 181
kaban: briefcase, tote bag, 72
kabin: vase, 122
Kabuki: Kabuki, 89
kado: corner, 171
kādo: (business) card, 193, (credit) card, 36
kaemasu: return, go home, 48, 51, 52, 160, 162, 163, 178, 197
-kagetsu: month(s), 181
kagi: key, 11
kagu: furniture, 234
-kai: floor, story, 71
kaidan: stairs, 206
kaigi: meeting, conference, 23
kaigi o shimasu: hold a meeting, 167
kaigishitsu: conference room, 83
kaimasu: buy, 88, 91, 92, 160, 163, 178
kaimono o shimasu: shop, 91
kaisatsuguchi: ticket gate, 142
kaisha: company, the office, 9
kakarimasu: take (time), 180, 181
kakimasu: write, 98, 100, 160, 162, 163, 178, 197
Kamakura: Kamakura (town), 76
kanai: (my) wife, 99
kānēshon: carnation, 123
kanji: kanji, Chinese character(s), 226
Kankoku: South Korea, 41
Kankoku-go: Korean (language), 226
Kāpentā: Carpenter (surname), 229
kappu: cup, 43
kara: because, 98, 142, from, 22, 61
karai (desu): hot, spicy, 113, 115
karē: curry, 115
kasa: umbrella, 11
kashimashō ka: shall I lend you?, 151, *kashimasu*: lend, 151, 172
kata: shoulder, 233
katarogu: catalog, 170, 190
Katō: Kato (surname), xiii
kāto: cart, 84
katsugimasu: carry (on one's shoulders), 151

ka-yōbi: Tuesday, 60
kazoku: family, 69
kechappu: ketchup, 199
keitai: cell/mobile phone, 11
kēki: cake, 115
kekkō desu: be fine, be all right, 36; no thanks, 112 → *iie*
kekkon: marriage, 128
kekkon-kinembi: wedding anniversary, 128
kendō: kendo, 231
keshigomu: eraser, 80
keshimasu: turn off, 151, 160, 163, 178, 197
kibun ga warui n desu: I don't feel well, 157
kikimasu: ask, 98, 162, 163; listen (to), 91, 92, 160, 162, 163
kimasu: come, 48, 50, 51, 52, 160, 162, 163, 178, 196, 197; *kite kudasai*: please come, 132
kinembi: anniversary, 128
kin'en: no smoking, nonsmoking, 197
ki ni shimasu: worry (about), be bothered (by), 200, *ki ni shinaide kudasai*: don't worry about it, 200
kinō: yesterday, 51
kin-yōbi: Friday, 59, 60
ki o tsukete: take care, 162
kippu: ticket, 124
kirei desu or *kireina*: pretty, clean, 110, 112, 114, 116, 133
kiro: kilogram, 42
kisu: whiting, 98
kitaguchi: north exit, 143
kitte: stamp, 38
ko: child, 81
kōban: police box, 79
Kobayashi: Kobayashi (surname), 218
Kōbe: Kobe (city), 167
kōcha: tea, 90
kochira: this one, 3
kodomo: child, 214
kōen: park, 51
kōhī: coffee, 43, 90
kōhī-kappu: coffee cup, 43
Kojima: Kojima (surname), 218
kōjō: factory, 162
koko: here, 83
kokonoka: the ninth (of the month), 61
kokonotsu: nine, 39
kōkūbin: airmail, 171
komban: this evening, 155
kombini: convenience store, 78
kondo: this coming, 105
kongetsu: this month, 51
kono: this (used before a noun), 20, 39
konsāto: concert, 132
konshū: this week, 51
kopī o shimasu: make a photocopy, 156
kore: this one, 9, 20, *kore wa?*: what about this? 9, 10
kōsaten: intersection, 171
koshi: lower back, 233
kōto: coat, 124
kotoshi: this year, 51
ku: nine, 10
kudamono: fruit, 225
kudasai: please give me, 29, 38
ku-gatsu: September, 61
kukkingu-sukūru: cooking school, 232
kūkō: airport, 51
kuni: (my) country, 105
kurabu: (exercise) club, 94; golf club, 155
kurasu: class, 235
kuremasu: give (to me), 110
Kurisumasu: Christmas, 126
kuroi (desu): black, 38
kuruma: car, 41, 61
kusuri: medicine, 79
kusuri-ya: drugstore, 79
kyō: today, 51
kyonen: last year, 51
Kyōto: Kyoto, 52
kyū: nine, 10
kyūjū: ninety, 23

machi: town, 235
machimasu: wait, 160, 171, 172, 178 → *chotto*
mada: not yet, 211
made: to, as far as, 175, until, 22
made ni: by (the time), 174
mado: window, 153
mae: front, before, 72, 171
magarimasu: turn, 170, 172
-mai: (counter for flat objects), 38, 39
maiasa: every morning, 91
maiban: every evening, 91
mainichi: every day, 91
maishū: every week, 91
man: ten thousand, 29
manshon: apartment, condominium, 175
mashin: machine, 105
massugu: straight ahead, 171
mata: again, 132; *mata ato de*: see you later, 210, *mata kondo*: next time, 155
Matsui: Matsui (surname), xiii
matsu-kōsu: "pine" meal, 105
mayonēzu: mayonnaise, 199
Mayumi: Mayumi (female first name), 136
me: eye, 233
-me: (suffix), 173
meishi: business card, 9
menyū: menu, 173
mēpuru-shiroppu: maple syrup, 218
mēru: e-mail, 101
mēru-adoresu: e-mail address, 10
miga: right, 171
mikan: tangerine, 42
mikka: the third (of the month), 61
mimasu: see, 88, 89, 91, 92, 143, 160, 162, 163, 178, 197
minamiguchi: south exit, 143
miruku: milk, 90
mise: shop, store, restaurant, 28
misemasu: show, 172, 178, 197, *misete kudasai*: please show me, 28
mittsu: three, 39
mizu: (cold) water, 75
mizuumi: lake, 73
mo: also, too, either, 29; (with other particles), 213
mō: already, 207, 211; more, 17
mochimasu: carry, hold, 151
mōfu: blanket, 176
mō ichi-do: one more time, 17, *mō ichi-do onegashimasu*: one more time, please, 17
moku-yōbi: Thursday, 60
momo: peach, 130
moraimashita: received, 122, 124, *moraimasu*: receive, 110, 122, 123, 124
moshimoshi: hello, 49, 50
mōshiwake gozaimasen: I'm sorry to have to tell you this, 213
mō sukoshi: a little more, 211
mottekimasu: bring, 171, 172
muika: the sixth (of the month), 61
musuko, musukosan: son, 214
musume, musumesan: daughter, 214
muttsu: six, 39
muzukashii (desu): difficult, 113, 115
myūjikaru: musical, 185

Nagoya: Nagoya (city), 213
naka: inside, middle, 72
Nakamura: Nakamura (surname), xiii
nama-bīru: draft beer, 105
namae: name, 9
nani: what, 13
nana: seven, 10
nanajū: seventy, 23
nanatsu: seven, 39
nan-ban: what number, 15
nan-bon: how many (long, thin objects), 81
nan de: how, by what means, 80, 83
nan deshō ka: how may I help you? 176
nan-gatsu: what month, 62
nani: what, 69
nani mo ... -masen: nothing, 73
nan-ji: what time, 22, *nan-ji goro*: about/approximately what time, 86
nan-mai: how many (flat objects), 81
nan-nichi: what day (of the month), 62
nan-nin: how many people, 80
nanoka: the seventh (of the month), 61
nan-yōbi: what day (of the week), 62
narimasu: learn, take lessons in, 230; *naritai desu*: want to learn, 232, 234
Narita Kūkō: Narita Airport, 184
natsu: summer, 62
natsu-yasumi: summer vacation, 62
ne: right?, isn't it?, 50
nekkuresu: necklace, 124
nekutai: necktie, 124
-nen: year, 60
-nen (kan): year(s), 181
netsu: fever, 236
ni: (as object marker), 88, at, on, in, 59, 68; (indicating direction of movement), 48, 58, 180, (indicating giver/receiver), 110; (indicating place), 213, (indicating receiver of an action), 88
ni: two, 10
niaimasu: suit, look good on, 129
-nichi: day (of the month), 61
-nichi (kan): day(s), 181
nichi-yōbi: Sunday, 60
ni-gatsu: February, 61
nigiyaka desu or *nigiyakana*: lively, 114, 116, 133
Nihon: Japan, 4
Nihon-go: Japanese (language), 75
Nihon-jin: Japanese (person), 4
Nihon-ryōri: Japanese food, 232
nijū: twenty, 23

nijuyokka: the twenty-fourth (of the month), 61
Nikkō: Nikko (scenic area), 69
nimotsu: luggage, baggage, 153
nimotsu o okurimasu: send luggage, 88
-nin: person, 80
nishiguchi: west exit, 143
niwa: garden, 83
no ato de: after, 162
no mae ni: before, 163
no: (appositive usage), 122, 's, of (indicating belonging or affiliation) 3, 4, 9
nodo: throat, 233
nomimasu: drink, 88, 91, 92, 160, 162, 163, 196, 197
norimasu: get on (a vehicle), 180, 181
Nozomi Depāto: Nozomi Department Store, 3
Nyūyōku: New York, 184

o: (indicating object), 68, 110; (indicating point of departure), 180; (indicating point of passage), 171; (replaced by *ga*), 222; (replaced by *wa*), 213
o-cha: green tea, 90; tea ceremony, 233
Ochiai: Ochiai (surname), 229
Odaiba: Odaiba (district), 77
Ogawa: Ogawa (surname), xiii
ohairikudasai: please come in, 59
ohayō gozaimasu: good morning, 49
oishi (desu): delicious, tasty, 98, 113, 115, 133
ojamashimasu: may I come in?, 121
ojōsan: daughter, 214
o-kane: money, 154
o-kanjō: bill, check, 106
okāsan: (another her person's) mother, 99
o-kashi: sweets, 112
ōki (desu): large, big, 38, 110, 113, 114
okimasu: put, 194
Okinawa: Okinawa (islands), 66
okosan: child, 214
oku: one hundred million, 29
okurimasu: send, 98, 100, *okutte kudasai*: please send, 170
okusan: (another person's) wife, 95, 99
o-kyaku-san: customer, client, 191
o-matsuri: festival, 62, 132
o-mikoshi: portable shrine, 151
o-miyage: gift, souvenir, 124
omoshiroi (desu): interesting, 113, 115, 133
onaka: belly, stomach, 233
o-namae: (another person's) name, 96
onegaishimasu: please (get me ...), 8, 96
onēsan: older sister, 214
ongaku: music, 92
oniisan: older brother, 214
onna: female, woman, 22
onna no hito: woman, 22
onna no ko: girl, 81
o-nomimono: beverage, 105
onsen: hot spring (resort), 67, 70
onmasu: get off (a vehicle), 180, 181
Ōsaka: Osaka, 52
Ōsaka-shisha: Osaka (branch) office, 52
oshiemasu: teach, show, tell, 170, 172
osoi (desu): be late, 238
Ōsutoraria: Australia, 4
Ōsutoraria-jin: Australian (person), 4
o-taku: (another person's) house, 131
Otaru: Otaru (city), 167
o-tearai: restroom, lavatory, 71
Ōtemachi: Otemachi (district), 182
o-tera: Buddhist temple, 69
otoko: male, man, 73
otoko no hito: man, 73
otoko no ko: boy, 81
otōsan: (another person's) father, 99
otōto, otōtosan: younger brother, 214
otto: (my) husband, 99

-par: cupful, glassful, 112
pan: bread, 79
panfuretto: pamphlet, brochure, 189
pan-ya: bakery, 79
Pari: Paris, 185
pasokon: (personal) computer, 30
pātī: party, 23
pātī o shimasu: have a party, 149
pen: pen, 74
piano: piano, 229
piza: pizza, 172
poketto: pocket, 75
-pun (kan): minute(s), 22, 181
purezento: present, 128
pūru: pool, 26

raigetsu: next month, 51
rainen: next year, 51
raishū: next week, 51
rajo: radio, 30
raketto: racket, 155
rei: zero, 10
reizōko: refrigerator, 72
rekishi: history, 124
renshū o shimasu: practice, 231
repōto: report, 164
resutoran: restaurant, 22
Resutoran Doragon: Restaurant Dragon, 105
Resutoran Rōma: Restaurant Roma, 103
Resutoran Tōkyō: Restaurant Tokyo, 217
Rin: Lin (surname), 5
ringo: apple, 38
robī: lobby, 103, 206
roku: six, 10
roku-gatsu: June, 61
rokujū: sixty, 23
Rōma: Rome, 103
rōmaji: romanized Japanese, 194
Rondon: London, 7
Rondon Ginkō: Bank of London, 7
Roppongi: Roppongi (district), 117
Roppongi Kōsaten: Roppongi Crossing, 175
rūmu-sābisu: room service, 176
ryokan: traditional Japanese inn, 77
ryokō: trip, travel, 62
ryokō-gaisha: travel agency, 186
ryōri: cooking, cuisine, 105
ryōshūsho: receipt, 106

sā: let me see, 219; *sā, wakarimasen*: I don't know, 219
saifu: wallet, 74
sakana: fish, 98
saka-ya: liquor store, 79
sake: sake, 90
saki: ahead, 171
sakkā: soccer, 142, 224
Sakura Bijutsukan: Sakura Art Museum, 180
-sama: Mr., Mrs., Ms., Miss, 98
sampo o shimasu: go for a walk, 95
sampuru: sample, 170
samui (desu): cold, 113, 115, 133
san: three, 10
-san: Mr., Mrs., Ms., Miss, 3
sandoitchi: sandwich, 90
Sanfuranshisuko: San Francisco, 184
san-gatsu: March, 61
sanjū: thirty, 23
san-nin: three people, 80
Sapporo: Sapporo (city), 103
Sapporo-shisha: Sapporo (branch) office, 103
sarada: salad, 90
Sasaki: Sasaki (surname), xiii
Satō: Sato (surname), 162
satō: sugar, 199
sen: one thousand, 29, 30
-sen: (train) line, 187
senaka: back, 233
sengetsu: last month, 51
sen-man: ten million, 29
sen-oku: one hundred billion, 29
senshū: last week, 51
sero-tēpu: Scotch tape, 80
sētā: sweater, 75
setsumei o shimasu: explain, 205, 206, 207, *setsumei o shite imasu*: is/are explaining, 204, 207
shachō: president (of a company), 101
shāpupenshiru: mechanical pencil, 35
shashin: photograph, 151
shi: four, 10
shiai: game, match, 142
Shibuya: Shibuya (district), 58
Shibuya Eki: Shibuya Station, 175
shichi: seven, 10
shichi-gatsu: July, 61
shi-gatsu: April, 61
shigoto: work, job, 23
shigoto o shimasu: work, 91
shimasu: do, 89, 92, 143, 160, 162, 163, 178, 196, 197
Shimbashi: Shimbashi (district), 147
Shimbashi Eki: Shimbashi Station, 147
shimbun: newspaper, 11
shimemasu: close, shut, 151, 163, 196, 197
Shinagawa: Shinagawa (district), 216
shingō: traffic signal, 171
Shinjuku: Shinjuku (district), 147
Shinjuku Eki: Shinjuku Station, 147
shinkansen: the Shinkansen, 61
shinsetsu desu or shinsetsuna: kind, helpful, 114, 116
shiroi (desu): white, 175
shiryō: data, information, material, documents, literature, 173
shisha: branch office, 51
shita: bottom, below, under, 72
shitsureishimasu: good-bye, 50
shitte imasu: know, 204, 213, 214
shizuka desu or shizukana: quiet, 114, 116, 133
shō: show, 132

shōhin: product, merchandise, 170
shōkaishimasu: introduce, 230
Shokora-shokora: Chocolat-Chocolat (fictitious product name), 213
shokuji o shimasu: have a meal, 114
shōrai: the future, 235
shujin: (my) husband, 99
-shūkan: week(s), 181
shūkurīmu: cream puff, 44
shūmatsu: weekend, 89
shutchō: business trip, 57
soba-ya: buckwheat noodle shop, 77
sō desu: that's right, 9, 10; *sō desu ka*: I see, 27
sochira: there, 49
sofā: sofa, 72
sōji o shimasu: clean, 206, 207
sono: that (used before a noun), 20, 37, 232–33
sore: that one, 20, 28
sorekara: also, in addition, 170
sorosoro: in just a short while, 129
sorosoro shitsureishimasu: it's time to be going, I'd better get going, 129
soshite: and, 216
sugu: soon, right away, 170
sumi: swimming, 224
(*tabako o*) *sumasu*: smoke (a cigarette), 189, 190, 196
Suisu: Switzerland, 39
sui-yōbi: Wednesday, 60
sukāfu: scarf, 124
suki desu: like, 222, 224, 225
sukī: skiing, 224
sukina: favorite, 122
sukiyaki: sukiyaki, 115
sumimasen: I'm sorry, 17, 189, excuse me, 21, *sumimasendeshita*: I'm sorry, 157
sumimasu: live, 204, 213, 214, *sunde imasu*: live, 204, 213, 214
Sumisu: Smith (surname), xiii
sumō: sumo wrestling, 144
supa: spa, 70
sūpā: supermarket, 22
supōtsu: sport(s), 94
supōtsu-kurabu: gym, exercise club, 94
sūpu: soup, 90
sushi: sushi, 103
Sushimasa: Sushimasa (fictitious sushi bar), 219
sushi-ya: sushi restaurant, 103
sutekina: fine, wonderful, lovely, 231
sutēki: steak, 93
Suzuki: Suzuki (surname), xiii

tabemasu: eat, 90, 91, 92, 160, 162, 163, 176, 197, 222
tachimasu: stand up, 196, 197
Tai: Thailand, 4
-tai: want to, 222, 234
taihen: very much, extremely, 213
Tai-jin: Thai (person), 4
taikai: large gathering, 142
taishikan: embassy, 15
Takahashi: Takahashi (surname), xiii
takai (*desu*): expensive, 113, 114
taki: waterfall, 77
takuhaibin: courier service, 171
takusan: a lot, many, much, 81
takushī: taxi, 61
takushī-noriba: taxi stand, 79
tanjōbi: birthday, 62
tanoshii (*desu*): fun, enjoyable, 132, 133, *tanoshikatta* (*desu*): was fun, 132, 133
taoru: towel, 43
te: hand, arm, 233
tēburu: table, 72
techō: date book, small notebook, planner, 17
tegami: letter, 99
tegami o kakimasu: write a letter, 88
temae: just before, 171
Temmasa: Temmasa (fictitious restaurant name), 96
tempura: tempura, 90
tempura-ya: tempura restaurant, 98
ten: decimal point, 29
tenisu: tennis, 224
tenisu o shimasu: play tennis, 91
tenisu-kōto: tennis court, 95
tenki: weather, 120
terebi: television, 30
to: and, 70, 73; with, together with, 50
tō: ten, 38, 39
todokemasu: deliver, 171, 172
tōi (*desu*): far, 113, 115
tōka: the tenth (of the month), 61
tokei: watch, clock, 11
tokidoki: sometimes, 98
tokoro: place, 118
Tōkyō: Tokyo, 7
Tōkyō Daigaku: Tokyo University, 7
Tōkyō Eki: Tokyo Station, 52
Tōkyō Hōru: Tokyo Hall, 147
Tōkyō Hoteru: Tokyo Hotel, 65
Tōkyō Sutajiamu: Tokyo Stadium, 230
Tōkyō Tawā: Tokyo Tower, 175
tomemasu: stop, park, 170, 172, 196
tomodachi: friend, 51
tonari: next to, 72
(*shashin o*) *torimasu*: take (a photograph), 151, 172, 196; *torimasu yo*: (said when you are about to take someone's photo), 195, *totte mo ii desu ka*: may I take (a photograph)?, 189
toshokan: library, 94
totemo: very, 112
T-shatsu: T-shirt, 37, 38
tsugi: next, 172
tsuitachi: the first (of the month), 61
tsukaimasu: use, 170, 189, 190, 196, *tsukawenaide kudasai*: please don't use, 195, 196
tsukemasu: turn on, 151, 163
tsukimasu: arrive, 180, 181
tsukurimasu: make, 206, 207
tsuma: (my) wife, 99
tsumaranai (*desu*): boring, tedious, 132, 133
tsutomemasu: be employed, 204, 214; *tsutomete imasu*: be employed, 204, 213, 214
-tte nan desu ka: what is a/an . . ?, 70

uchi: house, 51
ue: top, above, 72
uisukī: whiskey, 226
uketsuke: reception desk, receptionist, 8, 71
ukiyoe: ukiyoe (woodblock print), 189
umi: ocean, sea, 229
untenshu: driver, 58
urimasu: sell, 204, 213, 214; *utte imasu*: sell, 204, 213, 214
ushiro: back, behind, 72

wa: (indicating question), 10; (instead of *o*), 211, 213, (instead of *ga*), 58, 68; (topic marker), 2, 3; (with other particles), 213
wain: wine, 43
wakarimashita: understood, 96, *wakarimasu*: understand, 96, 222, 224, 225
Wan: Wang (surname), 218
warui (*desu*): bad, 132, 133
wasabi: wasabi, 197
watashi: I, 4
watashi no: mine, 151, my, 9
watashitachi: we, 132

ya: and, and so on, 70
-ya: shop, 77
yakyū: baseball, 224
Yamada: Yamada (surname), xiii
Yamamoto: Yamamoto (surname), xiii
Yamashita: Yamashita (surname), 218
yasai: vegetable, 95
yasai-jūsu: vegetable juice, 95
yasashii (*desu*): easy, 113, 115
yasui (*desu*): inexpensive, 113, 114
yasumi: break, rest, 23
yasumimasu: rest, relax, 157, 190
yattsu: eight, 39
yo: (particle), 70
-yōbi: day (of the week), 60
yobimasu: call, invite, 168
yōka: the eighth (of the month), 61
yokatta (*desu*): that's good, 136
yokka: the fourth (of the month), 61
Yokohama: Yokohama (city), 56
Yokohama-shisha: Yokohama (branch) office, 56
Yokosuka-sen: Yokosuka Line, 187
yoku irasshaimashita: welcome, 121
yoku: often, 98, well, 129
yomimasu: read, 88, 91, 92, 160, 162, 163, 178
yon: four, 10
yonjū: forty, 23
yoroshii (*desu*): good, all right, 162
yoroshiku onegaishimasu: pleased to meet you, 3, 4
yottsu: four, 39
yoyaku: reservation, 96
yūbin: mail, post, 173
yūbinkyoku: post office, 22
yubiwa: ring, 124
yuki: snow, 142
yuki-matsuri: snow festival, 142
yūmei desu or *yūmeina*: famous, 114, 116

zannen desu ga, tsugō ga warui desu: I'm sorry, but it wouldn't be convenient (for me), 140, 144
zasshi: magazine, 33
zehi: by all means, certainly, 140, 149
zenzen . . -masen: not at all, 103, 248–49
zero: zero, 10

English-Japanese Glossary

Note: Idiomatic expressions have been omitted, as have counters, particles that do not translate into English, certain proper nouns, and some of the words listed in the Appendixes of this book.

The following abbreviations are used in this glossary:
adj. adjective
n. noun
v. verb

about (of time) *goro*, 86; (of period, price, amount, etc.) *gurai*, 120
above: *ue*, 72
add: *iremasu*, 197
address: *go-jūsho*, 174; *jūsho*, 10
after: *no ato de*, 162
afternoon: *hiru*, 23
again: *mata*, 132
ahead: *saki*, 171
air conditioner: *eakon*, 153
airmail: *kōkūbin*, 171
airplane: *hikōki*, 61
airport: *kūkō*, 51
all night: *kekkō desu*, 36; *yoroshii (desu)*, 162
alone: *hitori de*, 50
already: *mō*, 207, 211
also: *mo* (particle), 29; *sorekara*, 170
a.m.: *gozen*, 23
and: *soshite*, 216; *ya* (particle), 70
anniversary: *kinenbi*, 128
apartment: *manshon*, 175
approximately: *gurai*, 120
April: *shi-gatsu*, 61
arm: *te*, 233
arrive: *tsukimasu*, 180, 181
art museum: *bijutsukan*, 164
ask: *kikimasu*, 98, 162, 163
at: *ni* (particle), 59, 68
attorney: *bengoshi*, 3, 5
August: *hachi-gatsu*, 61

baby: *akachan*, 199
back: (of body) *senaka*, 233; (indicating position) *ushiro*, 72
bad: *warui (desu)*, 132, 133
baggage: *nimotsu*, 153
bakery: *pan-ya*, 79
ballpoint pen: *bōrupen*, 35
bank: *ginkō*, 7, 22
bar: *bā*, 93
baseball: *yakyū*, 224
basement: *chika*, 71
be: *arimasu*, 68, 69, 73, 79, 142; *desu*, 2, 3, 79; *imasu*, 68, 73, 178; *irasshaimasu*, 136
because: *kara* (particle), 98, 142
bed: *beddo*, 72
before: *mae*, 72, 171; *no mae ni*, 163
behind: *ushiro*, 72
belly: *onaka*, 233
below: *shita*, 72
bench: *benchi*, 157
beverage: *o-nomimono*, 105
big: *ōkii (desu)*, 38, 110, 113, 114
bill: *o-kanjō*, 106
billion: *jū-oku*, 29
birthday: *tanjōbi*, 62
black: *kuroi (desu)*, 38
blanket: *mōfu*, 176
blouse: *burausu*, 124
blue: *aoi (desu)*, 37, 38
book: *hon*, 11
bookstore: *hon-ya*, 79
boring: *tsumaranai (desu)*, 132, 133
bottom: *shita*, 72
bouquet: *hanataba*, 123
boy: *otoko no ko*, 81
branch office: *shisha*, 51
bread: *pan*, 79
break: *yasumi*, 23
breakfast: *asa-gohan*, 26, 90
briefcase: *kaban*, 72
bring: *mottekimasu*, 171, 172
brochure: *panfuretto*, 189
brother: *ani*, *oniisan*, *otōto*, *otōtosan*, 214
buckwheat noodle shop: *soba-ya*, 77
bus: *basu*, 58
business card: *kādo*, 193; *meishi*, 9
business trip: *shutchō*, 57
bus stop: *basutei*, 85
bus terminal: *basu-noriba*, 79
busy: *isogashii (desu)*, 113, 115
but: *demo*, 151; *ga* (particle), 170, 205
buy: *kaimasu*, 88, 91, 92, 160, 163, 178
by: *de* (particle), 59, 170; by (the time): *made ni*, 174
by all means: *zehi*, 140, 149
by what means: *nan de*, 60

cake: *kēki*, 115
call: *yobimasu*, 168
cap: *bōshi*, 124
car: *kuruma*, 41, 81
carnation: *kānēshon*, 123
carry: (on one's shoulders) *katsugimasu*, 151; (in one's hands) *mochimasu*, 151
cart: *kāto*, 84
catalog: *katarogu*, 170, 190
CD: *CD* (=*shīdī*), 30
CD player: *CD-purēyā*, 30
cell phone: *keitai*, 11
certainly: *zehi*, 140, 149
chair: *isu*, 72
check: *o-kanjō*, 106
check-in counter: *chekkuin-kauntā*, 84
child: *ko*, 81; *kodomo*, 214; *okosan*, 214
chocolate: *chokorēto*, 126
class: *jugyō*, 152; *kurasu*, 235
clean: (adj.) *kirei desu* or *kirena*, 180, 112, 114, 116, 133; (v.) *sōji o shimasu*, 206, 207
clearance sale: *bāgen-sēru*, 132
client: *o-kyaku-san*, 191
clinic: *byōin*, 79
clock: *tokei*, 11
close: *shimemasu*, 151, 163, 196, 197
coat: *kōto*, 124
coffee: *kōhī*, 43, 90
coffee cup: *kōhī-kappu*, 43
cold: *samui (desu)*, 113, 115, 133
college: *daigaku*, 7
color: *iro*, 122
come: *kimasu*, 48, 50, 51, 52, 160, 162, 163, 178, 196, 197
company: *kaisha*, 9
computer: *pasokon*, 30
concert: *konsāto*, 132
concert hall: *hōru*, 147
condominium: *manshon*, 175
conference: *kaigi*, 23
conference room: *kaigishitsu*, 83
convenience store: *kombini*, 78
convenient: *benri desu* or *benrina*, 114, 116
cooking: *ryōri*, 105
cooking school: *kukkingu-sukūru*, 232
corner: *kado*, 171
country, my: *kuni*, 105
courier service: *takuhaibin*, 171
cream puff: *shukurimu*, 44
credit card: *kādo*, 36
cuisine: *ryōri*, 105
cup: *kappu*, 43
curry: *karē*, 115
customer: *o-kyaku-san*, 191

dancing: *dansu*, 226
data: *shiryō*, 173
date book: *techō*, 17
daughter: *musume*, *musumesan*, 214
day: (period of) *-ka* (*kan*), *-nichi* (*kan*), 181, (of the month) *-nichi*, 61, (of the week) *-yōbi*, 60
day after tomorrow, the: *asatte*, 52
December: *jūni-gatsu*, 61
decimal point: *ten*, 29
degree: *-do*, 236
delicious: *oishii (desu)*, 98, 113, 115, 133
deliver: *todokemasu*, 171, 172
department store: *depāto*, 3, 22
dictionary: *jisho*, 35
difficult: *muzukashii (desu)*, 113, 115
digital camera: *deijikame*, 30
dinner: *ban-gohan*, 26, 90
do: *shimasu*, 89, 92, 143, 160, 162, 163, 178, 196, 197
doctor: *isha*, 200
dog: *inu*, 95
door: *doa*, 153
draft beer: *nama-bīru*, 105
drawer: *hikidashi*, 75
drink: *nomimasu*, 88, 91, 92, 160, 162, 163, 196, 197
driver: *untenshu*, 58
drugstore: *kusuri-ya*, 79
DVD: *DVD* (=*dībuidī*), 35

earphones: *iyahōn*, 190
earring: *iyaringu*, 124
east exit: *higashiguchi*, 143
easy: *yasashii (desu)*, 113, 115
eat: *tabemasu*, 90, 91, 92, 160, 162, 163, 178, 197, 222
eight: *hachi*, 10; *yattsu*, 39
eighth, the: (of the month) *yōka*, 61
eighty: *hachijū*, 23
either: *mo* (particle), 29
electronic dictionary: *denshi-jisho*, 126
electronics store: *denki-ya*, 217
elevator: *erebēta*, 206
e-mail: *mēru*, 101
e-mail address: *mēru-adoresu*, 10
embassy: *taishikan*, 15
employed, be: *tsutomemasu*, 204, 214; *tsutomete imasu*, 204, 213, 214
engineer: *enjinia*, 5
enter: *hairimasu*, 189, 190
entrance: *iriguchi*, 85, 143
equipment: *dōgu*, 155
eraser: *keshigomu*, 80
escalator: *esukarēta*, 206
every day: *mainichi*, 91
every evening: *maiban*, 91
every morning: *maiasa*, 91
every week: *maishū*, 91
exercise club: *supōtsu-kurabu*, 94
exist: *imasu*, 68, 73, 178
exit: *deguchi*, 198
expensive: *takai (desu)*, 113, 114
explain: *setsumei o shimasu*, 205, 206, 207
extremely: *taihen*, 213
eye: *me*, 233

factory: *kōjō*, 162
fair: *fine*, 185
family: *kazoku*, 69
famous: *yūmei desu* or *yūmena*, 114, 116
far: *tōi (desu)*, 113, 115
father: *chichi*, *otōsan*, 99
favorite: *sukina*, 122
fax: *fakkusu*, 171
February: *ni-gatsu*, 61
female: *onna*, 22
festival: *o-matsuri*, 62, 132
fever: *netsu*, 236
fifth, the: (of the month) *itsuka*, 61
fifty: *gojū*, 22, 23
file: *fairu*, 80
fine: *kekkō desu*, 36, *sutekina*, 231
fireworks: *hanabi*, 142
fireworks display: *hanabi-taikai*, 142
first, the: (of the month) *tsuitachi*, 61
first basement floor: *chika ikkai*, 71
first floor: *ikkai*, 71
five: *go*, 10, *itsutsu*, 39
flash: *furasshu*, 195
flower: *hana*, 72
flower arranging: *ikebana*, 233
foot: *ashi*, 233
forty: *yonjū*, 23
four: *shi*, *yon*, 10, *yottsu*, 39
fourteenth, the: (of the month) *jūyokka*, 61
fourth, the: (of the month) *yokka*, 61
free: *hima desu* or *himana*, 114, 116
fresh: *atarashii (desu)*, 113, 115
Friday: *kin-yōbi*, 59, 60
friend: *tomodachi*, 51
from: *kara*, 22, 61
front: *mae*, 72, 171
front desk: *furonto*, 26
fruit: *kudamono*, 225
fun: *tanoshii (desu)*, 132, 133
furniture: *kagu*, 234
future: *shōrai*, 235

game: *gēmu*, 116; *shiai*, 142
garden: *niwa*, 83
get off: (a vehicle) *orimasu*, 180, 181
get on: (a vehicle) *norimasu*, 180, 181
gift: *o-miyage*, 124
girl: *onna no ko*, 81
give: *agemasu*, 110, 123, 124
go: *ikimasu*, 48, 50, 51, 52, 143, 160, 162, 163, 178, 222
go home: *kaerimasu*, 48, 51, 52, 160, 162, 163, 178, 197
golf club: *kurabu*, 155
good: *ii (desu)*, 113, 115, 133; *yoroshii (desu)*, 162
good-bye: *shitsureishimasu*, 50
good morning: *ohayō gozaimasu*, 49
green tea: *o-cha*, 90
ground floor: *ikkai*, 71
guide: *gaido*, 190
gym: *jimu*, 26, *supōtsu-kurabu*, 94

half past: (of time) *han*, 23
hamburger: *hambāgā*, 199
hand: *te*, 233
hat: *bōshi*, 124
have: *arimasu*, 151
head: *atama*, 233
headphones: *iyahōn*, 190
hello: (on the telephone) *moshimoshi*, 49, 50
helpful: *shinsetsu desu* or *shinsetsuna*, 114, 116
here: *koko*, 83
history: *rekishi*, 124
hold: *mochimasu*, 151
hospital: *byōin*, 79
hot: (of temperature) *atsui (desu)*, 113, 115, 133; (spicy) *karai (desu)*, 113, 115
hotel: *hoteru*, 65
hot spring (resort): *onsen*, 67, 70
hour(s): *-jikan*, 181
house: *o-taku*, 131, *uchi*, 51
how: *dō*, 135, *dōyatte*, 182, *nan de*, 60
how about: *ikaga desu ka*, 112
how long: *donogurai*, 180
how many: *ikutsu*, *nan-bon*, *nan-mai*, 81
how many people: *nan-nin*, 80
how much: *ikura*, 28
hundred: *hyaku*, 23, 30
hundred billion: *sen-oku*, 29
hundred million: *ichi-oku*, *oku*, 29
hundred thousand: *jū-man*, 29
hurt: *itai (desu)*, 222, 234
husband: *go-shujin*, *otto*, *shujin*, 99

I: *watashi*, 4
-ian: (person from) *-jin*, 4
ice coffee: *aisu-kōhī*, 199
ice cream: *aisu-kurīmu*, 104
in: *ni* (particle), 59, 68
inexpensive: *yasui (desu)*, 113, 114
information: *shiryō*, 173
inn, traditional Japanese: *ryokan*, 77
inside: *naka*, 72
interesting: *omoshiroi (desu)*, 113, 115, 133
intersection: *kōsaten*, 171
introduce: *shōkaishimasu*, 230
invite: *yobimasu*, 168
is/are not: *dewa/ja arimasen*, 2, 11
isn't it?: *ne* (particle), 50

January: *ichi-gatsu*, 61
jazz: *jazu*, 228
job: *shigoto*, 23
jog: *jogingu o shimasu*, 91
juice: *jūsu*, 90
July: *shichi-gatsu*, 61
June: *roku-gatsu*, 61
just before: *temae*, 171

Kabuki: *Kabuki*, 89
ketchup: *kechappu*, 199
key: *kagi*, 11
kilogram: *kiro*, 42
kind: *shinsetsu desu* or *shinsetsuna*, 114, 116
know: *shitte imasu*, 204, 213, 214

lake: *mizuumi*, 73
language: *-go*, 35
large: *ōki (desu)*, 38, 110, 113, 114
last month: *sengetsu*, 51
last week: *senshū*, 51
last year: *kyonen*, 51
late: *osoi (desu)*, 238
lawyer: *bengoshi*, 3, 5
learn: *narimasu*, 230
leave: *demasu*, 180, 181
left: *hidari*, 171
leg: *ashi*, 233
lend: *kashimasu*, 151, 172
letter: *tegami*, 99
library: *toshokan*, 94
light: *denki*, 164
like: *suki desu*, 222, 224, 225
liquor store: *saka-ya*, 79
listen (to): *kikimasu*, 91, 92, 160, 162, 163
little bit, a: *chotto*, 121
little more, a: *mō sukoshi*, 211
live: *sumimasu*, 204, 213, 214; *sunde imasu*, 204, 213, 214
lively: *nigiyaka desu* or *nigiyakana*, 114, 116, 133
lobby: *robī*, 103, 206
lot, a: *takusan*, 81
lovely: *sutekina*, 231
lower back: *koshi*, 233
luggage: *nimotsu*, 153
lunch: *hiru-gohan*, 90
lunch break: *hiru-yasumi*, 23

machine: *mashin*, 105
magazine: *zasshi*, 33
mail: *yūbin*, 173
main office: *honsha*, 170

make: *tsukurimasu*, 206, 207
make a photocopy: *kopī o shimasu*, 156
male: *otoko*, 73
man: *otoko*, *otoko no hito*, 73
many: *takusan*, 81
map: *chizu*, 152
maple syrup: *mēpuru-shiroppu*, 218
March: *san-gatsu*, 61
marketing: *hambai*, 162
marriage: *kekkon*, 128
match: *shiai*, 142
May: *go-gatsu*, 61
mayonnaise: *mayonēzu*, 199
meal: *gohan*, 26
mechanical pencil: *shāpupenshiru*, 35
medicine: *kusuri*, 79
meet: *aimasu*, 98, 100, 143, 162, 163, 197
meeting: *kaigi*, 23
menu: *menyū*, 173
merchandise: *shōhin*, 170
middle: *naka*, 72
milk: *miruku*, 90
million: *hyaku-man*, 29
mine: *watashi no*, 151
minute(s): *-funi/-pun (kan)*, 22, 181
mobile phone: *keitai*, 11
Monday: *getsu-yōbi*, 60
money: *o-kane*, 154
month: *-gatsu*, 61 (period of) *-kagetsu*, 181
more: *mō*, 17
morning: *asa*, 26
mother: *haha*, *okāsan*,, 99
movie: *eiga*, 23
Mr., Mrs., Ms., Miss: *-san*, 3
Mt. Fuji: *Fujisan*, 185
much: *takusan*, 81
music: *ongaku*, 92
musical: *myūjikaru*, 185
my: *watashi no*, 9

name: *namae*, 9, *o-namae*, 96
near: *chikai (desu)*, 113, 115
nearby: *chikaku*, 72
necklace: *nekkuresu*, 124
necktie: *nekutai*, 124
new: *atarashii (desu)*, 113, 115
newspaper: *shimbun*, 11
next: *tsugi*, 172
next month: *raigetsu*, 51
next to: *tonari*, 72
next week: *raishū*, 51
next year: *rainen*, 51
nine: *kokonotsu*, 39; *ku*, *kyū*, 10
ninety: *kyūjū*, 23
ninth, the: (of the month) *kokonoka*, 61
no: *iie*, 2, 6, 48, 204
no one: *dare mo . . -masen*, 73
no parking: *chūsha-kinshi*, 197
north exit: *kitaguchi*, 143
no smoking: *kin'en*, 197
not at all: *zenzen . . -masen*, 103, 248–49
notebook: *techō*, 17
no thank you: *kekkō desu*, 112
nothing: *nani mo . . -masen*, 73
not much: *amari . . -masen*, 99, 248–49
not yet: *mada*, 211
November: *jūichi-gatsu*, 61
now: *ima*, 21
number: *bangō*, 10

ocean: *umi*, 229
October: *jū-gatsu*, 61
of: *no* (particle), 3, 4, 9
office, the: *kaisha*, 9
old: *furui (desu)*, 113, 115
on: *ni* (particle), 59, 68
one: *hitotsu*, 38, 39; *ichi*, 10
one more time: *mō ichi-do*, 17
one person: *hitori*, 80
one time: *ichi-do*, 17
open: *akemasu*, 151, 160, 163, 196, 197
over there: *asoko*, 78
own: *arimasu*, 151

painful: *itai (desu)*, 222, 234
painting: *e*, 119
pamphlet: *panfuretto*, 189
park: (n.) *kōen*, 51; (v.) *tomemasu*, 170, 172, 196
parking lot: *chūshajō*, 71
part: *bun*, 29
party: *pātī*, 23
peach: *momo*, 130
pen: *pen*, 74
pencil: *empitsu*, 80
person: *hito*, 22 → *-jin*
person over there, that: *achira*, 230
photograph: *shashin*, 151
piano: *piano*, 229
pizza: *piza*, 172
place: *tokoro*, 118
planner: *techō*, 17
platform: *hōmu*, 143
play golf: *gorufu o shimasu*, 95
please: *dōzo*, 9, 112; (get me . . .) *onegaishimasu*, 8, 96
p.m.: *gogo*, 22
pocket: *poketto*, 75
police box: *kōban*, 79
pool: *pūru*, 26
portable shrine: *o-mikoshi*, 151
post: *yūbin*, 173
postcard: *ehagaki*, 190; *hagaki*, 38
post office: *yūbinkyoku*, 22
practice: *renshū o shimasu*, 231
present: *purezento*, 128
president: (of a company) *shachō*, 101
pretty: *kirei desu* or *kirema*, 110, 112, 114, 116, 133
product: *shōhin*, 170
put: *okimasu*, 194
put in: *iremasu*, 197

quiet: *shizuka desu* or *shizukana*, 114, 116, 133

racket: *raketto*, 155
radio: *rajio*, 30
read: *yomimasu*, 88, 91, 92, 160, 162, 163, 178
really: *hontō ni*, 120
receipt: *ryōshūsho*, 106
receive: *morai masu*, 110, 122, 123, 124
reception desk: *uketsuke*, 8, 71
recorded guide: *jiyahōn-gaido*, 190
red: *akai (desu)*, 38
refrigerator: *reizōko*, 72
relax: *yasumimasu*, 157, 190
report: *repōto*, 164
reservation: *yoyaku*, 96
rest: (n.) *yasumi*, 23; (v.) *yasumimasu*, 157, 190
restaurant: *mise*, 28, *resutoran*, 22
restroom: *o-tearai*, 71
return: *kaerimasu*, 48, 51, 52, 160, 162, 163, 178, 197
right: *migi*, 171
right?: *ne* (particle), 50
right away: *sugu*, 170
ring: *yubiwa*, 124
romanized Japanese: *rōmaji*, 194
room service: *rūmu-sābisu*, 176
rose: *bara*, 123

sake: *sake*, 90
salad: *sarada*, 90
sales: *hambai*, 162
sales department: *eigyō-bu*, 205
sample: *sampuru*, 170
sandwich: *sandoitchi*, 90
Saturday: *do-yōbi*, 60
say: *iimasu*, 170, 172
scarf: *sukāfu*, 124
school: *gakkō*, 101
scissors: *hasami*, 80
Scotch tape: *sero-tēpu*, 80
sea: *umi*, 229
second: *futatsu-me*, 173
second, the: (of the month) *futsuka*, 61
secretary: *kusho*, 5
see: *mimasu*, 88, 89, 91, 92, 143, 160, 162, 163, 178, 197
sell: *urimasu*, 204, 213, 214, *ute imasu*, 204, 213, 214
send: *okurimasu*, 98, 100
September: *ku-gatsu*, 61
seven: *nana*, *shichi*, 10, *nanatsu*, 39
seventh, the: (of the month) *nanoka*, 61
seventy: *nanajū*, 23
Shinto shrine: *jinja*, 70
shop: (v.) *kaimono o shimasu*, 91 (n.) *mise*, 28; (n.) *-ya*, 77
shoulder: *kata*, 233
show: (v.) *misemasu*, 172, 178, 197, (v.) *oshiemasu*, 170, 172, (n.) *shō*, 132
sister: *ane*, *onēsan*, *imōto*, *imōtosan*, 214
six: *muttsu*, 39, *roku*, 10
sixth, the: (of the month) *muika*, 61
sixty: *rokujū*, 23
skiing: *suki*, 224
skilled, be: *jōzu desu*, 222, 224, 225
small: *chisai (desu)*, 38, 113, 114
smoke (a cigarette): (*tabako o*) *suimasu*, 189, 190, 196
snow: *yuki*, 142
snow festival: *yuki-matsuri*, 142
soccer: *sakkā*, 142, 224
sofa: *sofā*, 72
sometimes: *tokidoki*, 98
son: *musuko*, *musukosan*, 214
soon: *sugu*, 170
soup: *sūpu*, 90
south exit: *minamiguchi*, 143

souvenir: *o-miyage*, 124
spa: *supa*, 70
sport(s): *supōtsu*, 94
stairs: *kaidan*, 206
stand up: *tachimasu*, 196, 197
stapler: *hotchikisu*, 80
station: *eki*, 51
station employee: *ekiin*, 187
steak: *sutēki*, 93
stomach: *onaka*, 233
stop: *tomemasu*, 170, 172, 196
store: *mise*, 28
straight ahead: *massugu*, 171
student: *gakusei*, 5
subway: *chikatetsu*, 59, 61
sugar: *satō*, 199
suit: *maimasu*, 129
summer: *natsu*, 62
summer vacation: *natsu-yasumi*, 62
sumo wrestling: *sumō*, 144
Sunday: *nichi-yōbi*, 60
supermarket: *supā*, 22
surface mail: *funabin*, 171
sushi restaurant: *sushi-ya*, 103
sweater: *sētā*, 75
sweet: *amai (desu)*, 113, 115
sweets: *o-kashi*, 112
swimming: *suiei*, 224

table: *tēburu*, 72
take: (time) *kakarimasu*, 180, 181, (a photograph) (*shashin o*) *torimasu*, 151, 172, 196
take care: *ki o tsukete*, 162
take care of: *azukarimasu*, 178
talk: *hanashi o shimasu*, 146, 206, 207
tangerine: *mikan*, 42
tasty: *oishi (desu)*, 98, 113, 115, 133
taxi: *takushī*, 61
taxi stand: *takushī-noriba*, 79
tea: *kōcha*, 90
tea ceremony: *o-cha*, 233
teach: *oshiemasu*, 170, 172
tedious: *tsumaranai (desu)*, 132, 133
telephone: (n.) *denwa*, 10; (v.) *denwa o shimasu*, 88, 98, 100
telephone number: *denwa-bangō*, 10
television: *terebi*, 30
tell: *oshiemasu*, 170, 172
temple: *o-tera*, 69
ten: *jū*, 23; *tō*, 38, 39
ten billion: *hyaku-oku*, 29
ten million: *sen-man*, 29
tennis: *tenisu*, 224
tennis court: *tenisu-kōto*, 95
tenth, the: (of the month) *tōka*, 61
ten thousand: *ichi-man*, *man*, 29, 30
thank you: (thanks) *dōmo*, 175, (thank you) *dōmo arigatō*, 10, 26; (thank you very much) *dōmo arigatō (gozaimasu/gozaimashita)*, 9, 129
that: *sono*, 20, 37, 232–33
that one: *sore*, 20, 28
that one over there: *are*, 20, 31
that over there: *ano*, 20, 37
there: *sochira*, 49
third, the: (of the month) *mikka*, 61
thirty: *sanjū*, 23
this: *kono*, 20, 39
this coming: *kondo*, 105
this evening: *komban*, 155
this month: *kongetsu*, 51
this one: *kochira*, 3, *kore*, 9, 20
this week: *konshū*, 51
this year: *kotoshi*, 51
thousand: *sen*, 29, 30
three: *mittsu*, 38, 39; *san*, 10, 38
three people: *san-nin*, 80
throat: *nodo*, 233
Thursday: *moku-yōbi*, 60
ticket: *kippu*, 124
ticket gate: *kaisatsuguchi*, 142
time: *jikan*, 152
to: *e* (particle), 48; *made* (particle), 175; *ni* (particle), 48, 50, 88, 180
today: *kyō*, 51
together: *issho ni*, 142
together with: *to* (particle), 50
tomorrow: *ashita*, 49, 50, 51
too: *mo*, 29
tool: *dōgu*, 155
tooth: *ha*, 233
top: *ue*, 72
tote bag: *kaban*, 72
towel: *taoru*, 43
town: *machi*, 235
traffic signal: *shingō*, 171
train: *densha*, 61
train line: *-sen*, 187
travel: *ryokō*, 62
travel agency: *ryokō-gaisha*, 186
trillion: *chō*, *it-chō*, 29
trip: *ryokō*, 62
true: *hontō*, 151
T-shirt: *T-shatsu*, 37, 38
Tuesday: *ka-yōbi*, 60
tulip: *chūrippu*, 123
turn: *magarimasu*, 170, 172
turn off: *keshimasu*, 151, 160, 163, 178, 197
turn on: *tsukemasu*, 151, 163
twentieth, the: (of the month) *hatsuka*, 61
twenty: *nijū*, 23
twenty-fourth, the: (of the month) *nijūyokka*, 61
two: *futatsu*, 38; *ni*, 10
two people: *futari*, 80

ukiyoe: *ukiyoe*, 189
umbrella: *kasa*, 11
under: *shita*, 72
understand: *wakarimasu*, 96, 222, 224, 225
university: *daigaku*, 7
until: *made*, 22
use: *tsukaimasu*, 170, 189, 190, 196

vase: *kabin*, 122
vegetable: *yasai*, 95
vegetable juice: *yasai-jūsu*, 95
very: *totemo*, 112
very much: *taihen*, 213
vicinity: *chikaku*, 72
video: *bideo*, 30
video camera: *bideo-kamera*, 30

wait: *machimasu*, 160, 171, 172, 178
walk: *arukimasu*, 181
wallet: *saifu*, 74
warm: *atataka (desu)*, 235
wasabi: *wasabi*, 197
was/were: *deshita*, 2
was/were not: *dewa/ja arimasen deshita*, 2
watch: *tokei*, 11
water: *mizu*, 75
waterfall: *taki*, 77
we: *watashitachi*, 132
weather: *tenki*, 120
wedding anniversary: *kekkon-kinenbi*, 128
Wednesday: *sui-yōbi*, 60
weekend: *shūmatsu*, 89
week(s): *-shūkan*, 181
well: *yoku*, 129
well then: *dewa*, 29, 50; *ja*, 29
west exit: *nishiguchi*, 143
what: *nan*, 13, *nani*, 69
what day: (of the month) *nan-nichi*, 62; (of the week) *nan-yōbi*, 62
what kind of: *donna*, 118
what month: *nan-gatsu*, 62
what number: *nan-ban*, 15
what time: *nan-ji*, 22
when: *itsu*, 54
where: *doko*, 41
which: *dono*, 58; *dore*, 37, 58
whiskey: *uisukī*, 226
white: *shiroi (desu)*, 175
who: *donata*, 8, *dare*, 8, 14
why: *dōshite*, 168
wife: *kanai*, *tsuma*, 99, *okusan*, 95, 99
window: *mado*, 153
wine: *wain*, 43
with: *to* (particle), 50
woman: *onna*, *onna no hito*, 22
wonderful: *sutekina*, 231
work: (n.) *shigoto*, 23, (v.) *shigoto o shimasu*, 91
worry: *ki ni shimasu*, 200
write: *kakimasu*, 98, 100, 160, 162, 163, 178, 197

year: *-nen*, 60; (period of) *-nen (kan)*, 181
yen: *-en*, 29, 31
yes: *ee*, 9, 140, 149; *hai*, 2, 6, 48, 140, 149, 204
yesterday: *kinō*, 51
you: *anata*, 3, 7
your: *anata no*, 10

zero: *rei*, *zero*, 10

Index

adjectives, 110

conjunction, *ga*, 205
counter: *-bai*, 112; *-ban*, 58; *-bon*, 38, 39; *-gai*, 71; *-hai*, 112; *-hon*, 38, 39; *-ji*, 22; *-kagetsu*, 181; *-kai*, 71; *-mai*, 38, 39; *-nen*, 60; *-nichi*, 61; *-nin*, 80; *-pai*, 112; *-pon*, 38, 39
counter, word order, 38
counting, 29, 38

day of the month, 61
day of the week, 60
decimals, 29
desu/deshita, 2
dewa/ja arimasen(deshita), 2

fractions, 29

here, there, over there, 20
honorific: *go-*, 99; *irasshaimasu*, 136

interjections: *a*, 57; *dewa/ja*, 29; *sā*, 219
interrogatives: by what means, 63; how, 60, 135, 182; how about, 112; how long, 180; how many, 81; how much, 28; what, 13, 69; what day/month, 62; what kind of, 118; what number, 15; what time, 22; when, 54; where, 41; which, 37, 58; who, 8, 14; why, 168
intonation: falling, 27; rising, 2, 10, 50
is/are, 2, 11, 142

months, 61

name (instead of I/you), 4
numbers, 10, 23, 29, 30; *hitotsu*, *futatsu*, *mittsu*, 38, 39; intermediate numbers, 30

object marker, 88, 222
omission: (of topic), 2, 22; (of verb), 78

particle: *de*, 59, 90, 142, 170; *e*, 48; *ga*, 58, 68, 170, 205, 222; *gurai*, 120; *ka*, 2, 6, 48, 222; *kara*, 22, 61, 98, 142; *made*, 22, 175; *mo*, 29, 213; *ne*, 50; *ni*, 48, 58, 59, 68, 88, 110, 180, 213; *no*, 3, 4, 9, 122; *o*, 88, 110, 171, 180, 213, 222; *to*, 50, 70, 73; *wa*, 2, 3, 10, 58, 68, 211, 213; *ya*, 70; *yo*, 70
particle, position of, 32, 53, 54
particles (in combinations), 213
permission, asking, 189
polite: *chotto o-machi kudasai*, 132; *mōshiwake gozaimasen*, 213; *o-*, 62; *o-kyaku-san*, 191; *o-namae*, 96; *o-taku*, 131, 132; *-sama*, 98; *taihen*, 213; *yoroshii*, 162

question marker, *ka*, 2, 6, 48, 222

subject marker, *ga*, 68
suffix: *goro*, 86; *-me*, 173; *-ya*, 77

telephone numbers, 10
this, that, that over there, 20
time: 23; point in time, approximate, 86; relative, 50; specific, 60
topic marker, *wa*, 2, 3, 68, 211, 213

verb: classifications of, 160, 178; *-masen(deshita)*, *-mashita*, 48; *-masen ka*, *mashō*, *-mashō ka*, 140; *-masu* form, 48, 160, 222; *-nai* form, 178; present/past form, 2, 48; present-progressive, 204; Regular I, Regular II, Irregular, 178; *-tai desu*, 222; *-te* form, 160; *-te imasu* form, 204; tenses of, 48
verb, giving and receiving, 110
verb, replaced by *desu*, 79

word order, with o and number, 38
years, 60

(改訂第3版)コミュニケーションのための日本語 第1巻 ローマ字版テキスト
JAPANESE FOR BUSY PEOPLE I: Revised 3rd Edition, Romanized Version

2006年6月26日　第1刷発行

著　者　社団法人 国際日本語普及協会
挿　画　角 愼作
発行者　富田 充
発行所　講談社インターナショナル株式会社
〒112-8652 東京都文京区音羽 1-17-14
電話　03-3944-6493(編集部)
　　03-3944-6492(マーケティング部・業務部)
ホームページ　www.kodansha-intl.com
印刷・製本所　大日本印刷株式会社

落丁本・乱丁本は購入書店名を明記のうえ、講談社インターナショナル業務部宛にお送りください。送料小社負担にてお取替えします。なお、この本についてのお問い合わせは、編集部宛にお願いいたします。本書の無断複写(コピー)、転載は著作権法の例外を除き、禁じられています。

定価はカバーに表示してあります。

© 社団法人 国際日本語普及協会 2006

Printed in Japan
ISBN 4-7700-3008-8

JAPANESE FOR BUSY PEOPLE

Revised 3rd Edition

I

ジュニアーナイン/ものの日本語 I

Elementary

Association for Japanese-Language Teaching

KODANSHA INTERNATIONAL
© 2006 by AJALT All rights reserved
Made in Japan

0605B0B471 DN01C B0B471

HIRAGANA

あ	a	い	i	う	u	え	e	お	o
か	ka	き	ki	く	ku	け	ke	こ	ko
さ	sa	し	shi	す	su	せ	se	そ	so
た	ta	ち	chi	つ	tsu	て	te	と	to
な	na	に	ni	ぬ	nu	ね	ne	の	no
は	ha	ひ	hi	ふ	fu	へ	he	ほ	ho
ま	ma	み	mi	む	mu	め	me	も	mo
や	ya			ゆ	yu			よ	yo
ら	ra	り	ri	る	ru	れ	re	ろ	ro
わ	wa							を	o
ん	n								

きゃ	kya	きゅ	kyu	きょ	kyo
しゃ	sha	しゅ	shu	しょ	sho
ちゃ	cha	ちゅ	chu	ちょ	cho
にゃ	nya	にゅ	nyu	にょ	nyo
ひゃ	hya	ひゅ	hyu	ひょ	hyo
みゃ	mya	みゅ	myu	みょ	myo
りゃ	rya	りゅ	ryu	りょ	ryo

が	ga	ぎ	gi	ぐ	gu	げ	ge	ご	go
ざ	za	じ	ji	ず	zu	ぜ	ze	ぞ	zo
だ	da	ぢ	ji	づ	zu	で	de	ど	do
ば	ba	び	bi	ぶ	bu	べ	be	ぼ	bo
ぱ	pa	ぴ	pi	ぷ	pu	ぺ	pe	ぽ	po

ぎゃ	gya	ぎゅ	gyu	ぎょ	gyo
じゃ	ja	じゅ	ju	じょ	jo
びゃ	bya	びゅ	byu	びょ	byo
ぴゃ	pya	ぴゅ	pyu	ぴょ	pyo

KATAKANA

ア	a	イ	i	ウ	u	エ	e	オ	o
カ	ka	キ	ki	ク	ku	ケ	ke	コ	ko
サ	sa	シ	shi	ス	su	セ	se	ソ	so
タ	ta	チ	chi	ツ	tsu	テ	te	ト	to
ナ	na	ニ	ni	ヌ	nu	ネ	ne	ノ	no
ハ	ha	ヒ	hi	フ	fu	ヘ	he	ホ	ho
マ	ma	ミ	mi	ム	mu	メ	me	モ	mo
ヤ	ya			ユ	yu			ヨ	yo
ラ	ra	リ	ri	ル	ru	レ	re	ロ	ro
ワ	wa							ヲ	o
ン	n								

キャ	kya	キュ	kyu	キョ	kyo
シャ	sha	シュ	shu	ショ	sho
チャ	cha	チュ	chu	チョ	cho
ニャ	nya	ニュ	nyu	ニョ	nyo
ヒャ	hya	ヒュ	hyu	ヒョ	hyo
ミャ	mya	ミュ	myu	ミョ	myo

リャ	rya	リュ	ryu	リョ	ryo

ガ	ga	ギ	gi	グ	gu	ゲ	ge	ゴ	go
ザ	za	ジ	ji	ズ	zu	ゼ	ze	ゾ	zo
ダ	da	ヂ	ji	ヅ	zu	デ	de	ド	do
バ	ba	ビ	bi	ブ	bu	ベ	be	ボ	bo
パ	pa	ピ	pi	プ	pu	ペ	pe	ポ	po

ギャ	gya	ギュ	gyu	ギョ	gyo
ジャ	ja	ジュ	ju	ジョ	jo

ビャ	bya	ビュ	byu	ビョ	byo
ピャ	pya	ピュ	pyu	ピョ	pyo